

# **ArgoUML User Manual**

## **A tutorial and reference description**

**by Alejandro Ramirez, Philippe Vanpeperstraete, Andreas Rueckert, Kunle Odu-  
tola, Jeremy Bennett, and Linus Tolke**

---

# **ArgoUML User Manual: A tutorial and reference description**

by Alejandro Ramirez, Philippe Vanpeperstraete, Andreas Rueckert, Kunle Odutola, Jeremy Bennett, and Linus Tolke

Copyright © 2003 Linus Tolke

Copyright © 2001, 2002 Jeremy Bennett

Copyright © 2001 Kunle Odutola

Copyright © 2000 Philippe Vanpeperstraete

Copyright © 2000 Alejandro Ramirez

Copyright © 2000 Andreas Rueckert

This version the manual is intended to describe is the version 0.14 of ArgoUML.

This material may be distributed only subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Open Publication License, v1.0 or later. A copy of this license is included in the section Open Publication License. The latest version is presently available at <http://www.opencontent.org/openpub/> [<http://www.opencontent.org/openpub/>].

---

---

---

# Table of Contents

1. Preface .....	
1. Introduction .....	
1.1. Origins and Overview of ArgoUML .....	1
1.1.1. Object Oriented Analysis and Design .....	1
1.1.2. The Development of ArgoUML .....	1
1.1.3. Finding Out More About the ArgoUML Project .....	2
1.2. Scope of This User Manual .....	2
1.2.1. Target Audience .....	2
1.2.2. Scope .....	2
1.3. Overview of the User Manual .....	3
1.3.1. Tutorial Manual Structure .....	3
1.3.2. Reference Manual Structure .....	3
1.3.3. User Feedback .....	4
1.4. Assumptions .....	4
I. ArgoUML Tutorial Manual .....	
2. UML Based OOA&D .....	
2.1. Introduction .....	9
2.2. Background to UML .....	9
2.3. UML Based Processes for OOA&D .....	9
2.3.1. Types of Process .....	10
2.3.2. A Development Process for This Manual .....	13
2.4. Why ArgoUML is Different .....	14
2.4.1. Cognitive Psychology .....	14
2.4.2. Open Standards .....	15
2.4.3. 100% Pure Java .....	16
2.4.4. Open Source .....	16
2.5. ArgoUML Basics .....	17
2.5.1. Getting Started .....	17
2.5.2. The ArgoUML User Interface .....	18
2.5.3. Output .....	28
2.5.4. Working With Design Critics .....	31
2.6. The Case Study (To be written) .....	34
3. Requirements Capture .....	
3.1. Introduction .....	35
3.2. The Requirements Capture Process .....	35
3.2.1. Process Steps .....	36
3.3. Output of the Requirements Capture Process .....	36
3.3.1. Vision Document .....	36
3.3.2. Use Case Diagram .....	37
3.3.3. The Use Case Specification .....	42
3.3.4. Supplementary Requirement Specification .....	45
3.4. Using Use Cases in ArgoUML .....	46
3.4.1. Actors .....	46
3.4.2. Use Cases .....	46
3.4.3. Associations .....	47
3.4.4. Hierarchical Use Cases .....	49
3.4.5. Stereotypes .....	50
3.4.6. Documentation .....	50
3.4.7. System Boundary Box .....	50
3.5. Case Study .....	51
3.5.1. Vision Document .....	51
3.5.2. Identifying Actors and Use Cases (To be written) .....	53
3.5.3. Associations (To be written) .....	53

3.5.4. Advanced Diagram Features (To be written)	53
3.5.5. Use Case Specifications (To be written)	53
3.5.6. Supplementary Requirements Specification (To be written)	53
4. Analysis	
4.1. Introduction	54
4.2. The Analysis Process (To be written)	54
4.2.1. Output of the Analysis Process (To be written)	54
4.3. Class Diagrams (To be written)	54
4.3.1. The Class Diagram (To be written)	54
4.3.2. Advanced Class Diagrams (To be written)	54
4.4. Creating Class Diagrams in ArgoUML	55
4.4.1. Classes	55
4.4.2. Associations (To be written)	55
4.4.3. Class Attributes and Operations (To be written)	55
4.4.4. Advanced Class Features (To be written)	55
4.5. Sequence Diagrams (To be written)	56
4.5.1. The Sequence Diagram (To be written)	56
4.5.2. Identifying Actions (To be written)	56
4.5.3. Advanced Sequence Diagrams (To be written)	56
4.6. Creating Sequence Diagrams in ArgoUML	56
4.6.1. Sequence Diagrams	56
4.6.2. Actions (To be written)	56
4.6.3. Advanced Sequence Diagrams (To be written)	56
4.7. State Diagrams (To be written)	56
4.7.1. The State Diagram (To be written)	56
4.7.2. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written)	56
4.8. Creating State Diagrams in ArgoUML	57
4.8.1. State Diagrams (To be written)	57
4.8.2. States (To be written)	57
4.8.3. Transitions (To be written)	57
4.8.4. Actions (To be written)	57
4.8.5. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written)	57
4.9. Realisation Use Cases (To be written)	57
4.10. Creating Realisation Use Cases in ArgoUML (To be written)	57
4.11. Case Study (To be written)	57
4.11.1. Concept Class Diagrams (To be written)	57
4.11.2. System Sequence Diagrams (To be written)	58
4.11.3. System State Diagrams (To be written)	58
4.11.4. Realisation Use Cases (To be written)	58
5. Design	
5.1. Introduction	59
5.2. The Design Process (To be written)	59
5.2.1. Output of the Design Process (To be written)	59
5.3. Package Diagrams (To be written)	59
5.3.1. The Package Diagram (To be written)	59
5.3.2. Advanced Package Diagrams (To be written)	59
5.4. Creating Package Diagrams in ArgoUML	60
5.4.1. Packages	60
5.4.2. Relationships between packages (To be written)	60
5.4.3. Advanced Package Features (To be written)	60
5.5. More on Class Diagrams (To be written)	60
5.5.1. The Class Diagram (To be written)	60
5.5.2. Advanced Class Diagrams (To be written)	61
5.6. More on Class Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written)	61
5.6.1. Classes (To be written)	61
5.6.2. Class Attributes and Operations (To be written)	61
5.6.3. Advanced Class Features	61
5.7. Sequence and Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)	63

5.7.1. More on the Sequence Diagram (To be written) .....	63
5.7.2. The Collaboration Diagram (To be written) .....	64
5.7.3. Advanced Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.8. Creating Collaboration Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	64
5.8.1. Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.8.2. Messages (To be written) .....	64
5.8.3. Advanced Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.9. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.9.1. The State Diagram (To be written) .....	64
5.9.2. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.10. Creating State Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	65
5.10.1. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	65
5.10.2. States (To be written) .....	65
5.10.3. Transitions (To be written) .....	65
5.10.4. Actions (To be written) .....	65
5.10.5. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written) .....	65
5.11. Activity Diagrams (To be written) .....	66
5.11.1. The Activity Diagram (To be written) .....	66
5.12. Creating Activity Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	66
5.12.1. Activity Diagrams (To be written) .....	66
5.12.2. Action States (To be written) .....	66
5.13. Deployment Diagrams (To be written) .....	66
5.13.1. The Deployment Diagram (To be written) .....	66
5.14. Creating Deployment Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	66
5.14.1. Nodes (To be written) .....	66
5.14.2. Components (To be written) .....	67
5.14.3. Relationships between nodes and components (To be written) .....	67
5.15. System Architecture (To be written) .....	67
5.16. Case Study (To be written) .....	67
5.16.1. Packages (To be written) .....	67
5.16.2. Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	67
5.16.3. Sequence Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.4. Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.5. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.6. Activity Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.7. The Deployment Diagram (To be written) .....	68
5.16.8. The System Architecture (To be written) .....	68
6. Build (To be written) .....	
6.1. Introduction .....	69
6.2. The Build Process (To be written) .....	69
6.2.1. Output of the Build Process (To be written) .....	69
6.3. Adding Code to ArgoUML (To be written) .....	69
6.3.1. Classes (To be written) .....	69
6.3.2. Actions (To be written) .....	69
6.4. Case Study (To be written) .....	69
6.4.1. Coding for Classes (To be written) .....	69
6.4.2. Coding Actions (To be written) .....	69
6.5. Case Study (To be written) .....	70
II. ArgoUML Reference Manual .....	
7. User Interface Reference .....	
7.1. Introduction .....	81
7.2. Overview of the Window .....	81
7.3. UML Diagram Types supported by ArgoUML .....	82
7.4. General Mouse Behavior in ArgoUML .....	83
7.4.1. Mouse Button Terminology .....	83
7.4.2. Button 1 Click .....	83
7.4.3. Button 1 Double Click .....	83
7.4.4. Button 1 Motion .....	83

---

7.4.5. Shift and Control with Button 1 .....	84
7.4.6. Button 2 Actions .....	84
7.4.7. Button 2 Double Click .....	84
7.4.8. Button 2 Motion .....	84
7.5. General Information About Panes .....	84
7.5.1. Re-sizing Panes .....	84
7.5.2. Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously .....	85
7.5.3. Reducing the Number of Panes Visible .....	85
7.6. The status bar .....	85
8. The Explorer .....	
8.1. Introduction .....	86
8.2. Mouse Behavior in the Explorer .....	87
8.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	87
8.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	87
8.2.3. Button 2 Actions .....	87
8.2.4. Button 2 Double Click .....	87
8.3. Perspective Selection .....	87
8.4. Navigating Backward and Forward .....	89
8.5. Configuring Perspectives .....	89
8.5.1. Perspectives Tag .....	89
8.5.2. Panes Tag .....	91
8.6. Context Sensitive Menu .....	93
8.6.1. Properties Pop-Up .....	93
8.6.2. Add to Diagram .....	93
8.6.3. Delete From Model .....	94
9. The Editing Pane .....	
9.1. Introduction .....	95
9.2. Mouse Behavior in the Editing Pane .....	96
9.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	96
9.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	96
9.2.3. Button 1 Motion .....	96
9.2.4. Shift and Control with Button 1 .....	97
9.2.5. Button 2 Actions .....	97
9.2.6. Button 2 Double Click .....	97
9.2.7. Button 2 Motion .....	97
9.3. The tool bar .....	97
9.3.1. Layout Tools .....	97
9.3.2. Annotation Tools .....	98
9.3.3. Drawing Tools .....	98
9.3.4. Use Case Diagram Specific Tools .....	99
9.3.5. Class Diagram Specific Tools .....	100
9.3.6. Sequence Diagram Specific Tools .....	101
9.3.7. State Diagram Specific Tools .....	102
9.3.8. Collaboration Diagram Specific Tools .....	103
9.3.9. Activity Diagram Specific Tools .....	103
9.3.10. Deployment Diagram Specific Tools .....	104
9.4. Clarifiers .....	106
9.5. The Drawing Grid .....	106
9.6. The Diagram Tab .....	106
9.7. Pop-Up Menus .....	106
9.7.1. Critiques .....	106
9.7.2. Ordering .....	107
9.7.3. Add .....	107
9.7.4. Show .....	107
9.7.5. Modifiers .....	108
9.7.6. Multiplicity .....	108
9.7.7. Aggregation .....	108
9.7.8. Navigability .....	109

---

---

9.7.9. Properties .....	109
10. The Details Pane .....	
10.1. Introduction .....	110
10.1.1. Spawning Details Tabs .....	111
10.2. Mouse Behavior in the Details Pane .....	111
10.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	111
10.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	111
10.2.3. Button 2 Actions .....	111
10.2.4. Button 2 Double Click .....	111
10.2.5. Button 2 Motion .....	111
10.3. To Do Item Tab .....	111
10.4. Properties Tab .....	114
10.5. Documentation Tab .....	116
10.6. Style Tab .....	116
10.7. Source tab .....	117
10.8. Constraints Tab .....	118
10.8.1. The Constraint Editor .....	120
10.9. Tagged Values Tab .....	122
10.10. Checklist Tab .....	122
11. The To-Do Pane .....	
11.1. Introduction .....	124
11.2. Mouse Behavior in the To-Do Pane .....	125
11.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	125
11.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	125
11.2.3. Button 2 Actions .....	125
11.2.4. Button 2 Double Click .....	125
11.3. Presentation Selection .....	125
11.4. Flat/Hierarchical Button .....	126
11.5. Item Count .....	127
12. The Menu bar .....	
12.1. Introduction .....	128
12.2. Mouse Behavior in the Menu Bar .....	128
12.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	128
12.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	128
12.2.3. Button 1 Motion .....	128
12.2.4. Button 2 Actions .....	128
12.2.5. Button 2 Double Click .....	129
12.2.6. Button 2 Motion .....	129
12.3. The File Menu .....	129
12.3.1. New... .....	129
12.3.2. Open Project... .....	129
12.3.3. Save Project .....	131
12.3.4. Save Project As... .....	131
12.3.5. Import... .....	131
12.3.6. Load Model From DB .....	133
12.3.7. Save Model To DB .....	133
12.3.8. Print... .....	133
12.3.9. Save Graphics... .....	133
12.3.10. Save Configuration .....	134
12.3.11. Exit .....	134
12.4. The Edit Menu .....	134
12.4.1. The Select Sub-Menu .....	134
12.4.2. Undo .....	135
12.4.3. Redo .....	135
12.4.4. Cut .....	135
12.4.5. Copy .....	135
12.4.6. Paste .....	135
12.4.7. Remove From Diagram .....	136

---



---

12.4.8. Delete From Model .....	136
12.4.9. Empty trash .....	136
12.4.10. Settings... ..	136
12.5. The View Menu .....	139
12.5.1. Goto Diagram... ..	139
12.5.2. Find... ..	140
12.5.3. The Zoom Sub-Menu .....	143
12.5.4. The Editor Tabs Sub-Menu .....	143
12.5.5. The Details Tabs Sub-Menu .....	144
12.5.6. Adjust Grid .....	145
12.5.7. Adjust Grid Snap .....	145
12.5.8. Adjust Page Breaks .....	146
12.5.9. Buttons on Selection .....	146
12.5.10. The Notation Sub-Menu .....	146
12.6. The Create Diagram Menu .....	147
12.6.1. Class Diagram .....	147
12.6.2. Use Case Diagram .....	147
12.6.3. State Diagram .....	147
12.6.4. Activity Diagram .....	147
12.6.5. Collaboration Diagram .....	148
12.6.6. Deployment Diagram .....	148
12.6.7. Sequence Diagram .....	148
12.7. The Arrange Menu .....	148
12.7.1. The Align Sub-Menu .....	149
12.7.2. The Distribute Sub-Menu .....	149
12.7.3. The Reorder Sub-Menu .....	150
12.7.4. The Nudge Sub-Menu .....	150
12.7.5. The Layout Sub-Menu .....	150
12.8. The Generation Menu .....	151
12.8.1. Generate Selected Classes .....	151
12.8.2. Generate All Classes .....	152
12.9. The Critique Menu .....	152
12.9.1. Toggle Auto-Critique .....	152
12.9.2. Design Issues... ..	153
12.9.3. Design Goals... ..	154
12.9.4. Browse Critics... ..	156
12.10. The Tools Menu .....	161
12.11. The Help Menu .....	162
12.11.1. About Argo/UML .....	162
13. The Critics .....	
13.1. Introduction .....	164
13.1.1. Terminology .....	164
13.1.2. Design Issues .....	164
13.2. Uncategorized .....	164
13.3. Class Selection .....	164
13.3.1. Wrap DataType .....	165
13.3.2. Reduce Classes in diagram <diagram> .....	165
13.3.3. Clean Up Diagram .....	165
13.4. Naming .....	165
13.4.1. Resolve Association Name Conflict .....	165
13.4.2. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict .....	165
13.4.3. Change Names or Signatures in <artifact> .....	165
13.4.4. Duplicate End (Role) Names for <Association:> .....	166
13.4.5. Role name conflicts with member .....	166
13.4.6. Choose a Name (Classes and Interfaces) .....	166
13.4.7. Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (Classes and Interfaces) .....	166
13.4.8. Choose a Name (Attributes) .....	166
13.4.9. Choose a Name (Operations) .....	166

---

---

13.4.10. Choose a Name (States) .....	167
13.4.11. Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (States) .....	167
13.4.12. Revise Name to Avoid Confusion .....	167
13.4.13. Choose a Legal Name .....	167
13.4.14. Change <artifact> to a Non-Reserved Word .....	167
13.4.15. Choose a Better Operation Name .....	167
13.4.16. Choose a Better Attribute Name .....	167
13.4.17. Capitalize Class Name <class> .....	168
13.4.18. Revise Package Name <artifact> .....	168
13.5. Storage .....	168
13.5.1. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict .....	168
13.5.2. Add Instance Variables to <class> .....	168
13.5.3. Add Constructor to <class> .....	168
13.5.4. Reduce Attributes on <class> .....	169
13.6. Planned Extensions .....	169
13.6.1. Operations in Interfaces must be public .....	169
13.6.2. Interfaces may only have operations .....	169
13.6.3. Remove Reference to Specific Subclass .....	169
13.7. MState Machines .....	169
13.7.1. Reduce Transitions on <state> .....	170
13.7.2. Reduce States in machine <machine> .....	170
13.7.3. Add Transitions to <state> .....	170
13.7.4. Add Incoming Transitions to <artifact> .....	170
13.7.5. Add Outgoing Transitions from <artifact> .....	170
13.7.6. Remove Extra Initial States .....	170
13.7.7. Place an Initial State .....	170
13.7.8. Add Trigger or Guard to Transition .....	170
13.7.9. Change Join Transitions .....	170
13.7.10. Change Fork Transitions .....	170
13.7.11. Change Branch Transitions .....	171
13.7.12. Add Guard to Transition .....	171
13.7.13. Clean Up Diagram .....	171
13.7.14. Make Edge More Visible .....	171
13.8. Design Patterns .....	171
13.8.1. Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class> .....	171
13.8.2. Singleton Stereotype Violated in <class> .....	172
13.8.3. Nodes normally have no enclosers .....	172
13.8.4. NodeInstances normally have no enclosers .....	172
13.8.5. Components normally are inside nodes .....	172
13.8.6. ComponentInstances normally are inside nodes .....	172
13.8.7. Classes normally are inside components .....	172
13.8.8. Interfaces normally are inside components .....	172
13.8.9. Objects normally are inside components .....	173
13.8.10. LinkEnds have not the same locations .....	173
13.8.11. Set classifier (Deployment Diagram) .....	173
13.8.12. Missing return-actions .....	173
13.8.13. Missing call(send)-action .....	173
13.8.14. No Stimuli on these links .....	173
13.8.15. Set Classifier (Sequence Diagram) .....	173
13.8.16. Wrong position of these stimuli .....	173
13.9. Relationships .....	173
13.9.1. Circular Association .....	173
13.9.2. Make <association> Navigable .....	174
13.9.3. Remove Navigation from Interface via <association> .....	174
13.9.4. Add Associations to <artifact> .....	174
13.9.5. Remove Reference to Specific Subclass .....	174
13.9.6. Reduce Associations on <artifact> .....	174
13.9.7. Make Edge More Visible .....	175

---

---

13.10. Instantiation .....	175
13.11. Modularity .....	175
13.11.1. Classifier not in Namespace of its Association .....	175
13.11.2. Add Elements to Package <package> .....	175
13.12. Expected Usage .....	175
13.12.1. Clean Up Diagram .....	175
13.13. Methods .....	176
13.13.1. Change Names or Signatures in <artifact> .....	176
13.13.2. Class Must be Abstract .....	176
13.13.3. Add Operations to <class> .....	176
13.13.4. Reduce Operations on <artifact> .....	176
13.14. Code Generation .....	176
13.14.1. Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces .....	176
13.15. Stereotypes .....	176
13.16. Inheritance .....	176
13.16.1. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict .....	176
13.16.2. Remove <class>'s Circular Inheritance .....	177
13.16.3. Class Must be Abstract .....	177
13.16.4. Remove final keyword or remove subclasses .....	177
13.16.5. Illegal Generalization .....	177
13.16.6. Remove Unneeded Realizes from <class> .....	177
13.16.7. Define Concrete (Sub)Class .....	177
13.16.8. Define Class to Implement <interface> .....	177
13.16.9. Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces .....	177
13.16.10. Make Edge More Visible .....	177
13.17. Containment .....	178
13.17.1. Remove Circular Composition .....	178
13.17.2. Duplicate Parameter Name .....	178
13.17.3. Two Aggregate Ends (Roles) in Binary Association .....	178
13.17.4. Aggregate End (Role) in 3-way (or More) Association .....	178
13.17.5. Wrap DataType .....	178
13.17.6. Import Parameter Type into Class .....	179
14. ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference .....	
14.1. Introduction .....	180
14.2. The Model .....	180
14.2.1. Model Details Tabs .....	180
14.2.2. Model Property Toolbar .....	181
14.2.3. Property Fields For The Model .....	181
14.3. Datatype .....	182
14.3.1. Datatype Details Tabs .....	183
14.3.2. Datatype Property Toolbar .....	184
14.3.3. Property Fields For Datatype .....	184
14.4. Stereotypes .....	186
14.4.1. Stereotype Details Tabs .....	186
14.4.2. Stereotype Property Toolbar .....	187
14.4.3. Property Fields For Stereotype .....	188
14.5. ArgoUML Diagrams .....	190
14.5.1. Diagram Details Tabs .....	190
14.5.2. Property Fields For Diagram .....	190
15. ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
15.1. Introduction .....	192
15.1.1. ArgoUML Limitations Concerning Use Case Diagrams .....	192
15.2. Actor .....	192
15.2.1. Actor Details Tabs .....	193
15.2.2. Actor Property Toolbar .....	194
15.2.3. Property Fields For Actor .....	194
15.3. Use Case .....	195
15.3.1. Use Case Details Tabs .....	195

---

---

15.3.2. Use Case Property Toolbar .....	196
15.3.3. Property Fields For Use Case .....	197
15.4. Extension Point .....	198
15.4.1. Extension Point Details Tabs .....	199
15.4.2. Extension Point Property Toolbar .....	199
15.4.3. Property Fields For Extension Point .....	200
15.5. Association .....	200
15.6. Association End .....	201
15.7. Dependency .....	201
15.7.1. Dependency Details Tabs .....	201
15.7.2. Dependency Property Toolbar .....	202
15.7.3. Property Fields For Dependency .....	202
15.8. Generalization .....	203
15.8.1. Generalization Details Tabs .....	203
15.8.2. Generalization Property Toolbar .....	205
15.8.3. Property Fields For Generalization .....	205
15.9. Extend .....	207
15.9.1. Extend Details Tabs .....	207
15.9.2. Extend Property Toolbar .....	208
15.9.3. Property Fields For Extend .....	209
15.10. Include .....	210
15.10.1. Include Details Tabs .....	210
15.10.2. Include Property Toolbar .....	211
15.10.3. Property Fields For Include .....	211
16. ArgoUML Class Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
16.1. Introduction .....	214
16.1.1. Limitations Concerning Class Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	216
16.2. Package .....	216
16.2.1. Package Details Tabs .....	216
16.2.2. Package Property Toolbar .....	217
16.2.3. Property Fields For Package .....	217
16.3. Datatype .....	221
16.4. Stereotype .....	221
16.5. Class .....	221
16.5.1. Class Details Tabs .....	221
16.5.2. Class Property Toolbar .....	222
16.5.3. Property Fields For Class .....	223
16.6. Attribute .....	228
16.6.1. Attribute Details Tabs .....	228
16.6.2. Attribute Property Toolbar .....	229
16.6.3. Property Fields For Attribute .....	229
16.7. Operation .....	232
16.7.1. Operation Details Tabs .....	232
16.7.2. Operation Property Toolbar .....	233
16.7.3. Property Fields For Operation .....	233
16.8. Parameter .....	236
16.8.1. Parameter Details Tabs .....	236
16.8.2. Parameter Property Toolbar .....	237
16.8.3. Property Fields For Parameter .....	238
16.9. Signal .....	239
16.9.1. Signal Details Tabs .....	240
16.9.2. Signal Property Toolbar .....	240
16.9.3. Property Fields For Signal .....	241
16.10. Association .....	245
16.10.1. Three-way and Greater Associations .....	246
16.10.2. Association Details Tabs .....	246
16.10.3. Association Property Toolbar .....	247
16.10.4. Property Fields For Association .....	247

---

---

16.11. Association End .....	251
16.11.1. Association End Details Tabs .....	251
16.11.2. Association End Property Toolbar .....	252
16.11.3. Property Fields For Association End .....	252
16.12. Dependency .....	254
16.13. Generalization .....	254
16.14. Interface .....	254
16.14.1. Interface Details Tabs .....	254
16.14.2. Interface Property Toolbar .....	255
16.14.3. Property Fields For Interface .....	256
16.15. Abstraction .....	259
16.15.1. Abstraction Details Tabs .....	260
16.15.2. Abstraction Property Toolbar .....	261
16.15.3. Property Fields For Abstraction .....	261
17. ArgoUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
17.1. Introduction .....	263
17.1.1. Limitations Concerning Sequence Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	264
17.2. Object .....	264
17.2.1. Object Details Tabs .....	265
17.2.2. Object Property Toolbar .....	266
17.2.3. Property Fields For Object .....	266
17.3. Stimulus .....	269
17.3.1. Stimulus Details Tabs .....	270
17.3.2. Stimulus Property Toolbar .....	271
17.3.3. Property Fields For Stimulus .....	271
17.4. Stimulus Call .....	273
17.5. Stimulus Create .....	273
17.6. Stimulus Destroy .....	273
17.7. Stimulus Send .....	273
17.8. Stimulus Return .....	274
17.9. Link .....	274
17.9.1. Link Details Tabs .....	274
17.9.2. Link Property Toolbar .....	275
17.9.3. Property Fields For Link .....	276
18. ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
18.1. Introduction .....	277
18.1.1. Limitations Concerning State Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	278
18.2. State .....	278
18.2.1. State Details Tabs .....	279
18.2.2. State Property Toolbar .....	280
18.2.3. Property Fields For State .....	280
18.3. Action .....	282
18.3.1. Action Details Tabs .....	282
18.3.2. Action Property Toolbar .....	283
18.3.3. Property Fields For Action .....	284
18.4. Composite State .....	284
18.5. Transition .....	285
18.5.1. Transition Details Tabs .....	285
18.5.2. Transition Property Toolbar .....	286
18.5.3. Property Fields For Transition .....	286
18.6. Call Event .....	288
18.6.1. Call Event Details Tabs .....	289
18.6.2. Call Event Property Toolbar .....	289
18.6.3. Property Fields For Call Event .....	290
18.7. Guard .....	291
18.7.1. Guard Details Tabs .....	291
18.7.2. Guard Property Toolbar .....	292
18.7.3. Property Fields For Guard .....	292

---

---

18.8. Pseudostate .....	292
18.8.1. Pseudostate Details Tabs .....	293
18.8.2. Pseudostate Property Toolbar .....	294
18.8.3. Property Fields For Pseudostate .....	294
18.9. Initial State .....	295
18.10. Final State .....	295
18.10.1. Final State Details Tabs .....	295
18.10.2. Final State Property Toolbar .....	296
18.10.3. Property Fields For Final State .....	297
18.11. Branch .....	298
18.12. Fork .....	298
18.13. Join .....	298
18.14. Shallow History .....	298
18.15. Deep History (to be improved...) .....	299
19. ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
19.1. Introduction .....	300
19.1.1. Limitations Concerning Collaboration Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	301
19.2. Classifier Role .....	301
19.2.1. Classifier Role Details Tabs .....	302
19.2.2. Classifier Role Property Toolbar .....	303
19.2.3. Property Fields For Classifier Role .....	304
19.3. Association Role .....	305
19.3.1. Association Role Details Tabs .....	305
19.3.2. Association Role Property Toolbar .....	307
19.3.3. Property Fields For Association Role .....	307
19.4. Association End Role .....	308
19.4.1. Association End Role Details Tabs .....	309
19.4.2. Association End Role Property Toolbar .....	310
19.4.3. Property Fields For Association End Role .....	310
19.5. Message .....	312
19.5.1. Message Details Tabs .....	312
19.5.2. Message Property Toolbar .....	313
19.5.3. Property Fields For Message .....	314
20. ArgoUML Activity Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
20.1. Introduction .....	317
20.1.1. Limitations Concerning Activity Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	318
20.2. Action State .....	318
20.2.1. Action State Details Tabs .....	319
20.2.2. Action State Property ToolBar .....	320
20.2.3. Property fields for action state .....	320
20.3. Action .....	322
20.4. Transition .....	322
20.5. Call Event .....	322
20.6. Guard .....	322
20.7. Initial State .....	322
20.8. Final State .....	322
20.9. Branch .....	323
20.10. Fork .....	323
20.11. Join .....	323
21. ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
21.1. Introduction .....	324
21.1.1. Limitations Concerning Deployment Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	325
21.2. Node .....	326
21.2.1. Node Details Tabs .....	326
21.2.2. Node Property Toolbar .....	327
21.2.3. Property Fields For Node .....	327
21.3. Node Instance .....	330
21.3.1. Node Instance Details Tabs .....	330

---

21.3.2. Node Instance Property Toolbar .....	332
21.3.3. Property Fields For Node Instance .....	332
21.4. Component .....	333
21.4.1. Component Details Tabs .....	333
21.4.2. Component Property Toolbar .....	334
21.4.3. Property Fields For Component .....	335
21.5. Component Instance .....	337
21.5.1. Component Instance Details Tabs .....	337
21.5.2. Component Instance Property Toolbar .....	338
21.5.3. Property Fields For Component Instance .....	339
21.6. Dependency .....	340
21.7. Class .....	340
21.8. Interface .....	340
21.9. Association .....	340
21.10. Object .....	340
21.11. Link .....	340
22. ArgoUML Built In DataTypes, Classes, Interfaces and Stereotypes .....	
22.1. Introduction .....	341
22.1.1. Package Structure .....	341
22.2. Built In Datatypes .....	342
22.3. Built In Classes .....	342
22.3.1. Built In Classes From java.lang .....	343
22.3.2. Built In Classes From java.math .....	343
22.3.3. Built In Classes From java.net .....	343
22.3.4. Built In Classes From java.util .....	343
22.4. Built In Interfaces .....	344
22.5. Built In Stereotypes .....	344
Glossary .....	
A. Supplementary Material for the Case Study .....	
A.1. Introduction .....	356
A.2. Requirements Documents (To be written) .....	356
A.2.1. Vision Document (To be written) .....	356
A.2.2. Use Case Specifications (To be written) .....	356
A.2.3. Supplementary Requirements Specification (To be written) .....	356
B. UML resources .....	
B.1. The UML specs (To be written) .....	357
B.2. UML related papers (To be written) .....	357
B.2.1. UML action specifications (To be written) .....	357
B.3. UML related websites (To be written) .....	357
C. UML Conforming CASE Tools .....	
C.1. Other Open Source Projects (To be written) .....	358
C.2. Commercial Tools (To be written) .....	358
D. Limits and Shortcomings .....	
D.1. Diagram Canvas Size .....	359
D.2. Missing functions .....	359
E. User Manual Plan .....	
E.1. Target Audiences .....	360
E.2. Goals .....	360
E.2.1. Non-Goals .....	360
E.3. Suggested Manual Structure .....	360
E.3.1. Tutorial Manual Structure .....	361
E.3.2. Reference Manual Structure .....	362
E.4. Actions, Priorities and Questions .....	362
E.4.1. Actions and priorities .....	362
E.4.2. Remaining Questions .....	363
F. Documentation Standards for the User Manual .....	
F.1. Introduction .....	364
F.2. Style .....	364

F.3. Document Conventions .....	364
F.4. DocBook Conventions .....	364
F.5. For Emacs Users .....	365
G. Open Publication Licence .....	
G.I. REQUIREMENTS ON BOTH UNMODIFIED AND MODIFIED VERSIONS .....	367
G.II. COPYRIGHT .....	367
G.III. SCOPE OF LICENSE .....	367
G.IV. REQUIREMENTS ON MODIFIED WORKS .....	367
G.V. GOOD-PRACTICE RECOMMENDATIONS .....	368
G.VI. LICENSE OPTIONS .....	368
G.. OPEN PUBLICATION POLICY APPENDIX: .....	368
Index .....	



---

## List of Figures

2.1. The waterfall process .....	10
2.2. Effort involved in the steps of the waterfall process .....	11
2.3. Effort involved in the steps of an iterative process .....	11
2.4. Overview of the ArgoUML window .....	18
2.5. Overview of the Explorer .....	19
2.6. Overview of the Editing Pane .....	20
2.7. Overview of the Details Pane .....	21
2.8. Overview of the To-Do Pane .....	21
2.9. ArgoUML window at start-up .....	24
2.10. Invoking Save Project As... ..	25
2.11. File chooser dialog .....	26
2.12. ArgoUML window having saved FirstProject.argo .....	31
2.13. ArgoUML window showing the critic item Revise Package Name UntitledModel .....	32
2.14. ArgoUML window showing the critic wizard to rename the package .....	33
3.1. Basic use case diagram for an ATM system .....	37
3.2. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing navigation. ....	38
3.3. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing multiplicity. ....	39
3.4. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing include relationships. ....	40
3.5. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing an extend relationship. ....	41
5.1. Selecting the Interface tool .....	61
5.2. Interface artifact on the Class Diagram .....	61
5.3. Generalization on the Class Diagram tool bar .....	62
5.4. Generalization between two Interfaces. ....	62
7.1. Overview of the ArgoUML window .....	81
8.1. Overview of the explorer .....	86
8.2. Explorer perspectives dialog box .....	89
8.3. explorers dialog box .....	91
9.1. Overview of the editing pane .....	95
10.1. Overview of the details pane .....	110
10.2. Example of the To Do Item tab on the properties pane .....	111
10.3. Dialog box for New To Do Item .....	112
10.4. Dialog box for New To Do Item .....	113
10.5. A typical Properties tab on the details pane .....	115
10.6. A typical Documentation tab on the details pane .....	116
10.7. A typical Style tab on the details pane .....	117
10.8. A typical Constraints tab on the details pane .....	118
10.9. Dialog box for configuring constraints .....	119
10.10. Dialog box for configuring constraints .....	120
11.1. Overview of the to-do pane .....	124
12.1. The file selection dialog for Open Project....	129
12.2. The file selection dialog for Import Sources....	132
12.3. The dialog for Settings. ....	136
12.4. The dialog for Goto Diagram....	139
12.5. The dialog for Find....	140
12.6. The dialog for Generate Selected Classes. ....	151
12.7. The dialog for Design Issues....	153
12.8. The dialog for Design Goals....	154
12.9. The dialog for Browse Critics....	156
12.10. The help window for ArgoUML .....	162
15.1. Possible artifacts on a use case diagram. ....	192
15.2. Example use of a discriminator with generalization .....	207
16.1. Possible artifacts on a class diagram. ....	214
16.2. Possible artifacts on a package diagram. ....	215

17.1. Possible artifacts on a sequence diagram. ....	263
18.1. Possible artifacts on a state diagram. ....	277
19.1. Possible artifacts on a collaboration diagram. ....	300
20.1. Possible artifacts on an activity diagram. ....	317
21.1. Possible artifacts on a component diagram. ....	324
21.2. Possible artifacts on a deployment diagram. ....	325
22.1. Hierarchy of datatypes, classes and interfaces within ArgoUML .....	341

---

# Preface

Software design is a cognitively challenging task. Designers must manually enter designs, but the primary difficulty is decision-making rather than data-entry. If designers improved their decision-making capabilities, it would result in better designs.

Current CASE tools provide automation and graphical user interfaces that reduce the manual work of entering a design and transforming a design into code. They aid designers in decision-making mainly by providing visualization of design diagrams and simple syntactic checks. Also many CASE tools provide substantial benefits in the area of version control and concurrent design mechanisms. One area of design support that has been not been well supported is analysis of design decisions.

Current CASE tools are usable in that they provide a GUI that allows designers to access all the features provided by the tool. And they support the design process in that they allow the designer to enter diagrams in the style of popular design methodologies. But they typically do not provide process support to guide the designer through the design task. Instead, designers typically start with a blank page and must remember to cover every aspect of the design.

ArgoUML is a domain-oriented design environment that provides cognitive support of object-oriented design. ArgoUML provides some of the same automation features of a commercial CASE tool, but it focuses on features that support the cognitive needs of designers. These cognitive needs are described by three cognitive theories:

1. reflection-in-action;
2. opportunistic design; and
3. comprehension and problem solving.

ArgoUML is based directly on the UML 1.3 specification. In fact, a large part of ArgoUML was generated automatically from the UML specification. ArgoUML is (to the best of our knowledge) the only tool that implements the UML meta-model exactly as specified. In contrast, current commercial tools use basically the same internal representation of the design that they used in previous versions.

Furthermore, it is our goal to provide comprehensive support for OCL (the Object Constraint Language) and XMI (the XML Model Interchange format), which many other tools do not support.

ArgoUML was originally developed by a small group of people as a research project. ArgoUML has many features that make it special, but it does not implement all the features that commercial CASE tools provide.

The current developer release of ArgoUML implements all the diagram types of the UML 1.3 standard [<http://www.omg.org/technology/documents/formal/uml.htm>]. It is written in Java and runs on every computer which provides a Java 2 platform of Java 1.3 or newer. It uses the open file formats XMI [<http://www.omg.org/technology/documents/formal/xmi.htm>] (XML Metadata Interchange format) (for model information) and PGML [<http://www.w3.org/TR/1998/NOTE-PGML>] (Portable Graphics Markup Language) (for graph information) for storage. A new file format with graphs embedded as SVG [<http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/CR-SVG-20001102/index.html>] (Scalable Vector Graphics) in the XMI is in discussion, but is postponed until a standard for such a file format is defined by the OMG [<http://www.omg.org>] (Object Management Group).

This manual is the cumulative work of several people and has been evolving over several years. Connected to the release 0.10 of ArgoUML, Jeremy Bennett, wrote a lot of the new material that was added to the earlier versions by Alejandro Ramirez, Philippe Vanpeperstraete and Andreas Rueckert. He also added things from some of the other documents namely the developers cookbook by Markus Klink and Linus Tolke, the Quick Guide by Kunle Odutola, and the FAQ by Dennis Daniels. Connected to the release 0.14 some changes were made by Linus Tolke. These changes were mostly to adopt the manual to the new functions and appearance of ArgoUML and introduction of the index. The users and developers that has contributed by providing valuable input as review comments or observa-

tions made while reading and using this manual are too many to name.

ArgoUML is available for free and can be used in commercial settings. For terms of use, see the license agreement presented when you download ArgoUML. We are providing the source code for ArgoUML for you to review, customize to your needs, and improve. Over time, we hope that ArgoUML will evolve into a powerful and useful tool for everyone to use.

This User Manual is aimed at the working designer, who wishes to make use of ArgoUML. The manual is presently written assuming familiarity with UML, but eventually it will support those new to UML.

The manual is written in DocBook/XML and available as both HTML and PDF. However due to the limitations of the tools currently available to produce PDF, this version has some layout anomalies.

The ArgoUML project welcomes those who want to get more involved. Look at the project website [<http://argouml.tigris.org/>] to find out more.

Tell us what you think about this User Manual! Your comments will help us improve things. Email your thoughts to the ArgoUML Users Mailing List [<mailto:users@argouml.tigris.org>] or if you have found errors or omissions, enter a defect in Issuezilla [[http://argouml.tigris.org/project\\_bugs.html](http://argouml.tigris.org/project_bugs.html)] the bug tracking tool for the ArgoUML project.

---

# Chapter 1. Introduction

## 1.1. Origins and Overview of ArgoUML

### 1.1.1. Object Oriented Analysis and Design

Over the past decade, Object Oriented Analysis and Design (OOA&D) has become *the* dominant software development paradigm. With it has come a major shift in the thought processes of all involved in the software development life cycle.

Programming language support for objects began with Simula 67, but it was the emergence in the 1980's of hybrid languages, such as C++, Ada and Object Pascal that allowed OOA&D to take off. These languages provided support for both OO and procedural programming. Object Oriented *programming* became mainstream.

An OO system is designed and implemented as a *simulation* of the real world using software artifacts. This premise is as powerful as it is simple. By using an OO approach to *design* a system can be designed and tested (or more correctly simulated) without having to actually build the system first.

It is the development during the 1990's of tools to support Object Oriented *analysis* and *design* that moved this approach into the mainstream. When coupled with the ability to design systems at a very high level, a tool based OOA&D approach has enabled the implementation of more complex systems than previously possible.

The final driver that has propelled OOA&D has been its suitability for modeling graphical user interfaces. The popularity of object based and object oriented graphical languages such as Visual Basic and Java reflect the effectiveness of this approach.

### 1.1.2. The Development of ArgoUML

During the 1980's a number of OOA&D process methodologies and notations were developed by different research teams. It became clear there were many common themes and, during the 1990's, a unified approach for OOA&D notation was developed under the auspices of the Object Management Group [<http://www.omg.org>]. This standard became known as the Unified Modeling Language (UML), and is now the standard language for communicating OO concepts.

ArgoUML was conceived as a tool and environment for use in the analysis and design of object-oriented software systems. In this sense it is similar to many of the commercial CASE tools that are sold as tools for modeling software systems. ArgoUML has a number of very important distinctions from many of these tools.

1. ArgoUML draws on research in cognitive psychology to provide novel features that increase productivity by supporting the cognitive needs of object-oriented software designers and architects.
2. ArgoUML supports open standards extensively—UML, XMI, SVG, OCL and others. In this respect, ArgoUML is still ahead of many commercial tools.
3. ArgoUML is a 100% pure Java application. This allows ArgoUML to run on all platforms for which a reliable port of the Java2 platform is available.
4. ArgoUML is an open source project. The availability of the source ensures that a new generation of software designers and researchers now have a proven framework from which they can drive the development and evolution of CASE tool technologies.

UML is the most prevalent OO modeling language and Java is one of the most productive OO development platforms. Jason Robbins and the rest of his research team at the University of California, Irvine leveraged these bene-

fits in creating the ArgoUML. The result is a solid development tool and environment for OO systems design. Further, it provides a test bed for the evolution of object oriented CASE tools development and research.

A first release of ArgoUML was available in 1998 and more than 100,000 downloads by mid-2001 show the impact that this project has made, being popular in educational and commercial fields.

## **1.1.3. Finding Out More About the ArgoUML Project**

### **1.1.3.1. How ArgoUML is Developed**

Jason Elliot Robbins founded the Argo Project and provided early project leadership. While Jason remains active in the project, he has handed off project leadership. The project continues to move forward strongly. There are more than 300 members on the developer mailing list (see <http://argouml.tigris.org/servlets/ProjectMailingListList>), with a couple of dozen of those forming the core development group.

This is the place where all the discussion on the latest tasks takes place, and developers discuss the directions the project should take. Although controversial at times, these discussions are always kept nice and friendly (no flame-wars and such), so newbies should not hesitate and participate in them. You'll always get a warm welcome there.

If you want to learn some details about how the project is run and how you should go about to contribute go the the ArgoUML Web Site Developer Zone [<http://argouml.tigris.org/dev.html>] and read through the documentation there. The Cookbook is an important document.

### **1.1.3.2. More on Infrastructure**

Besides the developer mailing list, there's also a mailing for users (see The ArgoUML Mailing List List [<http://argouml.tigris.org/servlets/ProjectMailingListList>]), where we can discuss problems from a user perspective. Developers also read this list, so there's a good chance to get qualified help.

Before posting to this list, you should take a look at the user FAQ [<http://argouml.tigris.org/faqs/users.html>] maintained by Ewan R. Grantham.

More information on ArgoUML and other UML related topics is also available on the ArgoUML website [<http://argouml.tigris.org>], maintained by Linus Tolke.

## **1.2. Scope of This User Manual**

### **1.2.1. Target Audience**

The current release of this document is aimed at experienced users of UML in OOA&D (perhaps with other tools) who wish to transfer to ArgoUML.

Future releases will support designers who know OOA&D, and wish to adopt UML notation within their development process.

A long term goal is to support i) those who are learning design and wish to start with an OOA&D process that uses UML notation, and ii) people interested in modularized code design with a GUI.

### **1.2.2. Scope**

The intention is that this document will provide a comprehensive guide, enabling designers to use ArgoUML to its full extent. It is in two parts.

- A tutorial manual, showing how to work with ArgoUML
- A complete reference manual, recording everything you can do with ArgoUML.

The current version of the document has achieved the second of these.

In this guide there are some things you will not find, because they are covered elsewhere.

- Descriptions of how ArgoUML works on the inside.
- How to improve ArgoUML with new features and functions.
- A trouble shooting guide.
- A summary quick reference to using ArgoUML.

These are covered in the Developers Cookbook [<http://argouml.tigris.org/documentation/defaulthtml/cookbook/>], the FAQ [<http://argouml.tigris.org/faqs/users.html>], and the Quick Guide [<http://argouml.tigris.org/documentation/defaulthtml/quickguide/>].

## 1.3. Overview of the User Manual

### 1.3.1. Tutorial Manual Structure

Chapter 2, *UML Based OOA&D* provides an overview of UML based OOA&D, including a guide to getting ArgoUML up and running.

Chapter 3, *Requirements Capture* through Chapter 6, *Build (To be written)* then step through each part of the design process from initial requirements capture through to final project build and deployment.

As each UML concept is encountered, its use is explained. Its use within ArgoUML is then described. Finally the a study is used to give examples of the concepts in use.

### 1.3.2. Reference Manual Structure

Chapter 7, *User Interface Reference* is an overview of the user interface and provides a summary of the support for the various UML diagram types in ArgoUML. Separate chapters Chapter 8, *The Explorer* through Chapter 12, *The Menu bar* describe each of the sub-windows of the user interface, known as *Panes*, and the menu bar.

Chapter 13, *The Critics* gives details of all the cognitive critics within the system. Eventually ArgoUML will link directly to this manual when giving advice on critics.

Chapter 14, *ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference* is an overview of the artifacts (i.e. the UML entities that can be placed on diagrams) within ArgoUML. The following chapters (Chapter 15, *ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference* through Chapter 22, *ArgoUML Built In DataTypes, Classes, Interfaces and Stereotypes*) describe, the artifacts that can be created through each ArgoUML diagram, and their properties, as well as some standard artifacts provided with the system.

A complete Glossary is provided. Appendix A, *Supplementary Material for the Case Study* provides material to supplement the case study used throughout the document. Appendix B, *UML resources* and Appendix C, *UML Conforming CASE Tools* identify background information on UML and UML CASE tools. Appendix E, *User Manual Plan* describes the plan for creation of this manual. Appendix F, *Documentation Standards for the User Manual* gives some guidelines for those writing this manual. Appendix G, *Open Publication Licence* is a copy of the GNU Free Documentation License.

A future ambition is to provide a comprehensive index

### **1.3.3. User Feedback**

Please tell us what you think about this User Manual. Your comments will help us make improvements. Email your thoughts to the ArgoUML Users Mailing List [mailto:users@argouml.tigris.org]. In case you would like to add to the missing chapters you should contact the ArgoUML Developer Mailing List [mailto:dev@argouml.tigris.org] to check whether noone else is working on this part. You can subscribe to either of the mailinglists via the ArgoUML web site [http://argouml.tigris.org].

## **1.4. Assumptions**

This release of the manual assumes the reader is very familiar with UML already. This is reflected in the sparseness of the description of UML concepts in the tutorial.

The case study is described, but not yet fully realized throughout the tutorial. This will be achieved in future releases of the manual.



---

# **Part I. ArgoUML Tutorial Manual**

---

---

## Table of Contents

2. UML Based OOA&D .....	9
2.1. Introduction .....	9
2.2. Background to UML .....	9
2.3. UML Based Processes for OOA&D .....	9
2.3.1. Types of Process .....	10
2.3.2. A Development Process for This Manual .....	13
2.4. Why ArgoUML is Different .....	14
2.4.1. Cognitive Psychology .....	14
2.4.2. Open Standards .....	15
2.4.3. 100% Pure Java .....	16
2.4.4. Open Source .....	16
2.5. ArgoUML Basics .....	17
2.5.1. Getting Started .....	17
2.5.2. The ArgoUML User Interface .....	18
2.5.3. Output .....	28
2.5.4. Working With Design Critics .....	31
2.6. The Case Study (To be written) .....	34
3. Requirements Capture .....	35
3.1. Introduction .....	35
3.2. The Requirements Capture Process .....	35
3.2.1. Process Steps .....	36
3.3. Output of the Requirements Capture Process .....	36
3.3.1. Vision Document .....	36
3.3.2. Use Case Diagram .....	37
3.3.3. The Use Case Specification .....	42
3.3.4. Supplementary Requirement Specification .....	45
3.4. Using Use Cases in ArgoUML .....	46
3.4.1. Actors .....	46
3.4.2. Use Cases .....	46
3.4.3. Associations .....	47
3.4.4. Hierarchical Use Cases .....	49
3.4.5. Stereotypes .....	50
3.4.6. Documentation .....	50
3.4.7. System Boundary Box .....	50
3.5. Case Study .....	51
3.5.1. Vision Document .....	51
3.5.2. Identifying Actors and Use Cases (To be written) .....	53
3.5.3. Associations (To be written) .....	53
3.5.4. Advanced Diagram Features (To be written) .....	53
3.5.5. Use Case Specifications (To be written) .....	53
3.5.6. Supplementary Requirements Specification (To be written) .....	53
4. Analysis .....	54
4.1. Introduction .....	54
4.2. The Analysis Process (To be written) .....	54
4.2.1. Output of the Analysis Process (To be written) .....	54
4.3. Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	54
4.3.1. The Class Diagram (To be written) .....	54
4.3.2. Advanced Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	54
4.4. Creating Class Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	55
4.4.1. Classes .....	55
4.4.2. Associations (To be written) .....	55
4.4.3. Class Attributes and Operations (To be written) .....	55
4.4.4. Advanced Class Features (To be written) .....	55

---

4.5. Sequence Diagrams (To be written) .....	56
4.5.1. The Sequence Diagram (To be written) .....	56
4.5.2. Identifying Actions (To be written) .....	56
4.5.3. Advanced Sequence Diagrams (To be written) .....	56
4.6. Creating Sequence Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	56
4.6.1. Sequence Diagrams .....	56
4.6.2. Actions (To be written) .....	56
4.6.3. Advanced Sequence Diagrams (To be written) .....	56
4.7. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	56
4.7.1. The State Diagram (To be written) .....	56
4.7.2. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written) .....	56
4.8. Creating State Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	57
4.8.1. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	57
4.8.2. States (To be written) .....	57
4.8.3. Transitions (To be written) .....	57
4.8.4. Actions (To be written) .....	57
4.8.5. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written) .....	57
4.9. Realisation Use Cases (To be written) .....	57
4.10. Creating Realisation Use Cases in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	57
4.11. Case Study (To be written) .....	57
4.11.1. Concept Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	57
4.11.2. System Sequence Diagrams (To be written) .....	58
4.11.3. System State Diagrams (To be written) .....	58
4.11.4. Realisation Use Cases (To be written) .....	58
5. Design .....	
5.1. Introduction .....	59
5.2. The Design Process (To be written) .....	59
5.2.1. Output of the Design Process (To be written) .....	59
5.3. Package Diagrams (To be written) .....	59
5.3.1. The Package Diagram (To be written) .....	59
5.3.2. Advanced Package Diagrams (To be written) .....	59
5.4. Creating Package Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	60
5.4.1. Packages .....	60
5.4.2. Relationships between packages (To be written) .....	60
5.4.3. Advanced Package Features (To be written) .....	60
5.5. More on Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	60
5.5.1. The Class Diagram (To be written) .....	60
5.5.2. Advanced Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	61
5.6. More on Class Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	61
5.6.1. Classes (To be written) .....	61
5.6.2. Class Attributes and Operations (To be written) .....	61
5.6.3. Advanced Class Features .....	61
5.7. Sequence and Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	63
5.7.1. More on the Sequence Diagram (To be written) .....	63
5.7.2. The Collaboration Diagram (To be written) .....	64
5.7.3. Advanced Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.8. Creating Collaboration Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	64
5.8.1. Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.8.2. Messages (To be written) .....	64
5.8.3. Advanced Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.9. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.9.1. The State Diagram (To be written) .....	64
5.9.2. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written) .....	64
5.10. Creating State Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	65
5.10.1. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	65
5.10.2. States (To be written) .....	65
5.10.3. Transitions (To be written) .....	65
5.10.4. Actions (To be written) .....	65

---

5.10.5. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written) .....	65
5.11. Activity Diagrams (To be written) .....	66
5.11.1. The Activity Diagram (To be written) .....	66
5.12. Creating Activity Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	66
5.12.1. Activity Diagrams (To be written) .....	66
5.12.2. Action States (To be written) .....	66
5.13. Deployment Diagrams (To be written) .....	66
5.13.1. The Deployment Diagram (To be written) .....	66
5.14. Creating Deployment Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written) .....	66
5.14.1. Nodes (To be written) .....	66
5.14.2. Components (To be written) .....	67
5.14.3. Relationships between nodes and components (To be written) .....	67
5.15. System Architecture (To be written) .....	67
5.16. Case Study (To be written) .....	67
5.16.1. Packages (To be written) .....	67
5.16.2. Class Diagrams (To be written) .....	67
5.16.3. Sequence Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.4. Collaboration Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.5. State Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.6. Activity Diagrams (To be written) .....	68
5.16.7. The Deployment Diagram (To be written) .....	68
5.16.8. The System Architecture (To be written) .....	68
6. Build (To be written) .....	
6.1. Introduction .....	69
6.2. The Build Process (To be written) .....	69
6.2.1. Output of the Build Process (To be written) .....	69
6.3. Adding Code to ArgoUML (To be written) .....	69
6.3.1. Classes (To be written) .....	69
6.3.2. Actions (To be written) .....	69
6.4. Case Study (To be written) .....	69
6.4.1. Coding for Classes (To be written) .....	69
6.4.2. Coding Actions (To be written) .....	69
6.5. Case Study (To be written) .....	70

---

# Chapter 2. UML Based OOA&D

## 2.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we look at how UML as a notation is used within OOA&D.

## 2.2. Background to UML

*Object orientation* as a concept has been around since the 1960's, and as a design concept since 1972. However it was in the 1980's that it started to develop as a credible alternative to a *functional approach* in analysis and design. We can identify a number of drivers.

1. The emergence of mainstream OO programming languages like SmallTalk and particularly C++. C++ was a pragmatic OO language derived from C, widely used because of its association with Unix.
2. The development of powerful workstations, and with them the emergence into the mainstream of windowing operating user environments. Graphical User Interfaces (GUI) have an inherent object structure.
3. A number of very public major project failures, suggesting that current approaches were not satisfactory.

A number of researchers proposed OOA&D processes, and with them notations. Those that achieved some success include Coad-Yourdon, Booch, Rumbaugh OMT, OOSE/Jacobson, Shlaer-Mellor, ROOM (for real-time design) and the hybrid Jackson Structured Development.

During the early 1990's it became clear that these approaches had many good ideas, often very similar. A major stumbling block was the diversity of notation, meaning engineers tended to be familiar with one OOA&D methodology, rather than the approach in general.

UML was conceived as a common notation, that would be in the interests of all involved. The original standard was driven by Rational Software ([www.rational.com](http://www.rational.com) [<http://www.rational.com>], in which three of the key researchers in the field (Booch, Jacobson and Rumbaugh were involved). They produced documents describing v0.9 and v0.91 during 1996. The effort was taken industry wide through the Object Management Group (OMG), already well known for the CORBA standard. A first proposal, 1.0 was published in early 1997, with an improved version 1.1 approved that autumn.

ArgoUML is based on UML v1.3, which was adopted by OMG in November 1999. UML v1.4 has recently been approved (2001). A major revision, UML v2.0 is planned to be completed in 2002.

## 2.3. UML Based Processes for OOA&D

It is important to understand that UML is a notation for OOA&D. It does not prescribe any particular process.

Whatever process is adopted, it must take the system being constructed through a number of phases.

1. Requirements Capture. This is where we identify the requirements for the system, using the language of the *problem domain*. In other words we describe the problem in the “customer's# terms.
2. Analysis. We take the requirements and start to recast them in the language of a putative solution—the *solution domain*. At this stage, although thinking in terms of a solution, we ensure we keep things at a high level, away from concrete details of a specific solution—what is known as *abstraction*.

3. Design. We take the specification from the Analysis phase and construct the solution in full detail. We are moving from *abstraction* of the problem to its *realization* in concrete terms.
4. Build Phase. We take the actual design and write it in a real programming language. This includes not just the programming, but the testing that the program meets the requirements (*verification*), testing that the program actually solves the customer's problem (*validation*) and writing all user documentation.

## 2.3.1. Types of Process

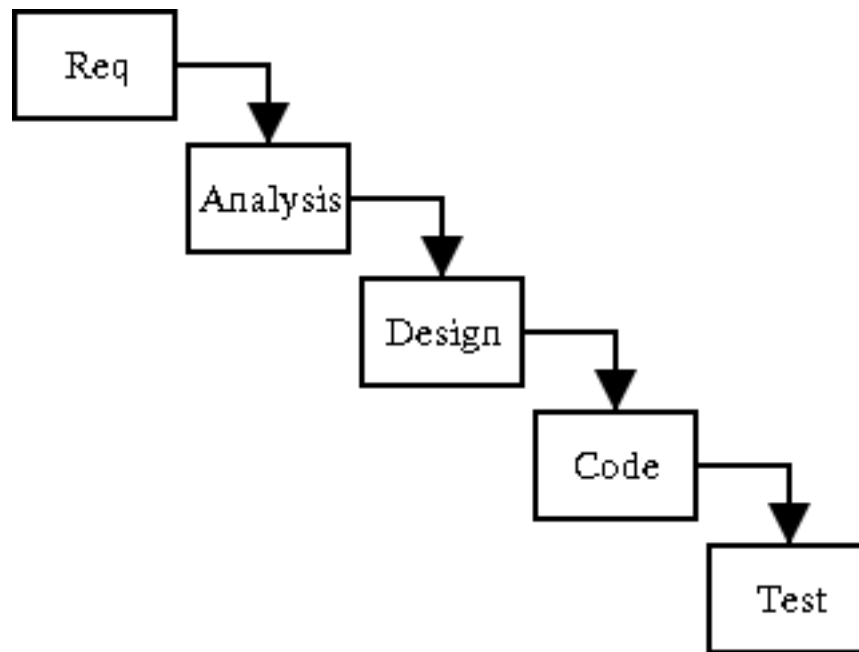
In this section we look at the two main types of process in use for software engineering. There are others, but they are less widely used.

In recent years there has also been a move to reduce the effort required in developing software. This has led to the development of a number of lightweight variants of processes (often known as *agile computing* or *extreme programming*) that are suited to very small teams of engineers.

### 2.3.1.1. The Waterfall Process

In this process, each stage of the process—requirements, analysis, design and build (code and test) is completed before the next one starts. This is illustrated in Figure 2.1.

**Figure 2.1. The waterfall process**



This is a very satisfactory process where requirements are well designed and not expected to change, for example automating a well proven manual system.

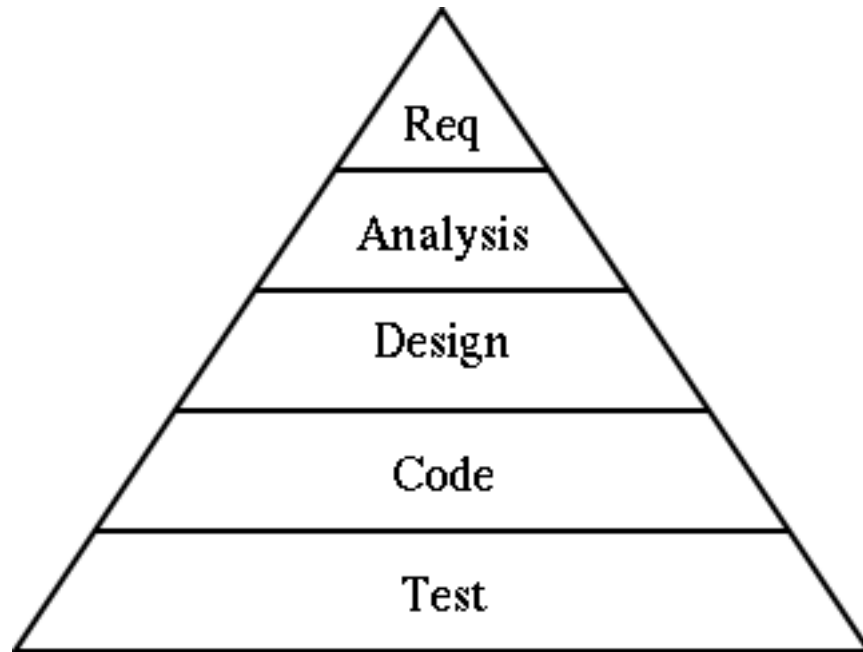
The weaknesses of this approach show with less well defined problems. Invariably some of the uncertainties in the requirements will not be clarified until well into the analysis and design, or even code phases, requiring backtracking to redo work.

The worst aspect of this, is that working code does not become available until near the end of the project, and very

often it is only at this stage that problems with the original requirements (for example with the user interface) become apparent.

This is exacerbated, by each successive stage requiring more effort, than the previous, so that the costs of late problem discovery are hugely expensive. This is illustrated by the pyramid in Figure 2.2.

**Figure 2.2. Effort involved in the steps of the waterfall process**



The waterfall process is still probably the dominant design process. However because of its limitations it is increasingly replaced by *iterative* processes, particularly for projects where the requirements are not well defined.

### **2.3.1.2. Iterative Development Processes**

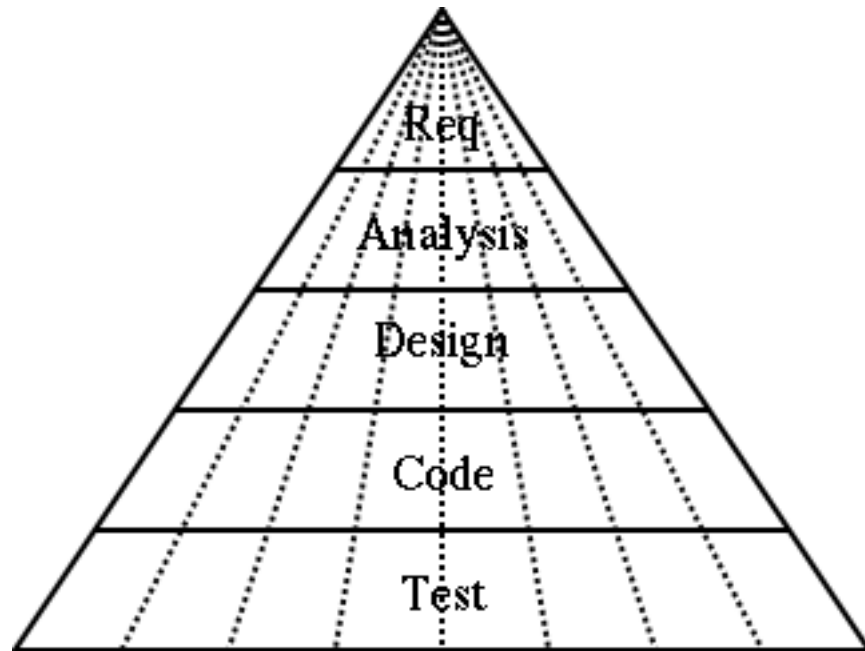
In recent years a new approach has been used, which aims to get at least part of the code up and running as quickly as possible, to bring discovery of problems forward in the development cycle.

These processes use a series of “mini-waterfalls”, defining a few requirements (the most important) first, taking them through analysis, design and build to get an early version of the product, with limited functionality, related to the most important requirements. Feedback from this can then be used to refine the requirements, spot problems etc before more work is done.

The process is then repeated for further requirements to construct a product with a step up in functionality. Again further feedback can be applied to the requirements.

The process is repeated, until eventually all requirements have been implemented and the product is complete. It is this *iteration* that gives these processes their name. Figure 2.3 shows how this process compares to the pyramid structure of the Waterfall Process.

**Figure 2.3. Effort involved in the steps of an iterative process**



The growth in popularity of iterative processes is closely tied to the growth of OOA&D. It is the clean encapsulation of objects that allows a part of a system to be built with stubs for the remaining code clearly defined.

### 2.3.1.2.1. The Rational Unified Process

Perhaps the best known Iterative Process is the Rational Unified Process (RUP) from Rational Software ([www.rational.com](http://www.rational.com) [<http://www.rational.com>]).

This process recognizes that our pyramid view of even slices of the waterfall is not realistic. In practice the early iterations tend to be heavy on the requirements end of things (you need to define a reasonable amount even to get started), while the later iterations have more of their effort in the design and build areas.

RUP recognizes that iterations can be grouped into a number of *phases* according to their stage in the overall project. Each phase may have one or more iterations.

- In the *inception phase* iterations tend to be heavy on the requirements/analysis end, while any build activity may be limited to emulation of the design within a CASE tool.
- In the *elaboration phase* iterations tend to be completing the specification of the requirements, and starting to focus on the analysis and design, and possibly the first real built code.
- In the *construction phase* iterations are more or less completed with the requirements and analysis, and the effort is mostly in design and build.
- Finally, in the *deployment phase* iterations are largely about build activity, and in particular the testing of the software.



#### Note

It should be clear that testing is an integral part of all phases. Even in the early phases the requirements and design should be tested, and this is facilitated by a good CASE tool.



We shall use an iterative process in this manual, that is loosely based on the RUP.

#### 2.3.1.2.2. How Big is an Iteration?

A good rule of thumb is that an iteration should take between six and ten weeks for typical commercial projects. Any longer and you have probably bitten off too many requirements to do in one go. You also lose focus on getting the next working iteration completed. Any shorter and you probably haven't got enough requirements to make a significant advance, and will struggle to get all the work done.

This then begs the question of how many iterations in total. This depends on the size of project. Take the estimated time (and working out/guessing that is a whole subject on its own), and divided it into 8 week chunks. Experience seems to suggest that the iterations will divide in the ratio of around 1:2:3:3 into RUP style inception, elaboration, construction and deployment phases. A project that has great vagueness in its specification (some advanced research projects for example) will tend to be heavier on the early phases.

When building a product to contract for a customer the end point is well defined. However when developing a new product for the market place, a strategy that can be used is to decide the product launch date, and hence the end date for completion of engineering (some time before). The time is then divided into iterations, and as much of the product as can be built in that time developed. The iterative process is very effective where time to market is more important than the exact functionality.

#### 2.3.1.3. Recursive Development Processes

Very few software systems are conceived as monolithic artifacts. They are broken down into subsystems, modules etc.

Software processes are the same, with early parts of the process defining a top level structure, and the process reapplying to parts of the structure in turn to define ever greater details.

For example the initial design of a telephone system might identify objects to i) handle the phone lines, ii) process the calls, iii) manage the system and iv) bill the customer. The software process can then be reapplied to each of these four components to identify their design.

OOA&D with its clean boundaries to objects, naturally supports this approach. Such OOA&D with recursive development is sometimes abbreviated as OOA&D/RD.

Recursive development can be applied equally well to waterfall or iterative processes. It is not an alternative to them.

### 2.3.2. A Development Process for This Manual

For the purpose of this manual we will use a stripped down iterative process with recursive development, loosely akin to RUP. The case study will take us through the first iteration, although at the end of the tutorial section of the manual we will look at how the project will develop to completion.

Within that first iteration, we will tackle each of the requirements capture, analysis, design and build activities in turn. Not all parts of the process are based on UML or ArgoUML. We will look at what other material is needed outside.

Within this process we will have an opportunity to see the various UML diagrams in use. The full range of UML diagrams and how they are supported is described in the reference manual (see Section 7.3, "UML Diagram Types supported by ArgoUML#).

#### 2.3.2.1. Requirements Capture

Our requirements capture will use the UML concept of *Use Cases*. Starting with a *Vision Document* we will see how Use Cases can be developed to describe all aspects of the system's behavior in the problem domain.

### 2.3.2.2. Analysis

During the analysis stage, we will introduce the UML concept of *classes* to allow us to build a top level view of the objects that will make up the solution—sometimes known as a *concept diagram*.

We will introduce the UML *sequence diagram* and *state diagram* to capture requirements for the overall behavior of the system.

Finally we will take the Use Cases from the requirements capture stage, and recast them in the language of the solution domain. This will illustrate the UML ideas of *stereotyping* and *realization*.

### 2.3.2.3. Design

We use the UML *package diagram* to organize the components of the project. We then revisit the class diagram, sequence diagram and state diagram, to show how they can be used recursively to design the complete solution.

During this part of the process, we need to develop our system architecture, to define how all the components will fit together and operate.

Although not strictly part of our process, we'll look at how the UML *collaboration diagram* can be used as an alternative to, or to complement the *sequence diagram*. Similarly we will look at the UML *activity diagram* as an alternative or complement to the state diagram.

Finally we shall use the UML *deployment diagram* to specify how the system will actually be realized.

### 2.3.2.4. Build

UML is not really concerned with code writing. However at this stage we will show how ArgoUML can be used for code generation.

We will also look at how the UML Use Case Diagram and Use Case Specification are invaluable tools for a test program.

## 2.4. Why ArgoUML is Different

In the introduction, we listed the four key things that make ArgoUML different: i) it makes use of ideas from cognitive psychology, ii) it is based on open standards; iii) it is 100% pure Java; and iv) it is an open source project.

### 2.4.1. Cognitive Psychology

#### 2.4.1.1. Theory

ArgoUML is particularly inspired by three theories within cognitive psychology: i) reflection-in-action, ii) opportunistic design iii) and comprehension and problem solving.

##### 2.4.1.1.1. Reflection-in-Action

This theory observes that designers of complex systems do not conceive a design fully-formed. Instead, they must construct a partial design, evaluate, reflect on, and revise it, until they are ready to extend it further.

As developers work hands-on with the design, their mental model of the problem situation improves, hence improving their design.

##### 2.4.1.1.2. Opportunistic Design

A theory within cognitive psychology suggesting that although designers plan and describe their work in an ordered,

hierarchical fashion, in reality, they choose successive tasks based on the criteria of cognitive cost.

Simply stated, designers do not follow even their own plans in order, but choose steps that are mentally least expensive among alternatives.

#### 2.4.1.1.3. Comprehension and Problem Solving

A design visualization theory within cognitive psychology. The theory notes that designers must bridge a gap between their mental model of the problem or situation and the formal model of a solution or system.

This theory suggests that programmers will benefit from:

1. Multiple representations such as program syntactic decomposition, state transitions, control flow, and data flow. These allow the programmer to better identify elements and relationships in the problem and solution and thus more readily create a mapping between their situation models and working system models.
2. Familiar aspects of a situation model, which improve designers' abilities to formulate solutions.

#### 2.4.1.2. Practical Application in ArgoUML

The implementation of these theories within ArgoUML is through a number of techniques.

1. The design of a user interface which allows the user to view the design from a number of different perspectives, and allows the user to achieve goals through a number of alternative routes.
2. The use of processes running in parallel with the design tool, evaluating the current design against models of how “best practice” design might work. These processes are known as *design critics*.
3. The use of *to-do lists* to convey suggestions from the design critics to the user, as well as allowing the user to record areas for future action.
4. The use of checklists, to guide the user through a complex process.

### 2.4.2. Open Standards

UML is itself an open standard. ArgoUML throughout has tried to use open standards for all its interfaces.

The key advantage of open standards is that it permits easy inter-working between applications, and the ability to move from one application to another as necessary.

It is this very flexibility that means some commercial software is not built to use standards. In a monopolistic strategy, non-standard interfaces lock your customer to you.

This is a two-edged sword. Customers are not stupid, and are reluctant to buy non-standard software, because of the danger of lock-in.

The open source movement, is inherently about avoiding monopolistic control of software. Open standards are a natural direction for such software—including ArgoUML.

#### 2.4.2.1. XML Metadata Interchange (XMI)

*XML Metadata Interchange (XMI)* is the standard for saving the meta-data that make up a particular UML model. In principle this will allow you to take the model you have created in ArgoUML and import it into another tool.

This clearly has advantages in allowing UML to meet its goal of being a standard for communication between designers.

The reality is not quite this good. XMI is a recent standard, and ArgoUML is one of the few tools to implement it. Furthermore it says nothing about the graphical representation of the models, so diagram layout is lost. ArgoUML gets round this by saving graphical information with the model (see Section 2.5.3.1, “Loading and Saving#”).

### 2.4.2.2. Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG)

*Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG)* is a recent standard proposed to the W3C Standardization body ([www.w3c.org](http://www.w3c.org) [<http://www.w3c.org>]) by Adobe ([www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com) [<http://www.adobe.com>]). As yet it is not widely adopted, but is likely to become the standard for graphical data that is based on vectors (i.e. lines) rather than bitmaps.

For now ArgoUML saves diagrams using an earlier proposed standard, *Portable Graphics Markup Language (PGML)*. However it has the option to export graphical data as SVG for those who can make use of it.

### 2.4.2.3. Object Constraint Language (OCL)

*Object Constraint Language (OCL)* is the UML standard for expressing constraints within diagrams that express the dynamic behavior of a design.

At present OCL is quite new and not widely available. ArgoUML is one of the few CASE tools to provide comprehensive support.

## 2.4.3. 100% Pure Java

Java was conceived as an interpreted language. It doesn't have a compiler to produce code for any particular target machine. It compiles code for its own target, the *Java Virtual Machine (JVM)*.

Writing an interpreter for a JVM is much easier than writing a compiler, and such machines are now incorporated into almost every Web Browser. As a result most machines can run Java, with no further work.

(In case you wonder why all languages aren't like this, it is because interpreted languages tend to be slower than compiled languages. However with the high performance of modern PCs, the trade-off for portability is worthwhile for many applications. Furthermore modern multi-level caches can mean that interpreted languages, which produce denser code, may actually not be that much slower anyway.)

By choosing to write ArgoUML in pure Java, it is immediately made available to the maximum number of users with the minimum amount of effort.

## 2.4.4. Open Source

ArgoUML is an *open source* project. That means anyone can have a free copy of the source code, change it, use it for new purposes and so on. The only (major) obligation is that you pass your code on in the same way to others. The precise nature of what you can and can't do varies from project to project, but the principle is the same.

The advantage is that a small project like ArgoUML suddenly is open to a lot of additional help from those who can chip in their ideas for how the program might be improved. At any one time there may be 10, 15, 20 or more people making significant contributions to ArgoUML. To do that commercially would cost \$1m+ per year.

It's not just a spirit of pure altruism. Contributing is a way of learning “hands-on” about leading edge software. It's a way of getting a lot of visibility (over 100,000 people had downloaded ArgoUML by the spring of 2001). That's a lot of good experience on a resumé and a lot of potential employers seeing you!

And it's great for the ego!

Open Source doesn't preclude making money. Gentleware [www.gentleware.com](http://www.gentleware.com) [<http://www.gentleware.com>] sell a

commercial version of ArgoUML, Poseidon. Their value proposition is not a piece of private code. Its the commercial polish and support that take risk out of using ArgoUML in a commercial development, allowing customers to take advantage of ArgoUML's leading edge technology.

## 2.5. ArgoUML Basics

The aim of this section is to get you started with ArgoUML. It takes you through obtaining the code and getting it running.

### 2.5.1. Getting Started

You have three options for obtaining ArgoUML.

1. Run ArgoUML directly from the Web Site using Java Web Start. This is the easiest option.
2. Download the binary code. This is the right option if you intend using ArgoUML regularly and is not that difficult.
3. Download the source code using CVS and build your own version. Choose this option if you want to look at the internal workings of ArgoUML, or want to join in as a developer.

All three options are freely available through the project web site, [argouml.tigris.org](http://argouml.tigris.org) [<http://argouml.tigris.org>].

If you choose to download the binary, you will have a choice of downloading the latest stable version of the code (which will be more reliable, but not have all the latest features), or the current version (which will be less reliable, but have more features). Choose according to your own situation.

#### 2.5.1.1. ArgoUML using Java Web Start

There are two steps to this.

1. Install Java Web Start on your machine. This is available from [java.sun.com/products/javawebstart](http://java.sun.com/products/javawebstart) [<http://java.sun.com/products/javawebstart>], or via the Java Web Start link on the ArgoUML home page [<http://argouml.tigris.org>].
2. Click on the Launch latest stable release link on the ArgoUML home page [<http://argouml.tigris.org>].

Java Web Start will download ArgoUML, cache it and start it the first time, then on subsequent starts, check if ArgoUML is updated and only download any updated parts and then start it. The ArgoUML home page [<http://argouml.tigris.org>] also provides details on starting ArgoUML from the Java Web Start console.

#### 2.5.1.2. Downloading ArgoUML

Since ArgoUML is written in 100% pure Java, it should run on any machine with a Java Engine. Java2, version 1.3 or later is needed. You may have this in place, but if not it can be downloaded free from Sun Microsystems ([www.sun.com](http://www.sun.com) [<http://www.sun.com>]). Note that you only need the Java Runtime Environment (JRE), there is no need to download the whole Java Development Kit (JDK).

ArgoUML needs a reasonable amount of computing resource. A PC with 300MHz processor, 64Mb RAM and 10Mb of disk should be adequate. Download the code from Download section of the project website [argouml.tigris.org](http://argouml.tigris.org) [<http://argouml.tigris.org>]. Choose the version that suits your needs as described in the section above.

ArgoUML comes in .zip or tar.gz flavors. Choose the former if you are a Microsoft Windows user, and the latter if you are running some flavor of Unix. Unpacking is as follows.

- On Windows. Unzip the .zip file with WinZip, or on later versions of Windows (ME, XP) copy the files out of the compressed folder and put them into a directory of your choosing.
- Use GNU tar to unzip and break out the files to a directory of your choice `tar zxvf <file>.tar.gz`. If you have an older version of tar, the `z` option may not be available, so use `gunzip < file.tar.gz | tar xvf -`.

You should have a directory containing the following files: `antlrall.jar`, `gef.jar`, `nsuml.jar`, `README.txt`, `argouml.jar`, `log4j.jar`, `ocl-argo.jar` and `xerces.jar`. To run ArgoUML depends on whether you are a Microsoft Windows or Unix user.

- On Windows. Start a MSDOS shell window. Use Start/Run with the default “command#. In the window change to the directory holding your ArgoUML files and type `java -jar argouml.jar`
- Start a shell window and type `java -jar argouml.jar`

#### 2.5.1.2.1. Problems Downloading

If you get completely stuck and you have no local assistance, try the web site, particularly the FAQ [<http://argouml.tigris.org/faqs/users.html>]. If this still doesn't solve the problem, try the ArgoUML users' mailing list.

You can subscribe through the mailing lists section of the project web site [argouml.tigris.org](http://argouml.tigris.org) [<http://argouml.tigris.org>], or send an empty message to `users@argouml.org` [<mailto:users@argouml.org>] with the subject line `subscribe`.

You can then send your problem to `users@argouml.org` [<mailto:users@argouml.org>] and see how other users are able to help.

The users' mailing list is an excellent introduction to the live activity of the project. If you want to get further involved there are additional mailing lists that cover the development of the product and issues in the current and future releases.

#### 2.5.1.2.2. Problems Running ArgoUML

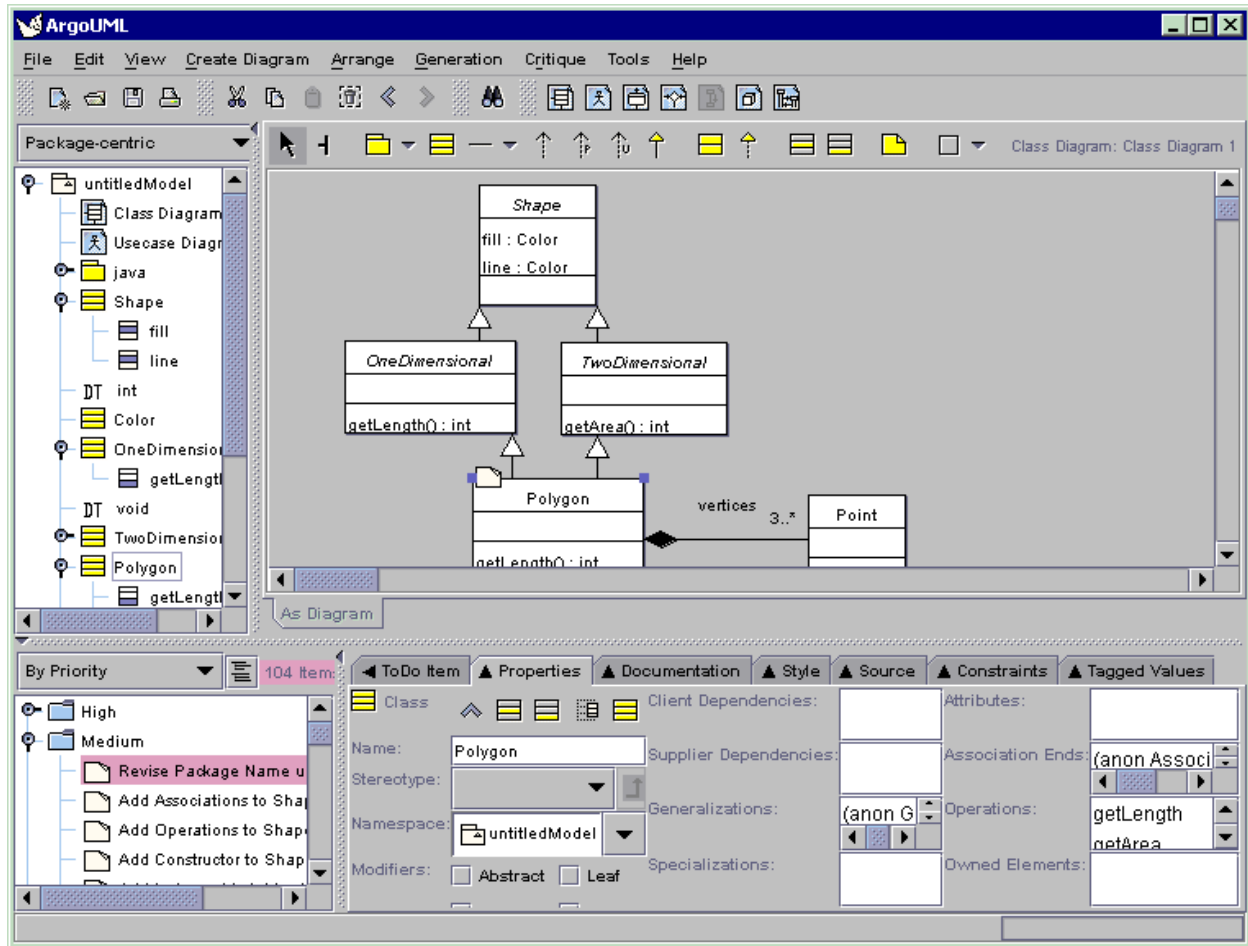
It's unusual to encounter problems if you have made a successful download. Most common issue is not having a new enough Java Runtime Environment (it must be 1.2 or later).

If you can't solve the problem. Try the users' mailing list (see Section 2.5.1.2.1, “Problems Downloading#).

### 2.5.2. The ArgoUML User Interface

Figure 2.4 shows the main ArgoUML window.

**Figure 2.4. Overview of the ArgoUML window**

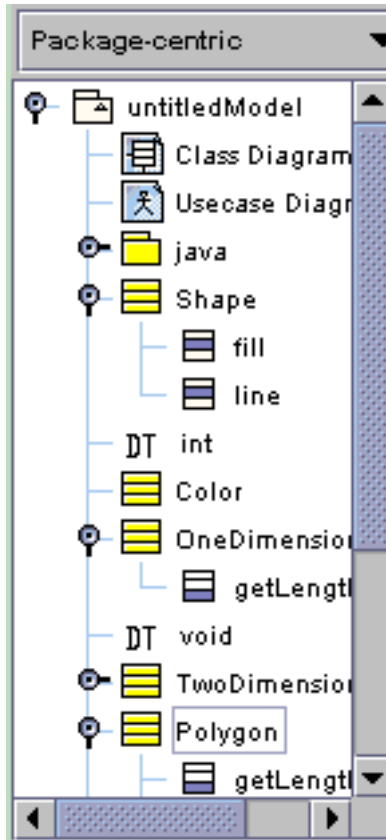


At the top of screen is a *menu bar*. Under that there are Toolbars. Then the bulk of the window comprises four sub-windows or *Panes*. Clockwise from top left these are the *Explorer*, *Editing Pane*, *Details Pane* and *To-Do Pane*. At the top of the Editing Pane is another *toolbar* called the Edit Pane Toolbar. Finally at the bottom of the window is a *status bar*.

### 2.5.2.1. The Explorer

Figure 2.5 shows the Explorer.

**Figure 2.5. Overview of the Explorer**



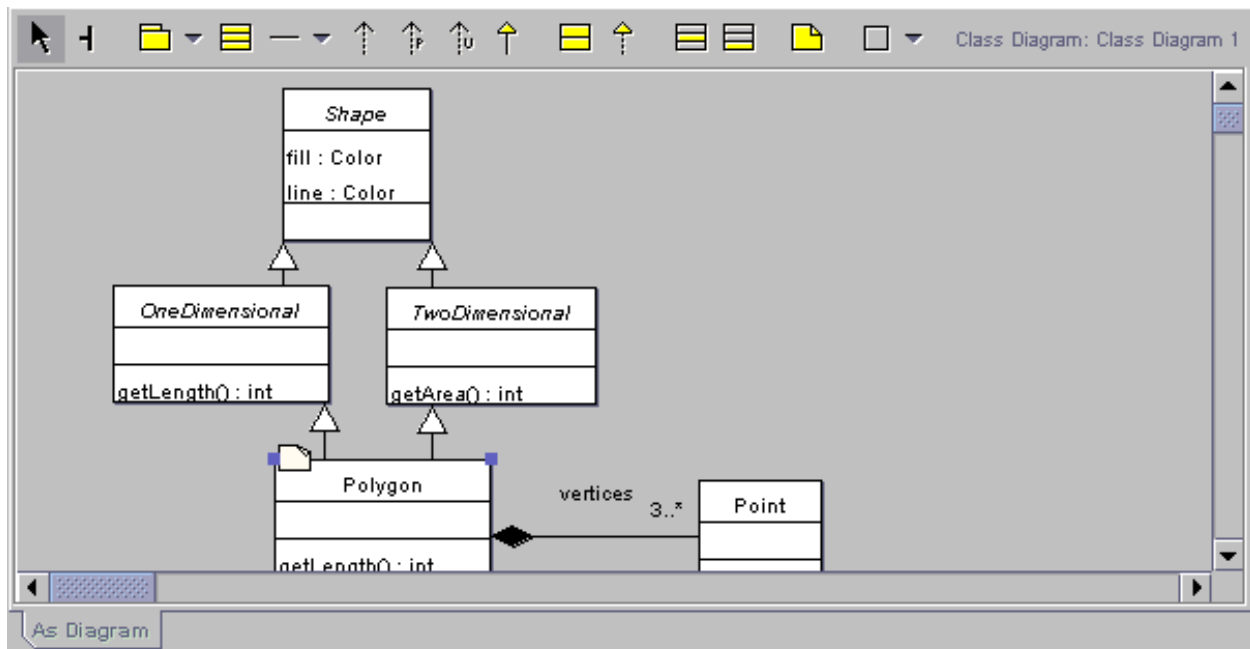
This is the explorer, where we can navigate through our model. This pane list all the classes, interfaces and data types of our model as a tree view.

### 2.5.2.2. The Editing Pane

Figure 2.6 shows the Editing Pane.

**Figure 2.6. Overview of the Editing Pane**





This is the Editing Pane, where we can edit our diagram in a graphical way.

### 2.5.2.3. The Details Pane

Figure 2.7 shows the Details Pane.

**Figure 2.7. Overview of the Details Pane**

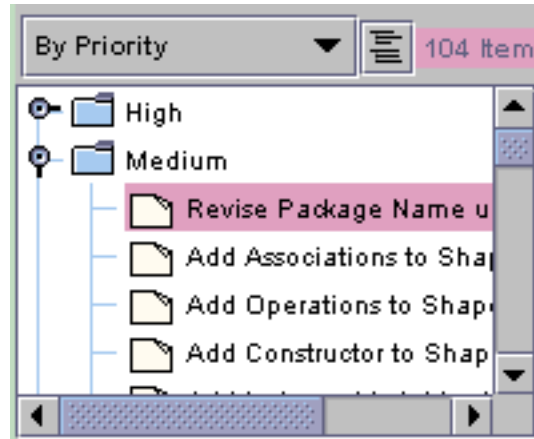


This is the Details Pane, that allows us to edit various details of our model.

### 2.5.2.4. The To-Do Pane

Figure 2.8 shows the To-Do Pane.

**Figure 2.8. Overview of the To-Do Pane**



The To-Do Pane displays the items on the models to-do list in a tree which sorts the list in a number of different ways. A drop down selection box at the top of the pane determines the layout of the tree.

### 2.5.2.5. The Menu Bar and Toolbars

The menu bar and toolbars gives access to all the main features of ArgoUML. As is conventional, menu options and toolbar options that are not available are grayed out and menu items that invoke a dialog box are followed by an ellipsis (...).

- *File* menu. This allows you to create a new project, save and open projects, import sources from elsewhere, load and save the model to and from a database, print the model, save the graphics of the model, save the configuration of the model and exit ArgoUML
- *Edit* menu. This allows you to select one or more UML items on a diagram, undo and redo edits, remove items from diagrams or the whole model, empty the trash and change settings.
- *View* menu. This allows you to switch between diagrams, find artifacts in the model, zoom in a diagram, select a particular diagram representation (although at present there is only one), select a particular tab in the details menu, adjust the grid, view buttons on a selection, and switch between UML and Java notation.
- *Create Diagram* menu. This allows you to create any one of the seven UML diagram types (class, use case, state, activity, collaboration, deployment and sequence) supported by ArgoUML.  
  
State and activity diagrams can only be created when a class or actor is selected, even though the relevant menu entries are *not* grayed out if this has not been done (nothing will happen under this circumstance).
- *Arrange* menu. This allows you to align, distribute, reorder and nudge artifacts on a diagram and set the layout strategy for the diagram.
- *Generation* menu. This allows you to generate Java code for selected classes or all classes.
- *Critique* menu. This allows you to toggle the auto-critique on and off, set the level of importance of design issues and design goals and browse the critics available.
-

*Tools* menu. This menu is permanently grayed out unless there is some tool available in your version of ArgoUML.

- *Help* menu. This menu gives access to details of those who authored the system, and where additional help may be found.
- File Toolbar. This toolbar contains some of the tools from the File menu.
- Edit Toolbar. This toolbar contains some of the tools from the Edit menu.
- View Toolbar. This toolbar contains some of the tools from the View menu.
- Create Diagram Toolbar. This toolbar contains some of the tools from the Create Diagram menu.

### 2.5.2.6. The Mouse

The mouse and mouse buttons (or their equivalent with alternative tracking devices) are used in a wide variety of ways. In this section we look at the common modes of use.

ArgoUML assumes a two button mouse. We will refer to the buttons as “button 1# and “button 2#. Button 1 is the leftmost button on a right-handed mouse, and sometimes referred to as the “select# button. Button 2 is sometimes referred to as the “adjust# button.

1. *Button 1 click*. This action is generally used to select an item for subsequent operations. If the item is an artifact in the explorer or the editing pane it will be highlighted.

In the case of the Edit Pane Toolbar, that artifact is selected as the next to be added to the diagram (but only once—see double clicking for adding multiple artifacts). The adding to the diagram is achieved by moving the mouse to the editing area and clicking again.

2. *Button 1 double click*. This action is identical to a single click *except*, when it is used with the edit pane toolbar. Under these circumstances the selected artifact will be added multiple times to the drawing area, once for each further button click, until the tool is again selected or another tool chosen.
3. *Button 2 click*. When used over text items in the the explorer or details panes, or graphical artifacts in the editing pane, this will display a context dependent drop-down menu.

If the item has not yet been selected it will also be selected.

4. *Button 1 motion*. Where button 1 click has been used to pull down a menu from the menu bar, button 1 motion is used to select items on that menu.

Button 1 motion also has an effect in the editing pane. Over graphical artifacts it will move the artifact to a new position. Graphical artifacts that are selected show handles, and these can be used for re-sizing.

Where the artifact is some form of connector between other items, button 1 motion other than at a handle will cause a new handle to be created, allowing the connector to be articulated at that point. Such new handles can be removed by moving them to the end of the connector.

5. *Button 2 motion*. This is used to select items in a context sensitive menu popped up by use of button 2 click.

There are other more specific behaviors that will be encountered under the specific cases where they are used.

### 2.5.2.7. Drawing Diagrams

In general diagrams are drawn by using the edit pane toolbar to select the artifact desired and clicking in the diagram at the position required as described in Section 2.5.2.6, “The Mouse”. That section also explains the use of the mouse for re-sizing artifacts.

Artifacts that are already in the model, but not on a diagram, may be added to a diagram by selecting the artifact in the explorer, using `Add to Diagram` from the drop down menu (button 2) over that artifact, and then clicking button 1 at the desired location on the diagram.

As well as UML artifacts, the Edit pane toolbar provides for general drawing artifacts (rectangles, circles, lines, polygons, curves, text) to provide supplementary information on diagrams.

#### 2.5.2.7.1. Moving Diagram Elements

There are several ways to move diagram elements.

##### 2.5.2.7.1.1. Using the Mouse Keys

Select the elements you want to move. By holding down the control key you can select several.

Now hit your arrow keys. Your elements move a little with every key stroke.

If you also hold down the shift key, they move a bit faster.

##### 2.5.2.7.1.2. Using the Edit Pane Toolbar

Click on the broom button on the toolbar. Move your mouse to the diagram pane, right click and hold. Now moving your mouse will align elements.

#### 2.5.2.7.2. Arranging Elements

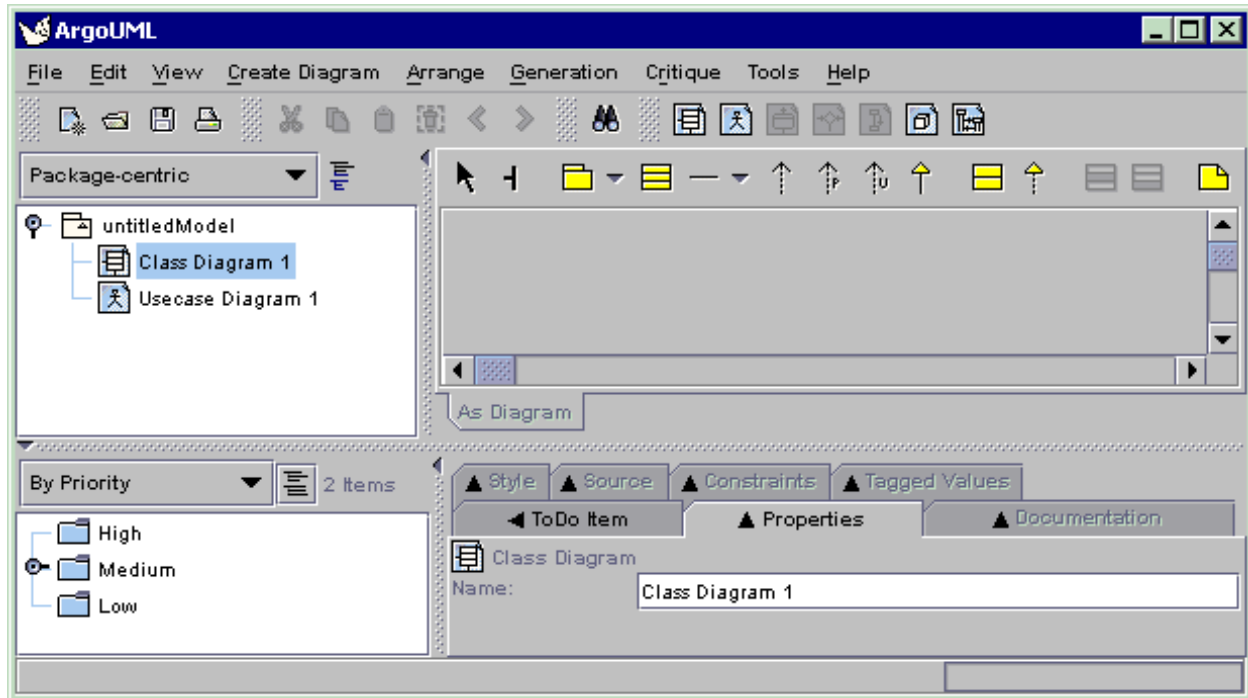
The menu item `Arrange` allows you to align, group, or nudge elements.

### 2.5.2.8. Working with Projects

#### 2.5.2.8.1. The Start-up Window

Figure 2.9 shows the ArgoUML main window as it appears as right after start-up

**Figure 2.9. ArgoUML window at start-up**



The main window's client area, below the menu and toolbar, is subdivided into four panes. Starting at the leftmost top pane, and working around the clock, you can see the Explorer, showing a tree view of your UML model, the Editing Pane with its toolbar, two scroll bars and gray drawing area, the Details Pane with the `ToDoItem` tab selected, and the To-Do Pane with a tree view of the to do items, ranked in various ways selected via the drop down list at the top of the pane.

Each time ArgoUML is started up without a project file as an argument, a new blank project is created. This project contains a model called `untitledModel`. This model contains a blank Class Diagram, called `class diagram 1`, and a blank Use Case Diagram called `use case diagram 1`.

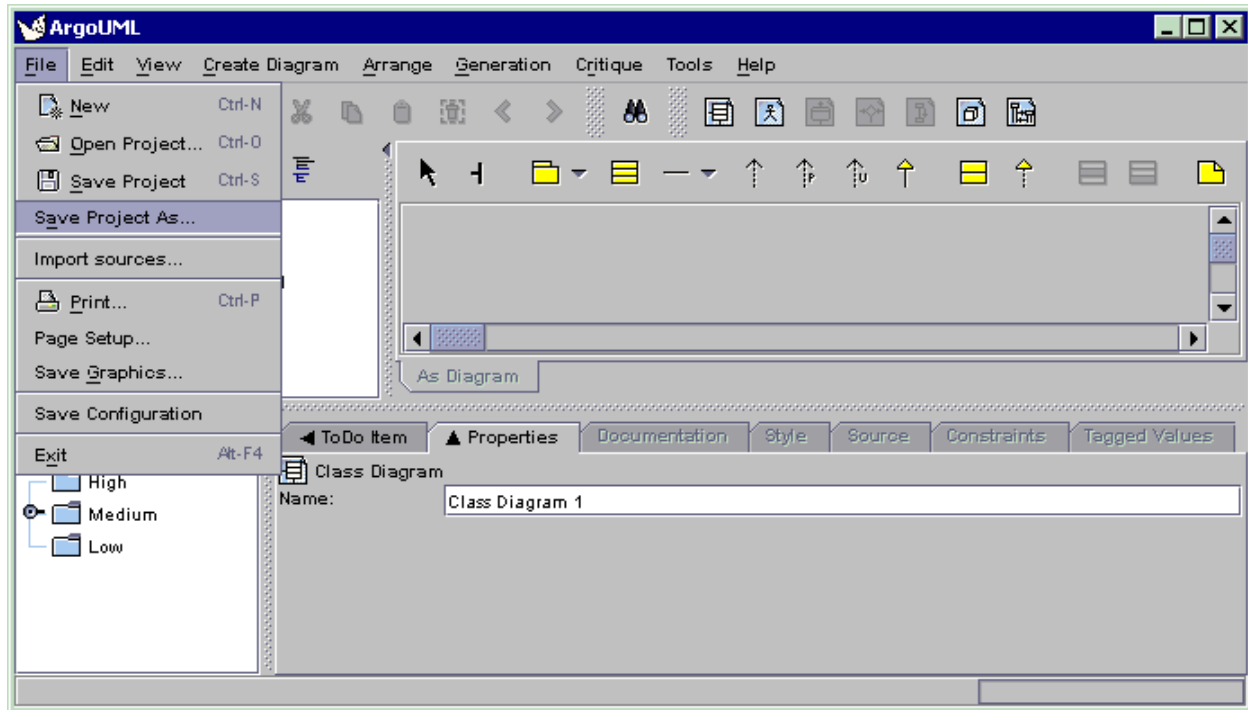
The model and both empty diagrams can be seen in the explorer, which is the main tool for you to navigate through your model.

Let's assume for a moment that this is the point where you want to start modeling a new purchasing system. You want to give the name "purchasingmodel#" to your model, and you want to store it in a file called `FirstProject`.

#### 2.5.2.8.2. Saving a project - The File Menu

First, let's save the model in it's current (empty and unnamed) state. On the menu bar, click on `File`, then on `Save Project As...` as shown in Figure 2.10.

**Figure 2.10. Invoking `Save Project As...`**



Please notice that the File menu contains the usual options for creating a new project, for opening an existing project, for saving a project under a new name, for printing the currently displayed diagram, for saving the currently displayed diagram as a file, and for program Exit.

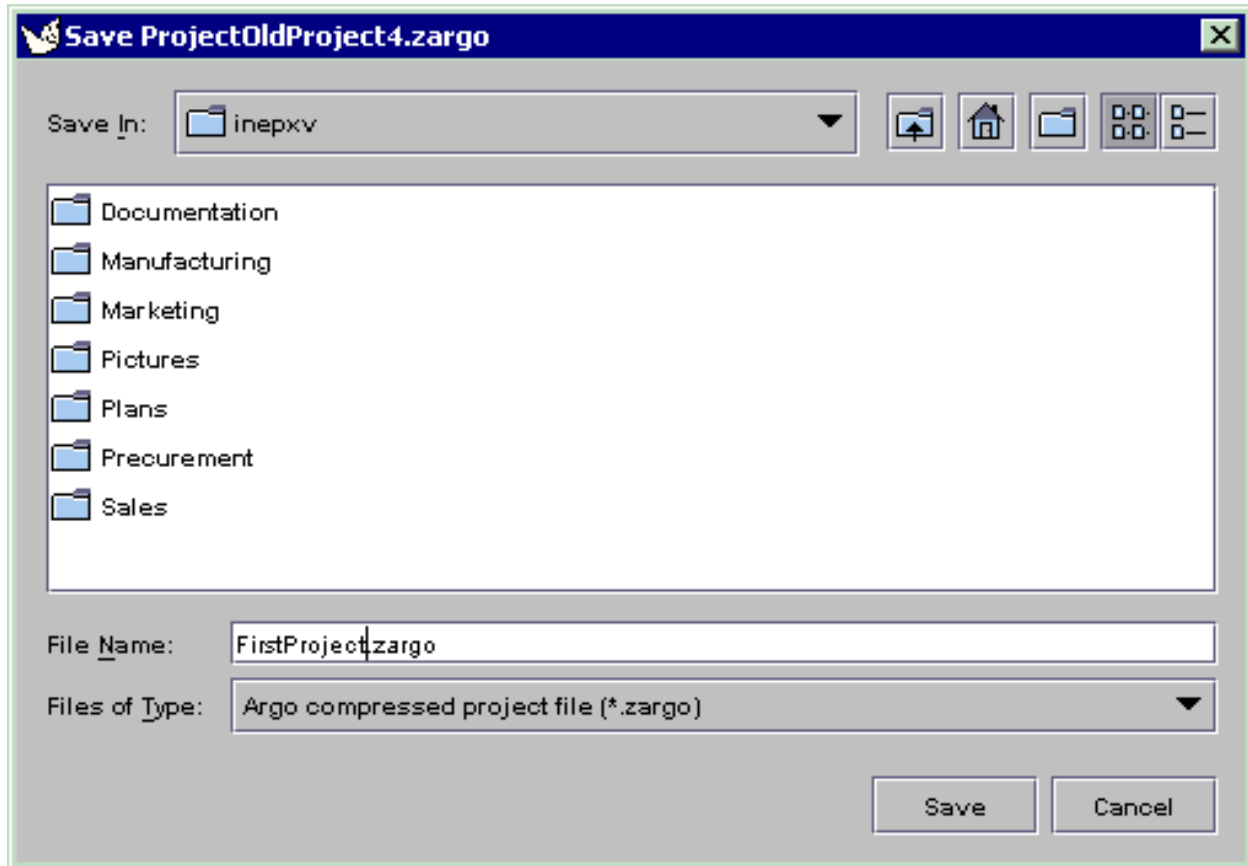
Some of these menu commands can be invoked by pressing key combinations, as indicated on the drop-down menu. For instance, holding down the “Ctrl# key, and pressing “N#, will create a new project.

In the current version, ArgoUML can only contain one active project at a time. In addition, a project can only contain one UML model. Since an UML model can contain an unlimited number of elements and diagrams, this should not present any serious limitations, even for modeling quite large and complex systems.

### 2.5.2.8.3. The File Chooser Dialog

But let's go back to saving our project. After clicking on the Save Project As... menu command, we get the file chooser dialog to enter the file name we wish to use as shown in Figure 2.11.

**Figure 2.11. File chooser dialog**



This is a standard Java FileChooser. Let's go over it in some detail.


The main, outstanding feature, is the scrollable folders list in the center of the dialog. By using the scroll bar on the right, you can move up and down in the list of folders contained inside the currently selected folder. If it is scrollable or not depends on the amount of files and folders shown and also how they are shown. If everything fits the window is not scrollable as seen in the picture.

Double-clicking on one of the displayed folders navigates you into that folder, allowing you to quickly navigate down into the folders hierarchy on your hard disk.

Notice that only folder names, and no file names are displayed in the scrollable area. Indeed, the dialog is currently set up in order to show only ArgoUML project files with an extension of .zargo, as can be seen on the lower drop-down control labeled `Files of Type:`.



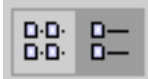
Also notice that the currently selected folder's name is displayed in the upper drop-down control labeled `Look in:`. A single click on a folder inside the scrollable area does select that folder on screen but does not select the folder for saving.

At the top of the dialog, above the scrollable folder chooser area, there are a few more folder navigation tools.

- 
 The Folder drop-down control. Clicking on the down-arrow displays a tree view of the folder hierarchy, allowing you to navigate quickly up the hierarchy, and at the same time to quickly determine where in the hierarchy we are currently positioned.



The Folder-Up icon. Clicking on this icon will bring us to the parent folder of the current folder.

-  The Home Folder icon. Clicking on this icon will bring us to our home directory.
-  The New Folder icon. Clicking on this icon will create a new folder called "New Folder" under the current folder. After the folder is created selecting it and clicking in the name allows us to select the name of our choice.
-  The Folders Presentation Icon.

OK, now we navigate to the directory where we want to save our ArgoUML project, fill in the `File name:` with an appropriate name, such as `FirstProject#` and click on the `Save` button.

You have now an active project called `FirstProject`, connected to the file `FirstProject.zargo`.

## 2.5.3. Output

### 2.5.3.1. Loading and Saving

#### 2.5.3.1.1. Saving XMI files in ArgoUML

ArgoUML saves the diagram information in a PGML file (with extension `.pgml`, the model information in an XMI file (with extension `.xmi` and information about the project in a file with extension `.argo`. See Section 2.5.3.2.2, “Precision Graphics Markup Language (PGML)# and Section 2.5.3.3, “XMI# for more about PGML and XMI respectively.

All of these are then zipped to a file with extension `.zargo`. You can easily extract the `.xmi` file from the `.zargo` file using any old generic ZIP application. Give it a try and look into the magic of Argo.



#### Warning

Be aware that double clicking will launch a ZIP utility, if one is installed, and NOT Argo.

### 2.5.3.2. Graphics and Printing

#### 2.5.3.2.1. The Graph Editing Framework (GEF)

GEF is the software package that is the foundation of the diagrams that appear in the Editing Pane. GEF was an integral part of ArgoUML but has been separated. Like ArgoUML it is an open source project available via Tigris [<http://www.tigris.org>].

#### 2.5.3.2.2. Precision Graphics Markup Language (PGML)

PGML is the saving format for diagram information used in ArgoUML. Although this is outdated a little, it shows why we chose PGML in the first place. In the future, PGML will be replaced by an extended XMI format which will include graphical representation.



In April 1998 Adobe Systems proposed a new Standard for Vector Graphics to the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), which should facilitate the creation and usage of image material in the World Wide Web. It will be replaced by SVG. We will support SVG by generating it from the XMI in the future.

### 2.5.3.2.3. Applications Which Open PGML

PGML is a predecessor of SVG (see Section 2.5.3.2.5, “Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG)#. It was dropped by the W3C Consortium.

Currently there are no other tools that we know of working on PGML.

### 2.5.3.2.4. Printing Diagrams

Select a diagram, then go to `File#Export Diagrams`. You can generate GIF, PostScript, Encapsulated PostScript or SVG format.

### 2.5.3.2.5. Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG)

A super cool vector graphics format (like MM Flash) that is totally open and is gaining enormous ground in the graphics world. Find out more at [www.w3c.org](http://www.w3c.org) [<http://www.w3c.org>].

As well visit [adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com) [<http://www.adobe.com>] for the plugin for Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer.

### 2.5.3.2.6. Saving Diagrams as SVG

1. Select `.svg` as the file type.
2. Type the name of the file as you like with the `.svg` tag at the end. Example `myumldiagram.svg`

Et viola! SVG! Give it a try and zoom around a little... They are not pretty though, so if you know anything about rendering beautiful SVG let us know!

Oh, and by the way, you'll need a browser that can read SVG. See [adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com) [<http://www.adobe.com>] for the plugin for Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer

There are a few browsers that read SVG natively: Amaya, X-Smiles, and a rudimentary version of Mozilla.



#### Note

You will not have scroll bars for your SVG unless it is embedded into an HTML! Good luck and let us know what you find!

### 2.5.3.3. XMI

There is now a tool available which supports various dialects of XMI and their interconversion. This should make portability of different models in to ArgoUML considerably easier. Any work on using this with ArgoUML would be much appreciated.

There is also a tool that converts XMI to HTML. For more information, see [http://www.objectsbydesign.com/projects/xmi\\_to\\_html\\_2.html](http://www.objectsbydesign.com/projects/xmi_to_html_2.html) [[http://www.objectsbydesign.com/projects/xmi\\_to\\_html\\_2.html](http://www.objectsbydesign.com/projects/xmi_to_html_2.html)].

#### 2.5.3.3.1. Using XMI from Rational Rose

It is probably not possible to take a model generated by Rational Rose in XMI format and put it into ArgoUML di-

rectly.

The conversion tool identified above will probably solve the problem. If you can document how this is done, you'd make a lot of friends in a hurry!

### 2.5.3.3.2. Using Models Created by Gentleware

Gentleware is a commercial development based on ArgoUML. It diverged a little while ago and the XMI representations are no longer full compatible.

Eugenio Alvarez suggests the following procedure to convert a Gentleware project for use with ArgoUML. It works if there are no sequence diagrams in the project.

1. Make sure to backup your project first.
2. Unpackage the Gentleware project `Project.zargo`. For example `unzip Project.zargo` or `jar xvf Project.zargo`.
3. Then try reading and then saving the project with UMLTool (Contact Eugenio Alvarez to get this tool).
4. Repackage the project. For example `zip NewProject.zargo *.xmi *.pgml *.argo` or `jar cvf NewProject.zargo *`.
5. Try reading the project with ArgoUML.

### 2.5.3.3.3. XMI Interchangeability between ArgoUML 0.8.1a and 0.10, 0.12, and 0.14

This depends on the version of NSUML (the UML engine underlying ArgoUML) you are using. Look in the start-up messages on the console for the entry for Novosoft UML Library for the version number. Using version 0.4.19 is OK, and the XMI files should be interchangeable.

### 2.5.3.3.4. Importing Other XMI Formats into ArgoUML

Because of the variety of XMI formats being generated you will encounter problems using XMI files generated from other applications. ArgoUML's native storage format is another implementation of XMI (Curt Arnold believes that it has been hacked so it can also read the Unisys variant). He recommends that if you are comfortable with XSLT, you can typically transform one variant of UML and XMI to another, plus MetaIntegrations [www.metaintegrations.net](http://www.metaintegrations.net) [<http://www.metaintegrations.net>] makes a version of their Bridge product available to transform between XMI flavors.

### 2.5.3.3.5. Generating XMI Format

Select the command `Tools#Export as XMI` and choose a filename.

## 2.5.3.4. Code Generation

### 2.5.3.4.1. Code Generated by ArgoUML

It is possible to compile your generated code with ArgoUML, you still need to implement method bodies, though, to get usable results.

### 2.5.3.4.2. Generating Code for Methods

At the moment you cannot write code for methods (operations) within ArgoUML. The source pane is editable, but the changes are ignored. ArgoUML is a pure design tool for now, no IDE functionality but the desire is there. You might consider using Forte and ArgoUML together—it's a good work around!

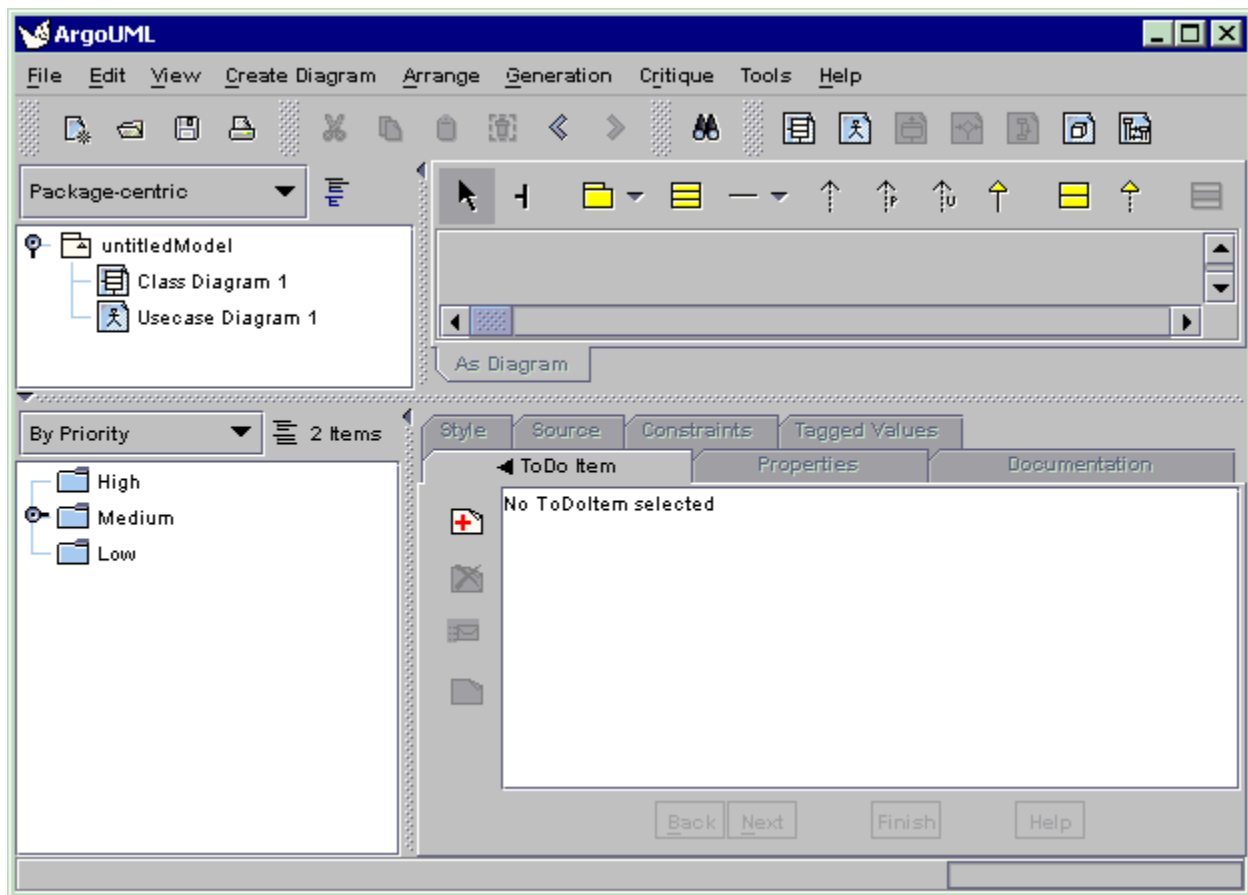
You can help us out there if you'd like!

## 2.5.4. Working With Design Critics

### 2.5.4.1. The To-Do Pane—Messages From the Design Critics

Where do we stand now? A new project has been created, and is connected to the file `FirstProject.argo`. Figure 2.12 shows how your ArgoUML window should look at this stage.

**Figure 2.12. ArgoUML window having saved `FirstProject.argo`**



The project contains a top-level package, called `untitledModel`, which contains a class diagram and a use case diagram.

If we look carefully at the screen, we can see that the "Medium" folder in the To Do pane (the lower left pane) must contain some items, since its activation icon  is displayed.

Clicking on this icon will open the "Medium" folder. An open folder is indicated by the  icon.

But what is this "To-Do# Pane anyway. You haven't recorded anything yet that has to be done, so where do these to do items originate.

The answer is simple, and is at the same time one of the strong points of ArgoUML. While you are working on your UML model, your work is monitored continuously and invisibly by a piece of code called a *design critic*. This is like a personal mentor that watches over your shoulder and notifies you each time he sees something questionable in your design.


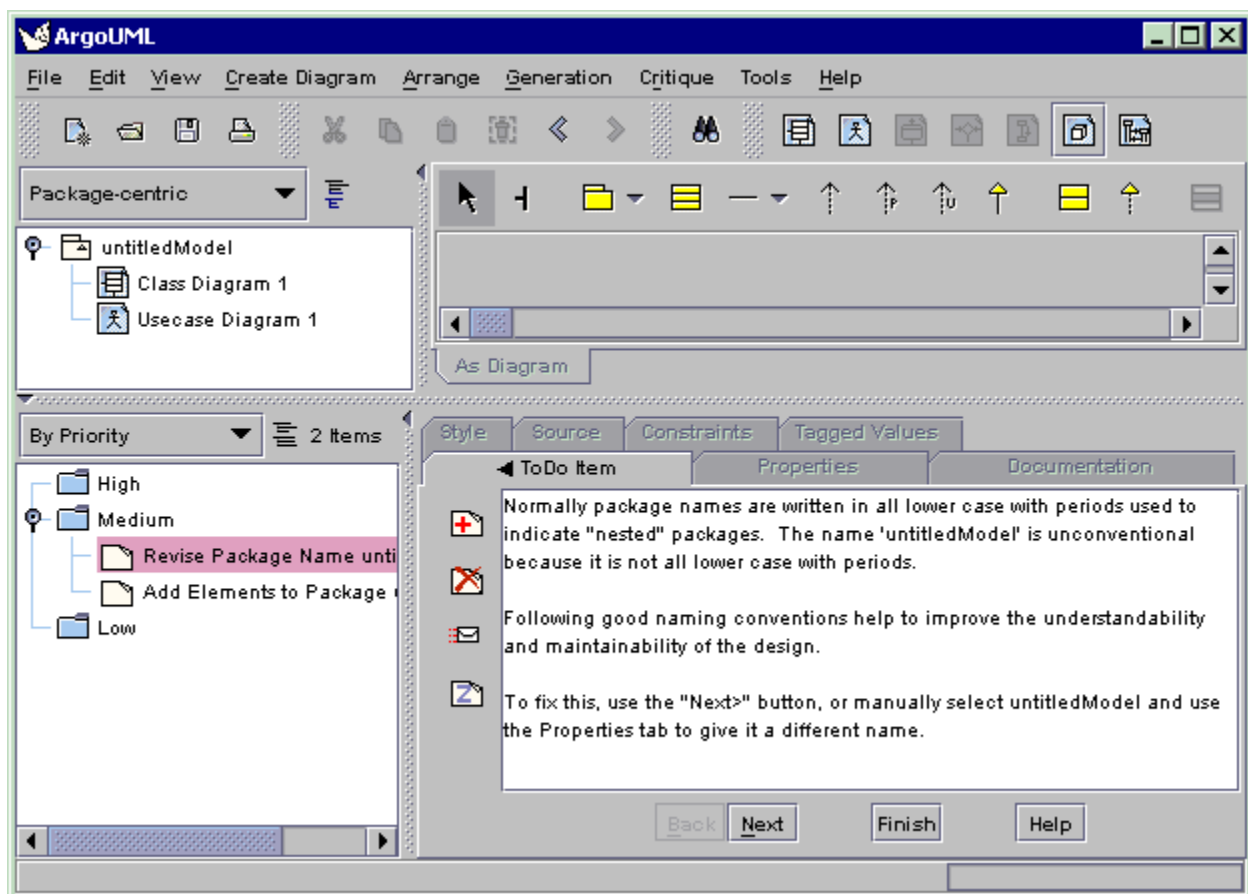
Critics are quite unobtrusive. They give you a friendly warning, but they do not force you into design principles that you don't want or like to follow. Let us take a look at what the critics are telling us. Click on the  icon next to the Medium folder, and click on the `Revise Package Name UntitledModel` item.

Figure 2.13 shows how your screen should now look.

**Figure 2.13. ArgoUML window showing the critic item**  
**Revise Package Name UntitledModel**



Notice that your selection is highlighted in red in the To-Do Pane, and that a full explanation appears now in the Details Pane (the lower right pane). You may have to re-size your Details Pane or to scroll down in order to see the full message as displayed in our example.

What ArgoUML is trying to tell you is that usually, package names are written in lower cases. The default top level package created by ArgoUML is called `untitledModel` and therefore violates a sound design principle. (Actually, this could be considered as a bug within ArgoUML, but it comes in handy to demonstrate the working of critics).

At this point, you can choose to change the package name manually, to impose silence on the design critic for some time or permanently, or to request a more comprehensive explanation by Email from an expert.

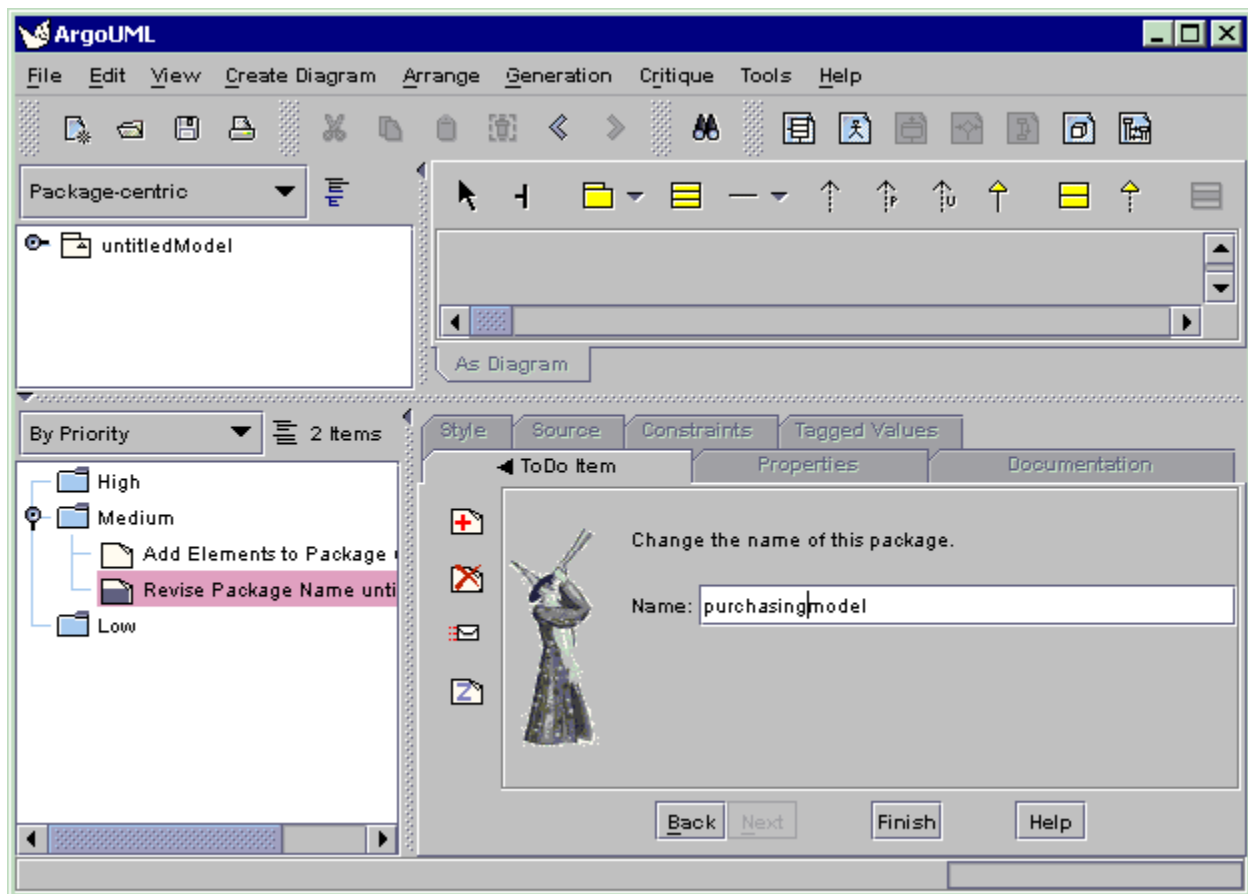
We will do nothing of this (we'll come back to it when we talk about the design critics in more detail) but we'll use another handy feature of ArgoUML—an auto-correct feature.

In order to do that, just click on the `Next` button on the Details Pane. This will cause a renaming wizard to be displayed inside the properties panel, proposing to use the name `untitledmodel` (all in lower case).

### 2.5.4.2. Design Critics at Work: The Rename Package Wizard

Replace the name `untitledmodel` with `purchasingmodel`, and click on the `Finish` button. Figure 2.14 shows how the ArgoUML window will now look.

**Figure 2.14. ArgoUML window showing the critic wizard to rename the package**



Watch now how the design critic note in the To Do panel disappears, leaving only the Add Elements to Package `purchasingmodel` note in the To-Do list.

If this doesn't happen at once, wait for a few seconds. ArgoUML makes heavy use of several threads of execution that execute in parallel. This can cause delays of a few seconds before the information gets updated on the screen.

The package name change should also be reflected in the explorer, in the top left corner of your ArgoUML window.

We are now ready to create our first UML diagram, a Use Case diagram, but first let's save what we've done so far.

Click on the `File` menu item, and select `Save Project`. You can now safely exit ArgoUML without losing your

work so far, or go on creating your first diagram.

## **2.6. The Case Study (To be written)**

*To be written...*

---

# Chapter 3. Requirements Capture

## 3.1. Introduction

Requirements capture is the process of identifying what the “customer# wants from the proposed system.

The key at this stage is that we are in the problem domain. At this stage we must describe everything from the “customer# perspective and in the language of the “customer#.

The biggest risk we have in requirements capture is to start thinking in terms of possible solutions. That must wait until the *Analysis Phase* (see Chapter 4, *Analysis*). One of the steps of the Analysis Phase will be to take the output of the Requirements Phase and recast it in the language of a putative solution.

Remember we are using both a *recursive*, and an *iterative* process.

We may well come back to the requirements process again as we break down the problem into smaller chunks, each of which must have its requirements captured.

We will certainly come back through the requirements phase on each iteration as we seek to define the requirements of more and more of the system



### Note

The only part of the requirements notation specified by the UML standard is the use case diagram. The remainder is process specific. The process described in this chapter draws heavily on the Rational Unified Process.

## 3.2. The Requirements Capture Process

We start with a top-level view of the problem we are solving and the key areas of functionality that we must address in any solution. This is our *vision document*, and should be just a few pages long.

For example the top-level view of an automated teller machine (ATM) might be that it should support the following.

1. Cash deposit, cash withdrawal and account inquiries by customers.
2. Maintenance of the equipment by the bank's engineers, and unloading of deposits and loading of cash by the local bank branch.
3. Audit trail for all activities sent to the bank's central computer.

From this top-level view we can extract the principle activities of the system, and the external agents (people, equipment) that are involved in those activities. These activities are known as *use cases* and the external agents are known as *actors*.

Actors may be people or machines. From a practical standpoint it is worth knowing the stakeholder behind any machine, since only they will be able to engage with the requirements capture process.

Use cases should be significant activities for the system. For example customer use of the ATM machine is a use case. Entering a PIN number is not.

There is a gray area between these two extremes. As we shall see it is often useful to break very large use cases into

smaller sub-use cases. For example we may have sub-use cases covering cash deposit, cash withdrawal and account inquiry.

There is no hard and fast rule. Some architects will prefer a small number of relatively large use cases, others will prefer a larger number of smaller use cases. A useful rule of thumb is that any practical project ought to require no more than about 30 use cases (if it needs more, it should be broken into separate projects).

We then show the relationship between use cases and actors on one or more use case diagrams. For a large project more than one diagram will be needed. Usually groups of related use cases are shown on one diagram.

We must then give a more detailed specification of each use case. This covers its normal behavior, alternative behaviors and any pre- and post-conditions. This is captured in a document variously known as a *use case specification* or *use case scenario*.

Finally, since use cases are functional in nature, we need a document to capture the non-functional requirements (capacity, performance, environmental needs etc). These requirements are captured in a document known as a *supplementary requirements specification*.

### 3.2.1. Process Steps

The steps in the requirements capture process can be summarized as follows.

1. Capture an overall view of the problem, and the desired characteristics of its solution in the *vision document*.
2. Identify the *use case* and *actors* from the vision document and show their relationships on one or more *use case diagrams*.
3. Give detailed *use case specifications* for each use case, covering normal and alternate behavior, pre- and post-conditions.
4. Capture all non-functional requirements in a *supplementary requirements specification*.

In any iterative development process, there will be an exercise of prioritization, and early iterations will focus on capturing the key behavior of the most important use cases.

Most modern requirements capture processes agree that it is essential that the authoritative representative of the customer is fully involved throughout the process.

## 3.3. Output of the Requirements Capture Process

Almost all the output of the requirements capture process is documentary. The only diagram is the use case diagram, showing the relationships between use cases and actors.

### 3.3.1. Vision Document

Typical sections of this document would be as follows.

- *Summary*. A statement of the context, problem and solution goals.
-



*Goals.* What are we trying to achieve (and how do we wish to achieve it).

- *Market Context or Contractual Arrangements.* For a market led development, this should indicate target markets, competitive differentiators, compelling events and so forth. For a contractual development this should explain the key contractual drivers.
- *Stakeholders.* The users (in the widest sense) of the system. Many of these will map in to actors, or control equipment that maps into actors.
- *Key Features.* At the very highest level what are the key functional aspects of the problem/desired solution. These will largely map down to the use cases. It is helpful to give some prioritization here.
- *Constraints.* A high level view of the non-functional parameters of the system. These will be worked out in detail in the supplementary requirements specification.
- *Appendix.* A listing of the actors and use cases that will be needed to meet this vision. It is useful to link to these from the earlier sections to ensure comprehensive coverage.

### 3.3.2. Use Case Diagram

The vision document has identified the use cases and actors. The use case diagram captures how they interact. In our ATM example we have identified “customer uses machine#”, “maintain machine#” and “audit#” as the three main use cases. We have identified “customer#”, “maintenance engineer#”, “local branch official#” and “central computer#” as the actors.

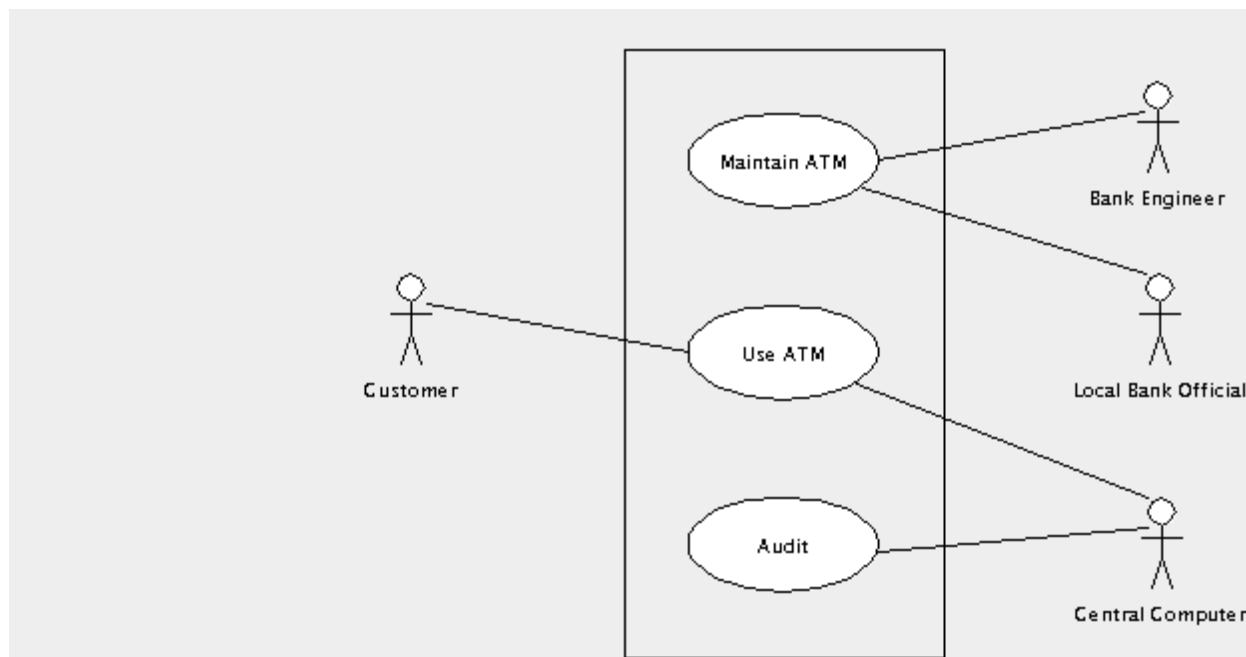
Figure 3.1 shows how this could be displayed on a use case diagram. The use cases are shown as ovals, the actors as stick people (even where they are machines), with lines (known as *associations*) connecting use cases to the actors who are involved with them. A box around the use cases emphasizes the boundary between the system (defined by the use cases) and the actors who are external.



#### Note

Not all analysts like to use a box around the use cases. It is a matter of personal choice.

**Figure 3.1. Basic use case diagram for an ATM system**



The following sections show how the basic use case diagram can be extended to show additional information about the system being designed.

### 3.3.2.1. Active and Passive Actors

*Active* actors initiate interaction with the system. This can be shown by placing an arrow on the association from the actor pointing toward the use case. In the ATM example, the customer is an active actor.

Interaction with *passive* actors is initiated by the system. This can be shown by placing an arrow on the association from the use case pointing toward the actor. In the ATM example, the central computer is a passive actor.

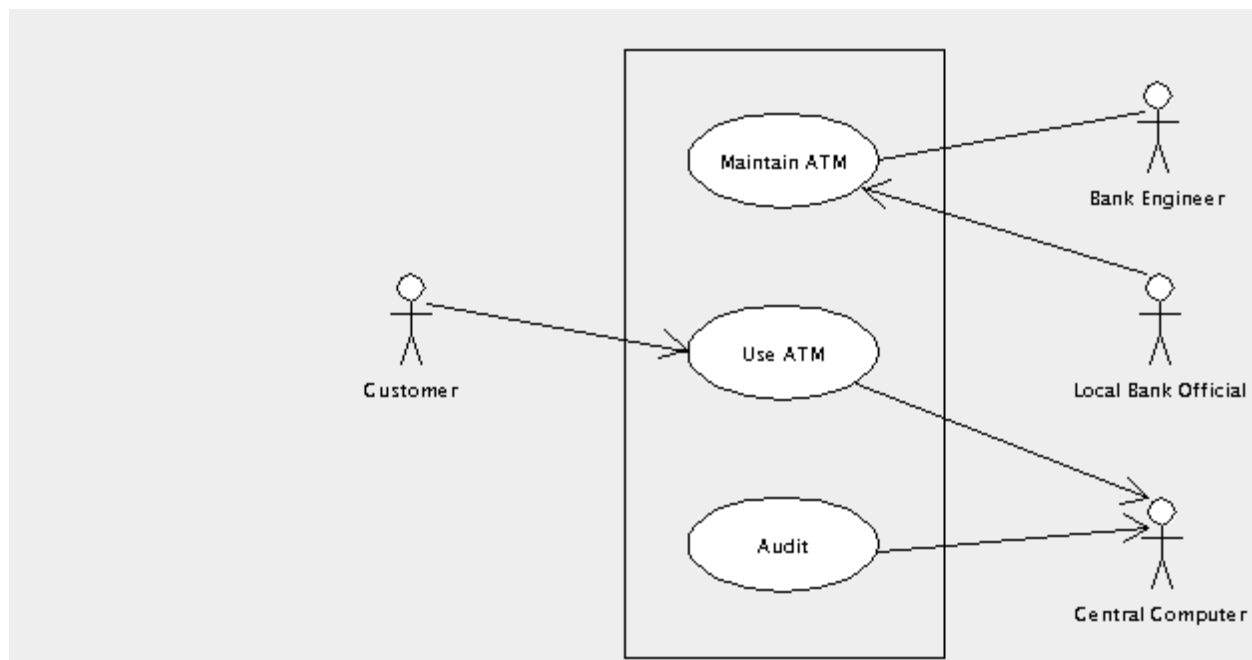
This is a good example where the arrow helps, since it allows us to distinguish an event driven system (the ATM initiates interaction with the central computer) from a polling system (the central computer interrogates the ATM from time to time).

Where an actor may be either active or passive, depending on circumstances, the arrow may be omitted. In the ATM example the bank engineer fits into this category. Normally he is active, turning up on a regular cycle to service the machine. However if the ATM detects a fault, it may summon the engineer to fix it.

The use of arrows on associations is referred to as the *navigation* of the association. We shall see this used elsewhere in UML later on.

Figure 3.2 shows the ATM use case diagram with navigation displayed.

**Figure 3.2. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing navigation.**



### 3.3.2.2. Multiplicity

It can be useful to show the *multiplicity* of associations between actors and use cases. By this we mean how many instances of an actor interact with how many instances of the use case.

By default we assume one instance of an actor interacts with one instance of a use case. In other cases we can label the multiplicity of one end of the association, either with a number to indicate how many instances are involved, or with a range separated by two periods ( . . ). An asterisk (\*) is used to indicate an arbitrary number.

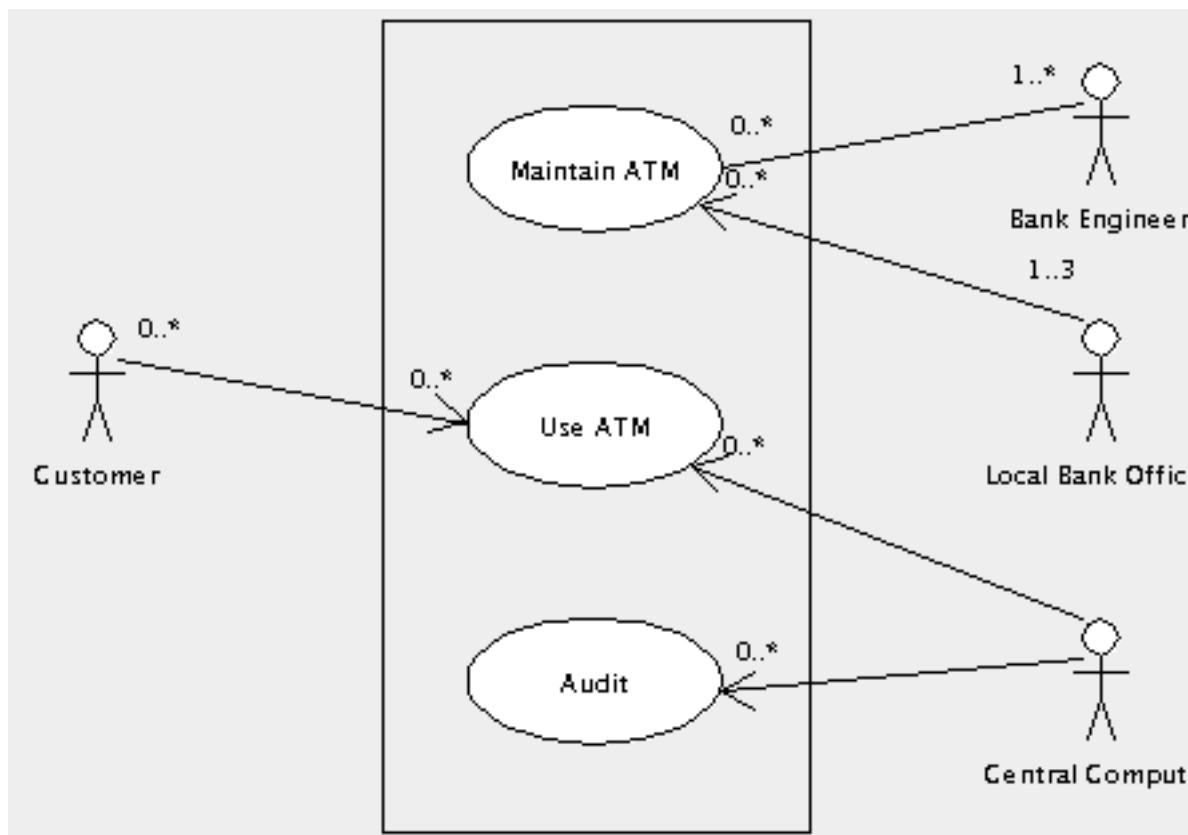
In the ATM example, there is only one central computer, but it may be auditing any number of ATM uses. So we place the label 0 . . \* at the use case end. There is no need for a label at the other end, since the default is one.

A local bank will have up to three officials authorized to unload and load ATM machines. So at the actor end of the relationship with the use case *Maintain ATM*, we place the label 1 . . 3. They may be dealing with any number of ATM machines, so at the other end we place the label 0 . . \*.

There may be any number of customers and there may be any number of ATM systems they could use. So at each end of the association we place the label 0 . . \*.

Figure 3.3 shows the ATM use case diagram with multiplicity displayed.

**Figure 3.3. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing multiplicity.**



Multiplicity can clutter a diagram, and is often not shown, except where it is critical to understanding. In the ATM example we would only choose to show 1..3 against the local bank official, since all others are obvious from the context.

### 3.3.2.3. Hierarchies of Use Cases

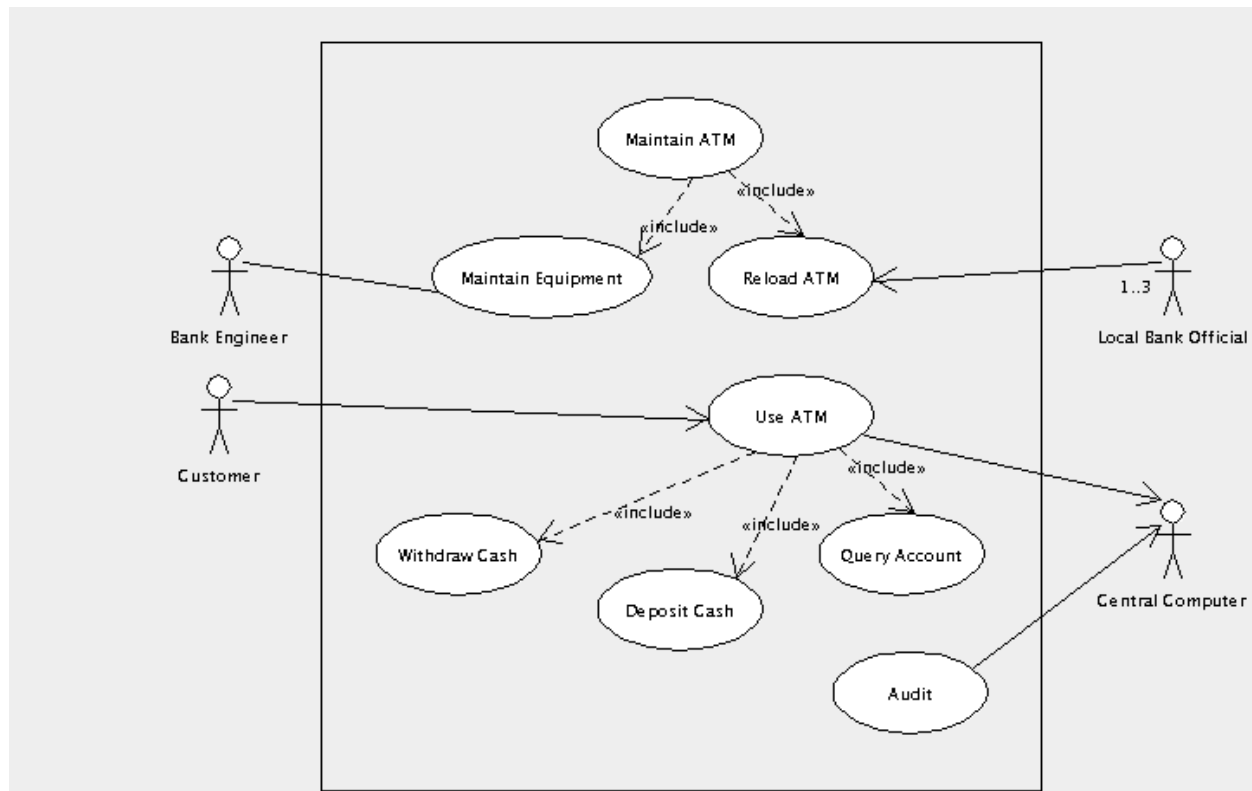
In our ATM example so far we have just three use cases to describe all the behavior of the system. While use cases should always describe a significant chunk of system behavior, if they are too general they can be difficult to describe.

We could for example define the behavior of the use case “Use ATM# in terms of the behavior of three simpler use cases, “Deposit Cash#, “Withdraw Cash# and “Query Account#. The main use case could be specified by *including* the behavior of the subsidiary use cases where needed.

Similarly the “Maintain ATM# use case could be defined in terms of two use cases “Maintain Equipment# and “Reload ATM#. In this case the two actors involved in the main use case are really only involved in one or other of the two subsidiary use cases and this can be shown on the diagram.

The decomposition of a use case into simpler sub-use cases is shown in UML by using an *include relationship*, a dotted arrow from the main use case to the subsidiary, with the label «include».

**Figure 3.4. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing include relationships.**



Include relationships are fine for breaking down the use case behaviors into hierarchies. However we may also want to show a use case that is an *extension* to an existing use case to cater for a particular circumstance.

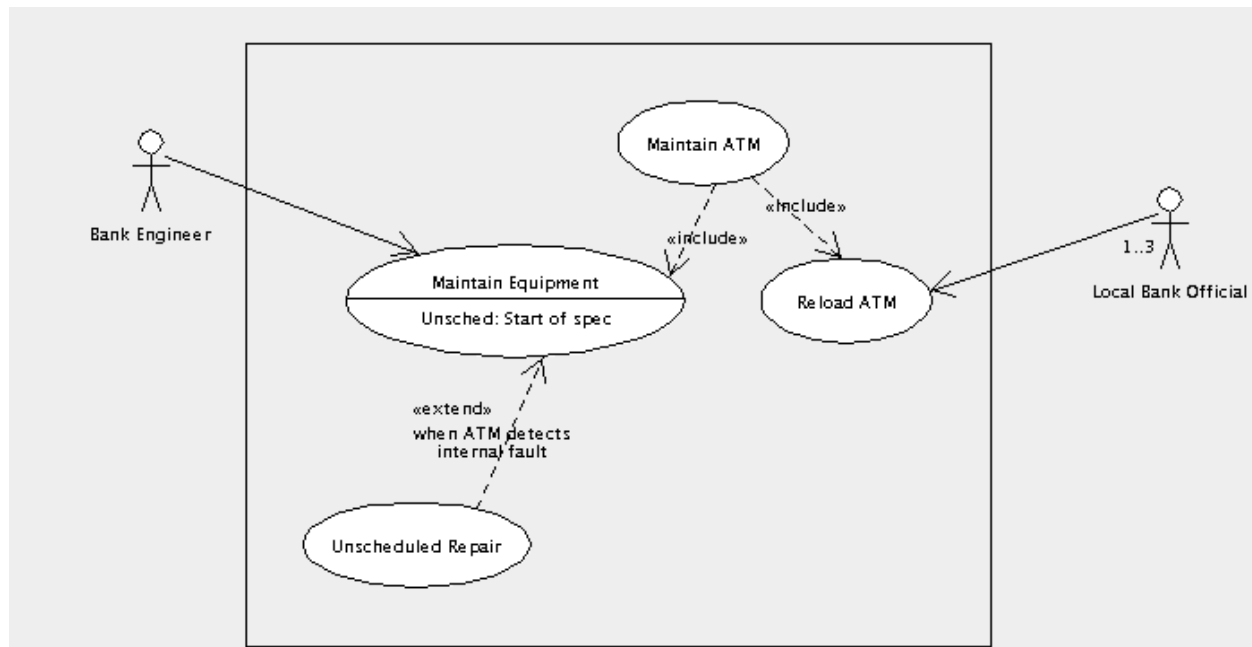
In the ATM example we have a use case covering routine maintenance of the ATM, “Maintain Equipment#”. We also want to cover the special case of an unscheduled repair caused by the ATM detecting an internal fault.

This is shown in UML by the *extend* relationship. In the main use case, we specify a name for a location in the description, where an extension to the behavior could be attached. The name and location are shown in a separate compartment within the use case oval. The representation extend relationship is the same as the include relationship, but with the label *«extend»*. Alongside the extend relationship, we specify the condition under which that behavior will be attached.

Figure 3.5 shows the ATM use case diagram with an extend relationship to a use case for unscheduled repairs. The diagram is now getting rather complex, and so we have split it into two, one for the maintenance side of things, the other for customer usage and audit.

The “Maintain Equipment#” use case defines a name “Unsched#”, at the start of its description. The extending use case “Unscheduled Repair#” is attached there when the ATM detects an internal error.

**Figure 3.5. Use case diagram for an ATM system showing an extend relationship.**



Use cases may be linked together in one other way. One use case may be a *generalization* of a subsidiary use case (or alternatively the subsidiary is a *specialization* of the main use case).

This is very like the extends relationship, but without the constraint of specific extension points at which the main use case may be extended, and with no condition on when the subsidiary use case may be used.

Generalization is shown on a use case diagram by an arrow with solid line and solid white head from the subsidiary to the main use case.

This may be useful when a subsidiary use case specializes the behavior of the main use case at a large number of positions and under a wide range of circumstances.

However the lack of any restriction makes generalization very hard to specify precisely. In general use an extend relationship instead.

### 3.3.3. The Use Case Specification

Each use case must be documented to explain in detail the behavior it is specifying. This document is known by different names in different processes: *use case specification*, *use case scenario* or even (confusingly) just *use case*.

A typical use case will include the following sections.

- *Name*. The name of the use case to which this relates.
- *Goal*. A one or two line summary of what this use case achieves *for its actors*.
- *Actors*. The actors involved in this use case, and any context regarding their involvement.



#### Note

This should not be a description of the actor. That should be associated with the actor on the use case diagram.

- *Pre-condition.* These would be better named “pre-assumptions”, but the term used everywhere is pre-conditions. This is a statement of any simplifying assumptions we can make at the start of the use case.

In the ATM example we might make the assumption for the “Maintain Equipment” use case that an engineer is always available, and we do not need to worry about the case where a routine maintenance visit is missed.



### Caution

Avoid pre-conditions wherever possible. You need to be absolutely certain that the pre-condition holds under all possible circumstances. If not your system will be under specified and hence will fail when the pre-condition is not true. Alternatively, when you cannot be certain the pre-condition is always true, you will need to specify a second use case to handle the pre-condition being false. In the first case, pre-conditions are a source of problems, in the second a source of more work.

- *Basic Flow.* The linear sequence of steps that describe the behavior of the use case in the “normal” scenario. Where a use case has a number of scenarios that could be normal, one is arbitrarily selected. Specifying the basic flow is described in more detail in Section 3.3.3.1, “Specifying the Basic Flow” below.
- *Alternate Flows.* A series of linear sequences describing each of the alternative behaviors to the basic flow. Specifying alternate flows is described in more detail in Section 3.3.3.2, “Specifying the Alternate Flows”.
- *Post-conditions.* These would be better named “post-assumptions”. This is a statement of any assumptions that we can make at the end of the use case. Most useful where the use case is one of a series of subsidiary use cases that are included in a main use case, where they can form the pre-conditions of the next use case to be included.



### Caution

Like pre-conditions, post-conditions are best avoided. They place a burden on the specification of the use case flows, to ensure that the post-condition always holds. They therefore are also a source of problems and extra work.

- *Requirements.* In an ideal world the vision document, use case diagrams, use case specifications and supplementary requirements specification would form the requirements for a project.

For most market-led developments, where ownership of requirements is within the same business as the team who will do the development, this is now usually the case. The marketing department can learn use case based requirements capture and analysis to link to their customer facing activities.

However for external contract developments, customers may insist on a traditional “list of features” as the basis of the contract. Where this is the case, this section of the use case specification should link to the contract features that are covered by the use case.

This is often done through a third party tool that can link documents, providing automated checking of coverage, in which case this section is not needed, or may be generated automatically.

The final size of the use case specification will depend on the complexity of the use case. As a rule of thumb, most use cases take around 10-15 pages to specify, the bulk of which is alternate flows. If you are much larger than this, consider breaking the use case down. If you are much smaller consider whether the use case is addressing too small a chunk of behavior.

#### 3.3.3.1. Specifying the Basic Flow

All flows in a use case specification are linear—that is there is no conditional branching. Any choices in flows are handled by specifying another alternate flow that takes over at the choice point. It is important to remember we are specifying behavior here, not programming it.

A flow is specified as a series of numbered steps. Each step must involve some interaction with an actor, or at least generate a change that is observable externally by an actor. Requirements capture should not be specifying hidden internal behavior of a system.

For example we might give the following sequence of steps for the basic flow of the use case "Withdraw Cash" in our ATM example.

1. Customer indicates a receipt is required.
2. Customer enters amount of cash required.
3. ATM verifies with the central computer that the customer can make this withdrawal.
4. ATM dispenses cash to the customer.
5. ATM issues receipt to customer.

Remember this is a sub-use case included in the main "Use ATM# use case, which will presumably handle checking of cards and PINs before invoking this included use case.



### Note

The first step is not a condition. We take as our basic flow the case where the customer does want a receipt. The case where the customer does not want a receipt will be an alternative flow.

## 3.3.3.2. Specifying the Alternate Flows

This captures the alternative scenarios, as linear flows, by reference to the basic flow. Initially we just build a list of the alternate flows.

A.

- A.1. Customer does not require a receipt.
- A.2. Customer's account will not support the withdrawal.
- A.3. Communication to the central computer is down.
- A.4. The customer cancels the transaction.
- A.5. The customer fails to take the dispensed cash.

Subsequently we flesh out each alternate flow, by reference to the basic flow. For example the first alternate flow might look like.

A.

- A.1. Customer does not require a receipt.



A.1.1At step 1 of the basic flow the customer indicates they do not want a receipt.

A.1.2The basic flow proceeds from step 2 to step 4, and step 5 is not used.

The convention is to number the various alternate flows as A.1, A.2, A.3, etc. The steps within an alternate flow are then numbered from this. So the steps of the first alternate flow would be A.1.1, A.1.2, A.1.3, etc.

### 3.3.3.3. Iterative Development of Use Case Specifications

Iterative development will prioritize the use cases, and the first iterations will address the most important.

Early iterations will capture the basic flows of the most important use cases with only essential detail and list the headings of the main alternate flows.

Later iterations will address the remaining use cases, flesh out the steps on individual alternate flows and possibly provide more detail on individual steps.

### 3.3.4. Supplementary Requirement Specification

This captures the non-functional requirements or constraints placed on the system. Since use cases are inherently functional in nature, they cannot capture this sort of information.



#### Note

Some analysts like to place non-functional requirements in a section at the end of each use case specification, containing the non-functional requirements relevant to the use case.

I don't like this for two reasons. First key non-functional requirements (for example about performance) may need to appear in many use cases and it is bad practice to replicate information. Secondly there are invariably some non-functional requirements that are system wide and need a system wide document. Hence my preference for a single supplementary requirements specification.

There should be a section for each of the main areas of non-functional requirements. The checklist provided by Ian Sommerville in his book *Software Engineering* (Third Edn, Addison-Wesley, 1989) is a useful guide.

- *Speed*. Processor performance, user/event response times, screen refresh time.
- *Size*. Main memory (and possibly caches), disc capacity.
- *Ease of use*. Training time, style and detail of help system.
- *Reliability*. Mean time to failure, probability of unavailability, rate of failure, availability.
- *Robustness*. Time to restart after failure, percentage of events causing failure, probability of data corruption on failure.
- *Portability*. Percentage of target-dependent code/classes, number of target systems.


To this we should add sections on environment (temperature, humidity, lightening protection status) and standards compliance.


## 3.4. Using Use Cases in ArgoUML

ArgoUML allows you to draw use case diagrams. When you create a new project it has a use case diagram created by default, named `use case diagram 1`. Select this by button 1 click on the diagram name in the explorer (the upper left quadrant of the user screen).

New use case diagrams can be created as needed through `Create Diagram` on the main menu bar or on the `Create Diagram` Toolbar. They are edited in the editing pane (the upper right quadrant of the user screen).

### 3.4.1. Actors

To add an actor to the diagram use button 1 click on the actor icon on the editing pane toolbar (  ) and then button 1 click at the location where you wish to place it. The actor can be moved subsequently by button 1 motion (i.e. button 1 down over the actor to select it, move to the new position and button 1 release to drop the actor in place).


Multiple actors can be added in one go, by using button 1 double click on the actor icon. Each subsequent button 1 click will drop an actor on the diagram. A button 1 click on the select icon (  ) will stop adding actors.

The actors name is set in its property panel. First select the actor (if not already selected) on the editing pane using button 1 click. Then click on the `Properties` tab in the details pane. The name is entered in the name field, and will appear on the screen.

As a shortcut, double button 1 click on the name of the actor in the editing pane (or just typing on the keyboard when an actor is selected) will allow the name to be edited directly. This is a convenient way to enter a name for a new actor.

Having created the actor, you will see it appear in the explorer (the upper left quadrant of the user screen). This shows all the artifacts created within the UML design. A drop down at the top of the explorer controls the ordering of artifacts in the explorer. The most useful are the `Package-centric` (default) and `Diagram-centric`. The latter shows artifacts grouped by the diagram on which they appear.

### 3.4.2. Use Cases

The procedure for adding use cases is the same as that for adding actors, but using the use case icon on the editing pane toolbar (  ).


By default use cases in ArgoUML do not display their extension points (for use in extend relationships). You can show the extension point compartment in one of two ways.

1. Select the use case in the editing pane with button 1 click, then select the `Style` tab in the details pane and button 1 click on the `Display: Extension Points` check box.
2. Use button 2 click over the use case in the editing pane to display a context-sensitive pop-up menu and from that choose `Show/Show Extension Point Compartment`.

The same approaches can be used to hide the extension point compartment.

#### 3.4.2.1. Adding an Extension Point to a Use Case

There are two ways to add an extension point to a use case.

1. Select the use case on the editing pane with button 1 click. Then click on the Add Extension Point icon (  ) on the toolbar, and a new extension point with default name and location will be added after any existing extension points.

**Note**

The Add Extension Point icon is grayed out and unusable until a use case is selected.

2. Select the use case on the editing pane with button 1 click and then select its property tab in the details pane. A button 2 click over the Extension Points: field will bring up a context-sensitive pop-up menu. Select Add to add a new extension point.

If any extension points already exist, they will be shown in this field on the property tab. The new extension point will be inserted immediately before the entry over which the pop-up menu was invoked. This ordering can be changed later by using the Move Up and Move Down entries on the pop-up menu.

Whichever method is used, the new extension point is selected, and its property tab can be displayed in the details pane. The name and location of the extension point are free text, set in the corresponding fields of the property tab.

An existing extension point can be edited from its property tab. The property tab can be reached in two ways.

1. If the extension point compartment for the use case is displayed on the diagram, select the use case with button 1 click and then select the extension point with a further button 1 click. The property tab can then be selected in the details pane.
2. Otherwise select the use case and its property tab in the details pane. A button 1 click on the desired entry in the Extension Points field will bring up the property tab for the extension point in the details pane.


The name and location fields of the extension point may then be edited.

As a shortcut, where the extension point compartment is displayed, double click on the extension point allows text to be typed in directly. This is parsed to set name and location for the extension point.


Extension points may be deleted, or their ordering changed by using the button 2 pop-up menu over the Extension Points field in the use case property tab.

Having created an extension point, it will appear in the explorer (upper left quadrant of the user screen). Extension points are always shown in a sub-tree beneath their owning use case.

### 3.4.3. Associations

To join a use case to an actor on the diagram use button 1 click on the association icon on the editing pane toolbar (  ). Hold button 1 down at the use case, move to the actor and release button 1 (or alternatively start at the actor and finish at the use case).

This will create a straight line between actor and use case. You can segment the line by holding down button 1 down on the line and moving before releasing. A vertex will be added to the line, which you can move by button 1 motion. A vertex can be removed by picking it up and sliding to one end of the line.

Multiple associations can be added in one go, by using button 1 double click on the association icon. Each subsequent button 1 down/motion/release sequence will join an actor to a use case. Use button 1 on the select icon (  )

to stop adding associations.

It is also possible to add associations using small “handles# that appear to the left and right of a use case or actor when it is selected and the mouse is over it. Dragging the handle from a use case to an actor will create an association to that actor (and similarly by dragging a handle from an actor to a use case).

Dragging a handle from a use case into empty space will create a new actor to go on the other end. Similarly dragging a handle from an actor into empty space will create a new use case.

It is possible to give an association a name, describing the relationship of the actor to the use case, although this is not usually necessary. This is done through the property tab of the association. Such a name appears alongside the association near its center.

### 3.4.3.1. Setting Navigation

There are two ways of setting the navigation of an association.

1. Use button 2 click on the association to bring up a context-sensitive pop-up menu. The *Navigability* sub-menu has options for bi-directional navigation (the default, with no arrows) and for navigability Actor#Use Case and Use Case#Actor.
2. Use button 1 to select the association and select its property tab in the details pane. This shows a field named *Association Ends:*, with entries for each end labeled by the actor or use case name and its multiplicity. Select the end that should be at the tail of the arrow with button 1 click. This brings up the property tab for the association end. Use button 1 click to uncheck the *Navigability* box.



#### Note

This may seem counter-intuitive, but in fact associations by default are navigable in both directions (when no arrows are shown). This process is *turning off* navigation at one end, rather than turning it on at the other.

You will see it is possible to give an association end a name in its property tab. This name will appear at that end of the association, and can be used to indicate the *role* being played by an actor or use case in an association.

For example a time management system for a business may have use cases for completing time sheets and for signing off time sheets. An employee actor may be involved in both, one as an employee, but the other in a role as manager.

### 3.4.3.2. Setting Multiplicity


There are two ways of setting multiplicity at the end of an association.

1. Button 2 click over the end of an association will cause a context-sensitive pop-up menu to appear with a sub-menu labeled *Multiplicity*. This allows you to select from 1 (the default), 0..1, 0..\* and 1..\*.
2. Bring up the property sheet for the association end as described for setting navigation (see the second option in Section 3.4.3.1, “Setting Navigation#). A drop down menu gives a range of multiplicity options that may be selected.

The second of these two approaches has a wider range of options, although ArgoUML does not currently allow the user to set an arbitrary multiplicity.

## 3.4.4. Hierarchical Use Cases


### 3.4.4.1. Includes

The procedure for adding an include relationship is the same as that for adding an association, but using the include icon from the editing pane toolbar (  ) to join two use cases.

Since include relationships are directional the order in which the two ends are selected is important. The *including* (main) use case should be selected first (button 1 down) and the *included* (subsidiary) use case second (button 1 release).

It is possible to name include relationships using the property tab, but this is rarely done, and will not be displayed on the use case diagram.

### 3.4.4.2. Extends

The procedure for adding an extend relationship is the same as that for adding an include relationship, but using the extend icon from the editing pane toolbar (  ) to join two use cases.

As with include relationships, the order of selection matters. In this case, the *extending* (subsidiary) use case should be selected first (button 1 down) and the *extended* (main) use case second (button 1 release).




#### Note

This is the reverse of the include relationship, but reflects the way that designer's tend to think. The fact that the extend icon's arrow points upward (the opposite of the include icon) should help remind you of this.

To set a condition for the extend relationship, select the extend relationship in the editing pane (button 1 click) and then bring up its property tab in the details pane ((button 1 click on the tab). The text of the condition may be typed in the Condition field. Long conditions may be split over several lines if desired. The condition is displayed under the «extend» label on the diagram.

It is possible to name extend relationships using the property tab, but this is rarely done, and will not be displayed on the use case diagram.

### 3.4.4.3. Generalization

The procedure for adding generalizations, is the same as for adding extend relationships, but using the generalization icon from the editing pane toolbar (  ).

Since generalization is a directed relationship, the order of selection matters. The specialized use case should be selected first (button 1 down) and the generalized second (button 1 release).

It is also possible to add generalizations using small “handles” that appear to the top and bottom of a use case when it is selected. Dragging the handle at the top to another use case will create a generalization. The original use case is the specializing end, and the use case to which the handle was dragged will be the generalizing end. Dragging into empty space will create a new use case to be the generalizing end.

Similarly dragging on the bottom handle will create a generalization in which the original use case is the *generalizing* end.

Generalization is also permitted between actors, although its use is beyond the scope of this tutorial. Unlike use cases there are no generalization handles on actors, so generalizations must be created using the toolbar icon.

It is possible to name generalization relationships using the property tab, but this is rarely done. If a name is provided, it will be displayed on the use case diagram.

### 3.4.5. Stereotypes

UML has the concept of *stereotyping* as a way of extending the basic notation. It may prove useful for example to model a problem at both the business level and the engineering level. For both of these we will need use cases, but the use cases at the business level hold a different sort of information to those at the engineering level. Very likely they use different language and notation in their underlying use case specifications.

*Stereotypes* are used to label UML artifacts such as use cases, to indicate that they belong to a certain category. Such labels are shown in guillemots («») above the name of the artifact on the diagram. The UML standard defines a number of standard stereotypes, and the user may define more stereotypes of his own.

You will see that ArgoUML has a drop down selector, *Stereotype* on every property tab. This is populated with the standard stereotypes, to which you may add your own user defined ones.

The details of stereotyping are beyond the scope of this tutorial. The reference manual (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”) documents the support provided in ArgoUML.




#### Warning

ArgoUML is missing a few of the standard UML stereotypes. In addition not all artifacts will actually display the stereotype on the diagram. At present this includes use cases and actors.

### 3.4.6. Documentation

ArgoUML has some simple documentation facilities associated with artifacts on a diagram. In general these should be used only to record the location of material in documents that can be handled by a mainstream editor or word processor, not the actual documentation itself.

Documentation for a particular artifact is recorded through the documentation tab in the details pane (the quadrant of the user screen at the bottom right).

In addition annotation may be added to diagrams using the text icon on the editing pane toolbar (  ).

The recommendation is that a use case diagram should use the documentation tab of actors to record information about the actor, or if the actor is complex to refer to a separate document that holds information about the actor.

The documentation tab of use cases should record the location of the use case specification. The information in a use case specification (for all but the simplest use cases) is too complex to be placed directly in the tab.

The project should also have a separate vision document and supplementary requirements specification. A text annotation on diagrams may be used to refer to these if the user finds this helpful.



#### Warning

The documentation tab includes a `Deprecated` check box. The state of this flag is not preserved over save and load in the current release of ArgoUML

### 3.4.7. System Boundary Box

ArgoUML provides a series of tools to provide arbitrary graphical annotation on diagrams (we have already men-

tioned the text tool). These are found at the right hand end of the editing pane toolbar and are fully documented in the reference manual (see Chapter 9, *The Editing Pane*).

The rectangle tool can be used to draw the boundary box. Use the button 2 context-sensitive Ordering pop-up menu to place it behind everything else. However there is no way to change its fill color from the default white. You may therefore prefer to draw the boundary box as four lines. This is the method used for the diagrams in this chapter.



### Note

The editing pane in ArgoUML has a grid to which objects snap to aid in drawing. The size of this grid and its effect may be altered through the View menu (using Adjust Grid and Adjust Grid Snap). This is described fully in the reference manual (see Chapter 12, *The Menu bar*).

## 3.5. Case Study

### 3.5.1. Vision Document

A vision document contains more than those things needed for the modeling effort. It also contains financial and scheduling pertinent information. The following sections are those parts of the Vision Document spelled out in Section 3.3.1, “Vision Document# above. In practice this format need not be followed religiously, but is used here for consistency.

#### 3.5.1.1. Summary

The company wishes to produce and market a line of ATM devices. The purpose of this project is to produce the hardware and the software to drive it that are both maintainable and robust.

#### 3.5.1.2. Goals

To produce better designed products based on newer technology. Follow the MDA philosophy of the OMG by producing first a Platform Independent Model (PIM). As current modeling technology does not admit of maintaining the integrity of the connection between the PIM and Platform Specific Models (PSMs), the PIM will become comparatively stable before the first iteration of the PSM is produced. The software platform will be Java technology. The system will use a simple userid (from ATM card) and password (or PIN) mechanism.

#### 3.5.1.3. Market Context

Equipment currently on the market is based on older technology for both hardware and software. This technology has not reached the end of its useful life, making it unlikely that the vendors of that gear are going to update it in the near future. On the other hand newer technology is available that would put us at a competitive advantage if implemented now.

#### 3.5.1.4. Stakeholders

Among the stakeholders for this system are the Engineering Department, the Maintenance Department, and the Central Computer Facility. The full list of these stakeholders and the specific individuals representing them are.

- *Engineering.* Bunny, Bugs
- *Maintenance.* Hardy, Oliver
- *Computer Facility.* Laurel, Stanley

- *Chief Executive Officer.* Hun, Atilla The
- *Marketing.* Harry, Oil Can

### 3.5.1.5. Key Features

Cash deposit, cash withdrawal, and account inquiries by customers. Customers include people who have accounts at the owning bank as well as people who wish to make withdrawals from accounts in other banks or from credit card accounts.

Maintenance of the equipment by the bank's engineers. This action may be initiated by the engineer on a routine basis. It may also be initiated by the equipment that can call the engineer when it detects an internal fault.

Unloading of deposits and loading of cash by officials of the local bank branch. These actions occur either on a scheduled basis or when the central computer determines that the cash supply is low or the deposit receptacle is liable to be getting full.

An audit trail for all activities will be maintained and sent periodically to the bank's central computer. It will be possible for the maintenance engineer to make a copy of the audit trail for sneaker net communications with the central computer.

Both dialup and leased line support will be provided. The ATM will continue to provide services to customers when communications with the central computer is not available.

### 3.5.1.6. Constraints

The project must be completed within nine months. It must cost no more than 1,750,000 USD excluding production costs. Components may be contracted out, but the basic architecture as well as the infrastructure will be designed in house. Close liaison must be maintained between the software development and the design, development and production of the hardware. Neither the hardware nor the software shall be considered the independent variable, but rather they shall be considered coequal.

### 3.5.1.7. Appendix

The following are the actors that directly support this vision. Additional actors may be identified later that are needed to support this or that technology. They should not be added to this list unless they are deemed to directly support the vision as described in this document.

- Central Computer
- Customer
- Local Branch Official
- Maintenance Engineer

The following are the use cases that directly support this vision. Additional use cases may be identified later that are needed to support this or that technology or to support the use cases listed here. They should not be added to this list unless they are deemed to directly support the vision as described in this document.

- Audit
- Customer Uses Machine



- Maintain Machine

### **3.5.2. Identifying Actors and Use Cases (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **3.5.3. Associations (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **3.5.4. Advanced Diagram Features (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **3.5.5. Use Case Specifications (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **3.5.6. Supplementary Requirements Specification (To be written)**

*To be written...*

---

# Chapter 4. Analysis

## 4.1. Introduction

Analysis is the process of taking the “customer# requirements and re-casting them in the language of, and from the perspective of, a putative solution.

We are not actually trying the flesh out the detailed solution at this stage. That occurs in the *Design Phase* (see Chapter 5, *Design*).

Unlike the boundary between Requirements and Analysis Phases, the boundary between Analysis and Design Phases is inherently blurred. The key is that analysis should define the solution no further than is necessary to specify the requirements in the language of the solution. The artifacts in Analysis generally represent a high level of abstraction.

Once again the *recursive*, and *iterative* nature of our process means we will come back to the Analysis phase many times in the future.

## 4.2. The Analysis Process (To be written)

*Include CRC cards. To be written...*

### 4.2.1. Output of the Analysis Process (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.2.1.1. Concept Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.2.1.2. System Sequence Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.2.1.3. System State Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.2.1.4. Realisation Use Case Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.2.1.5. Documents (To be written)

*Use Case Specifications and Supplementary Requirements Specifications recast in solution language. To be written...*

## 4.3. Class Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.3.1. The Class Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.3.2. Advanced Class Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.3.2.1. Association Classes (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 4.4. Creating Class Diagrams in ArgoUML

### 4.4.1. Classes

*Identifying class diagrams from existing materials (Vision, Use Cases etc). To be written...*

#### 4.4.1.1. Using the Note Icon in the Tool Bar

Click on your target class. Then click on the note icon. ArgoUML will generate the link automatically.

You can also right click to add a note as well! Be aware that you can add an undefined number of notes to any one class!



#### **Warning**

Be aware that your note will not appear in the source code documentation tab.

### 4.4.2. Associations (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.4.2.1. Aggregation (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.4.3. Class Attributes and Operations (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.4.3.1. Entering Data Into Attributes and Methods Windows

Click directly in the class artifact and start typing. Do not use the properties window dialog fields—they are not fully functional and liable to cause you a little frustration.

In fact, it would be interesting to see if you can type stereotypes write in the class attribute box for generating XML diagrams.

#### 4.4.3.2. Class Attributes (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.4.3.3. Class Operations (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.4.4. Advanced Class Features (To be written)

#### 4.4.4.1. Association Classes (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 4.4.4.2. Stereotypes (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 4.5. Sequence Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.5.1. The Sequence Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.5.2. Identifying Actions (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.5.3. Advanced Sequence Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 4.6. Creating Sequence Diagrams in ArgoUML

### 4.6.1. Sequence Diagrams

#### 4.6.1.1. Creating a Sequence Diagram

Normally, you can just start a sequence diagram right away. On the `Create Diagram` menu choose `Sequence`.

#### 4.6.1.2. Known Issues with Sequence Diagrams

The following problems are currently identified.

- Checklist is not enabled with Sequence artifacts.
- It is not possible (as yet) to create call backs.
- You cannot change the order of the connectivity of a link artifact in ArgoUML yet.
- StimulusDestroy is not dependable.

### 4.6.2. Actions (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.6.3. Advanced Sequence Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 4.7. State Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 4.7.1. The State Diagram (To be written)

*Types of state diagram (Moore, Mealy); Hierarchical diagrams. To be written...*

### 4.7.2. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### **4.7.2.1. Hierarchical State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.8. Creating State Diagrams in ArgoUML**

#### **4.8.1. State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **4.8.1.1. Creating a State Diagram**

Select a class, then you can create a state diagram.

#### **4.8.2. States (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **4.8.2.1. Editing a Composite State**

When editing a composite state, how do you provide do and event for a composite state?

The answer is to select a class, then you can create a state diagram.

#### **4.8.3. Transitions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **4.8.4. Actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **4.8.5. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **4.8.5.1. Hierarchical State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.9. Realisation Use Cases (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.10. Creating Realisation Use Cases in ArgoUML (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.11. Case Study (To be written)**

#### **4.11.1. Concept Class Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **4.11.1.1. Identifying classes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **4.11.1.2. Identifying associations (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.11.2. System Sequence Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **4.11.2.1. Identifying actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.11.3. System State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **4.11.4. Realisation Use Cases (To be written)**

*To be written...*

---

# Chapter 5. Design

## 5.1. Introduction

We now have the problem we are trying to solve specified in the language of a putative solution. In the Design Phase, we construct all the details of that solution.

The blurred boundary between Analysis and Design is reflected in their use of many of the same UML tools. In this chapter we will mostly be reusing UML technology we have already met once. The big step is casting everything into concrete terms. We move from the abstract concepts of analysis to their concrete realisation.

Once again the *recursive*, and *iterative* nature of our process means we will come back to the Design phase many times in the future.

## 5.2. The Design Process (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 5.2.1. Output of the Design Process (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.2.1.1. Package Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.2.1.2. Realization Class Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.2.1.3. Sequence Diagrams and Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.2.1.4. State Diagrams and Activity Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.2.1.5. Deployment Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.2.1.6. Documents (To be written)

*System Architecture. To be written...*

## 5.3. Package Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 5.3.1. The Package Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 5.3.2. Advanced Package Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.3.2.1. Subpackages (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### **5.3.2.2. Adding DataTypes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.3.2.3. Adding Stereotypes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.4. Creating Package Diagrams in ArgoUML**

### **5.4.1. Packages**

*How to work out what goes in packages. To be written...*

#### **5.4.1.1. Subpackages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.4.2. Relationships between packages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.4.2.1. Dependency (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.4.2.2. Generalization (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.4.2.3. Realization and Abstraction (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.4.3. Advanced Package Features (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.4.3.1. Creating New Datatypes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.4.3.2. Creating New Stereotypes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.5. More on Class Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.5.1. The Class Diagram (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.5.1.1. Class Attributes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.5.1.2. Class Operations (To be written)**

*To be written...*



### 5.5.2. Advanced Class Diagrams (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 5.5.2.1. Realization and Abstraction (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 5.6. More on Class Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written)

### 5.6.1. Classes (To be written)

*More on identifying classes from existing materials and use of stereotypes. To be written...*

### 5.6.2. Class Attributes and Operations (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.6.2.1. Class Attributes (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 5.6.2.2. Class Operations (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 5.6.3. Advanced Class Features

### 5.6.3.1. Operations on Interfaces

#### 5.6.3.1.1. Interfaces that extend interfaces

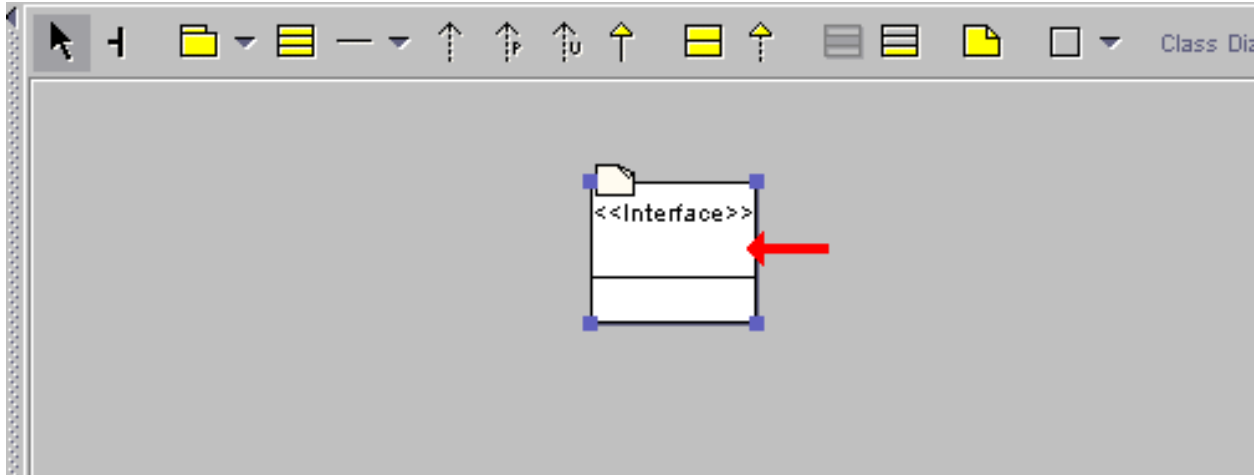
Add a unnamed interface to the current classdiagram by single-clicking on the interface icon in the tool bar and then clicking at the diagram pane (see Figure 5.1).

**Figure 5.1. Selecting the Interface tool**



Then double click on the interfaces name field to change it's name as shown in Figure 5.2.

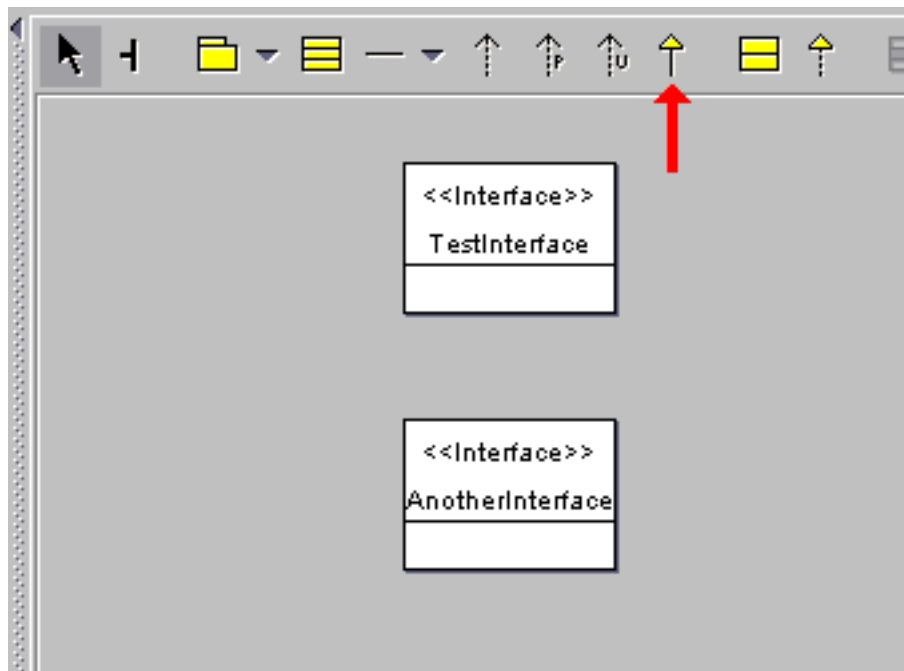
### Figure 5.2. Interface artifact on the Class Diagram



and type a name for it (like `TestInterface` in this case). Press “Enter” when the name is complete. (You could also enter the name by going to the Properties Tab in the Details Pane after adding the interface.)

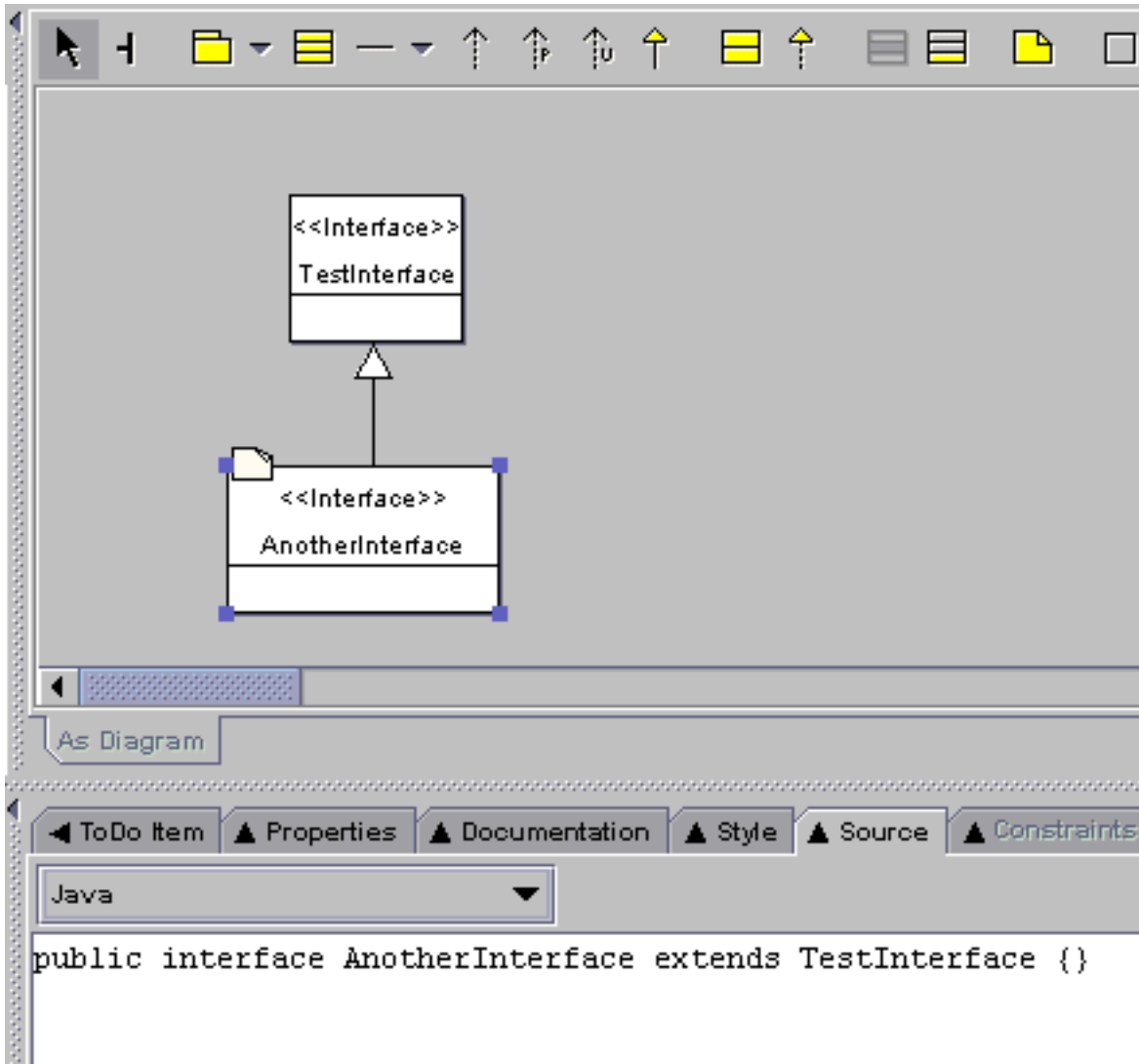
Add another interface with a different by repeating the last 2 steps. Then single-click on the Generalization icon in the tool bar as shown in Figure 5.3.

**Figure 5.3. Generalization on the Class Diagram tool bar**



move the mouse pointer to the subinterface, press the left mouse button and drag the generalization to the superinterface, where you release the mouse button. Figure Figure 5.4 shows how your diagram should look now.

**Figure 5.4. Generalization between two Interfaces.**



By clicking on the subinterface and the source tab properties pane, and then selecting Java Notation for the source tab, you can see that the interface actually extends its superinterface.

### 5.6.3.2. Stereotypes (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 5.7. Sequence and Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)



### Note

Sequence diagrams does not work in ArgoUML version 0.14.

*To be written...*

### 5.7.1. More on the Sequence Diagram (To be written)

*To be written...*

## **5.7.2. The Collaboration Diagram (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.7.2.1. Messages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.7.2.2. Actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.7.3. Advanced Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

# **5.8. Creating Collaboration Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written)**

## **5.8.1. Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.8.2. Messages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.8.2.1. Actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.8.3. Advanced Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.9. State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.9.1. The State Diagram (To be written)**

*More on this. To be written...*

### **5.9.2. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.9.2.1. Actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.9.2.2. Transitions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.9.2.2.1. Triggers (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.9.2.2.2. Guards (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.9.2.2.3. Effectss (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.9.2.3. Pseudo States (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.9.2.3.1. Branch (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.9.2.3.2. Fork and Join (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.9.2.4. Hierarchical State Machines (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.9.2.5. Models for State History (To be written)**

*Shallow v Deep. To be written...*

## **5.10. Creating State Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written)**

### **5.10.1. State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.2. States (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.3. Transitions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.4. Actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.5. Advanced State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.10.5.1. Transitions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.10.5.1.1. Triggers (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.10.5.1.2. Guards (To be written)**

*To be written...*

##### **5.10.5.1.3. Effectss (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.5.2. Pseudo States (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.10.5.2.1. Branch (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.10.5.2.2. Fork and Join (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.5.3. Hierarchical State Machines (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.10.5.4. History (To be written)**

*Shallow v Deep. To be written...*

## **5.11. Activity Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.11.1. The Activity Diagram (To be written)**

*More on this. To be written...*

#### **5.11.1.1. Action States (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.12. Creating Activity Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written)**

### **5.12.1. Activity Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.12.1.1. Creating an Activity Diagram**

Select a use case or class, then you can create an activity diagram.

### **5.12.2. Action States (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.13. Deployment Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.13.1. The Deployment Diagram (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.14. Creating Deployment Diagrams in ArgoUML (To be written)**

### **5.14.1. Nodes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.14.1.1. Node Instances (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.14.2. Components (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.14.2.1. Component Instances (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.14.3. Relationships between nodes and components (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.14.3.1. Dependency (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.14.3.2. Associations (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.14.3.3. Links (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.15. System Architecture (To be written)**

*To be written...*

## **5.16. Case Study (To be written)**

### **5.16.1. Packages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.1.1. Identifying Packages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.1.2. Datatypes and Stereotypes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.2. Class Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.2.1. Identifying classes (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.2.2. Identifying associations (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.2.3. Specifying Attributes and Operations (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.3. Sequence Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.3.1. Identifying actions (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.4. Collaboration Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

#### **5.16.4.1. Identifying Messages (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.5. State Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.6. Activity Diagrams (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.7. The Deployment Diagram (To be written)**

*To be written...*

### **5.16.8. The System Architecture (To be written)**

*To be written...*



---

# Chapter 6. Build (To be written)

## 6.1. Introduction

We now have our design fully specified. With the right simulator we could actually execute the design and see if it works. ArgoUML does not provide such functionality, but this functionality has been provided in alternative tools.

ArgoUML does allow you to generate code from the design. In the Build Phase take the design we have and supplement it with code for the detailed actions of the classes and their states.

Central to this will be our System Architecture. It is this specification that provides the framework against which all our code will operate.

Once again the *recursive*, and *iterative* nature of our process means we will come back to the Build phase many times in the future.

This chapter is a little different from those that went before. UML itself is a notation for design. There is no new UML notation to understand here.

## 6.2. The Build Process (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 6.2.1. Output of the Build Process (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 6.2.1.1. Code (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### 6.2.1.2. Documents (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 6.3. Adding Code to ArgoUML (To be written)

### 6.3.1. Classes (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 6.3.2. Actions (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 6.4. Case Study (To be written)

### 6.4.1. Coding for Classes (To be written)

*To be written...*

### 6.4.2. Coding Actions (To be written)

*To be written...*

## 6.5. Case Study (To be written)

*To be written...*

---

## **Part II. ArgoUML Reference Manual**

---

---

# Table of Contents

7. User Interface Reference .....	81
7.1. Introduction .....	81
7.2. Overview of the Window .....	81
7.3. UML Diagram Types supported by ArgoUML .....	82
7.4. General Mouse Behavior in ArgoUML .....	83
7.4.1. Mouse Button Terminology .....	83
7.4.2. Button 1 Click .....	83
7.4.3. Button 1 Double Click .....	83
7.4.4. Button 1 Motion .....	83
7.4.5. Shift and Control with Button 1 .....	84
7.4.6. Button 2 Actions .....	84
7.4.7. Button 2 Double Click .....	84
7.4.8. Button 2 Motion .....	84
7.5. General Information About Panes .....	84
7.5.1. Re-sizing Panes .....	84
7.5.2. Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously .....	85
7.5.3. Reducing the Number of Panes Visible .....	85
7.6. The status bar .....	85
8. The Explorer .....	86
8.1. Introduction .....	86
8.2. Mouse Behavior in the Explorer .....	87
8.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	87
8.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	87
8.2.3. Button 2 Actions .....	87
8.2.4. Button 2 Double Click .....	87
8.3. Perspective Selection .....	87
8.4. Navigating Backward and Forward .....	89
8.5. Configuring Perspectives .....	89
8.5.1. Perspectives Tag .....	89
8.5.2. Panes Tag .....	91
8.6. Context Sensitive Menu .....	93
8.6.1. Properties Pop-Up .....	93
8.6.2. Add to Diagram .....	93
8.6.3. Delete From Model .....	94
9. The Editing Pane .....	95
9.1. Introduction .....	95
9.2. Mouse Behavior in the Editing Pane .....	96
9.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	96
9.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	96
9.2.3. Button 1 Motion .....	96
9.2.4. Shift and Control with Button 1 .....	97
9.2.5. Button 2 Actions .....	97
9.2.6. Button 2 Double Click .....	97
9.2.7. Button 2 Motion .....	97
9.3. The tool bar .....	97
9.3.1. Layout Tools .....	97
9.3.2. Annotation Tools .....	98
9.3.3. Drawing Tools .....	98
9.3.4. Use Case Diagram Specific Tools .....	99
9.3.5. Class Diagram Specific Tools .....	100
9.3.6. Sequence Diagram Specific Tools .....	101
9.3.7. State Diagram Specific Tools .....	102
9.3.8. Collaboration Diagram Specific Tools .....	103

9.3.9. Activity Diagram Specific Tools .....	103
9.3.10. Deployment Diagram Specific Tools .....	104
9.4. Clarifiers .....	106
9.5. The Drawing Grid .....	106
9.6. The Diagram Tab .....	106
9.7. Pop-Up Menus .....	106
9.7.1. Critiques .....	106
9.7.2. Ordering .....	107
9.7.3. Add .....	107
9.7.4. Show .....	107
9.7.5. Modifiers .....	108
9.7.6. Multiplicity .....	108
9.7.7. Aggregation .....	108
9.7.8. Navigability .....	109
9.7.9. Properties .....	109
10. The Details Pane .....	
10.1. Introduction .....	110
10.1.1. Spawning Details Tabs .....	111
10.2. Mouse Behavior in the Details Pane .....	111
10.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	111
10.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	111
10.2.3. Button 2 Actions .....	111
10.2.4. Button 2 Double Click .....	111
10.2.5. Button 2 Motion .....	111
10.3. To Do Item Tab .....	111
10.4. Properties Tab .....	114
10.5. Documentation Tab .....	116
10.6. Style Tab .....	116
10.7. Source tab .....	117
10.8. Constraints Tab .....	118
10.8.1. The Constraint Editor .....	120
10.9. Tagged Values Tab .....	122
10.10. Checklist Tab .....	122
11. The To-Do Pane .....	
11.1. Introduction .....	124
11.2. Mouse Behavior in the To-Do Pane .....	125
11.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	125
11.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	125
11.2.3. Button 2 Actions .....	125
11.2.4. Button 2 Double Click .....	125
11.3. Presentation Selection .....	125
11.4. Flat/Hierarchical Button .....	126
11.5. Item Count .....	127
12. The Menu bar .....	
12.1. Introduction .....	128
12.2. Mouse Behavior in the Menu Bar .....	128
12.2.1. Button 1 Click .....	128
12.2.2. Button 1 Double Click .....	128
12.2.3. Button 1 Motion .....	128
12.2.4. Button 2 Actions .....	128
12.2.5. Button 2 Double Click .....	129
12.2.6. Button 2 Motion .....	129
12.3. The File Menu .....	129
12.3.1. New... ..	129
12.3.2. Open Project... ..	129
12.3.3. Save Project .....	131
12.3.4. Save Project As... ..	131
12.3.5. Import... ..	131

---

12.3.6. Load Model From DB .....	133
12.3.7. Save Model To DB .....	133
12.3.8. Print... ..	133
12.3.9. Save Graphics... ..	133
12.3.10. Save Configuration .....	134
12.3.11. Exit .....	134
12.4. The Edit Menu .....	134
12.4.1. The Select Sub-Menu .....	134
12.4.2. Undo .....	135
12.4.3. Redo .....	135
12.4.4. Cut .....	135
12.4.5. Copy .....	135
12.4.6. Paste .....	135
12.4.7. Remove From Diagram .....	136
12.4.8. Delete From Model .....	136
12.4.9. Empty trash .....	136
12.4.10. Settings... ..	136
12.5. The View Menu .....	139
12.5.1. Goto Diagram... ..	139
12.5.2. Find... ..	140
12.5.3. The Zoom Sub-Menu .....	143
12.5.4. The Editor Tabs Sub-Menu .....	143
12.5.5. The Details Tabs Sub-Menu .....	144
12.5.6. Adjust Grid .....	145
12.5.7. Adjust Grid Snap .....	145
12.5.8. Adjust Page Breaks .....	146
12.5.9. Buttons on Selection .....	146
12.5.10. The Notation Sub-Menu .....	146
12.6. The Create Diagram Menu .....	147
12.6.1. Class Diagram .....	147
12.6.2. Use Case Diagram .....	147
12.6.3. State Diagram .....	147
12.6.4. Activity Diagram .....	147
12.6.5. Collaboration Diagram .....	148
12.6.6. Deployment Diagram .....	148
12.6.7. Sequence Diagram .....	148
12.7. The Arrange Menu .....	148
12.7.1. The Align Sub-Menu .....	149
12.7.2. The Distribute Sub-Menu .....	149
12.7.3. The Reorder Sub-Menu .....	150
12.7.4. The Nudge Sub-Menu .....	150
12.7.5. The Layout Sub-Menu .....	150
12.8. The Generation Menu .....	151
12.8.1. Generate Selected Classes .....	151
12.8.2. Generate All Classes .....	152
12.9. The Critique Menu .....	152
12.9.1. Toggle Auto-Critique .....	152
12.9.2. Design Issues... ..	153
12.9.3. Design Goals... ..	154
12.9.4. Browse Critics... ..	156
12.10. The Tools Menu .....	161
12.11. The Help Menu .....	162
12.11.1. About Argo/UML .....	162
13. The Critics .....	
13.1. Introduction .....	164
13.1.1. Terminology .....	164
13.1.2. Design Issues .....	164
13.2. Uncategorized .....	164

---

---

13.3. Class Selection .....	164
13.3.1. Wrap DataType .....	165
13.3.2. Reduce Classes in diagram <diagram> .....	165
13.3.3. Clean Up Diagram .....	165
13.4. Naming .....	165
13.4.1. Resolve Association Name Conflict .....	165
13.4.2. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict .....	165
13.4.3. Change Names or Signatures in <artifact> .....	165
13.4.4. Duplicate End (Role) Names for <Association:> .....	166
13.4.5. Role name conflicts with member .....	166
13.4.6. Choose a Name (Classes and Interfaces) .....	166
13.4.7. Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (Classes and Interfaces) .....	166
13.4.8. Choose a Name (Attributes) .....	166
13.4.9. Choose a Name (Operations) .....	166
13.4.10. Choose a Name (States) .....	167
13.4.11. Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (States) .....	167
13.4.12. Revise Name to Avoid Confusion .....	167
13.4.13. Choose a Legal Name .....	167
13.4.14. Change <artifact> to a Non-Reserved Word .....	167
13.4.15. Choose a Better Operation Name .....	167
13.4.16. Choose a Better Attribute Name .....	167
13.4.17. Capitalize Class Name <class> .....	168
13.4.18. Revise Package Name <artifact> .....	168
13.5. Storage .....	168
13.5.1. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict .....	168
13.5.2. Add Instance Variables to <class> .....	168
13.5.3. Add Constructor to <class> .....	168
13.5.4. Reduce Attributes on <class> .....	169
13.6. Planned Extensions .....	169
13.6.1. Operations in Interfaces must be public .....	169
13.6.2. Interfaces may only have operations .....	169
13.6.3. Remove Reference to Specific Subclass .....	169
13.7. MState Machines .....	169
13.7.1. Reduce Transitions on <state> .....	170
13.7.2. Reduce States in machine <machine> .....	170
13.7.3. Add Transitions to <state> .....	170
13.7.4. Add Incoming Transitions to <artifact> .....	170
13.7.5. Add Outgoing Transitions from <artifact> .....	170
13.7.6. Remove Extra Initial States .....	170
13.7.7. Place an Initial State .....	170
13.7.8. Add Trigger or Guard to Transition .....	170
13.7.9. Change Join Transitions .....	170
13.7.10. Change Fork Transitions .....	170
13.7.11. Change Branch Transitions .....	171
13.7.12. Add Guard to Transition .....	171
13.7.13. Clean Up Diagram .....	171
13.7.14. Make Edge More Visible .....	171
13.8. Design Patterns .....	171
13.8.1. Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class> .....	171
13.8.2. Singleton Stereotype Violated in <class> .....	172
13.8.3. Nodes normally have no enclosers .....	172
13.8.4. NodeInstances normally have no enclosers .....	172
13.8.5. Components normally are inside nodes .....	172
13.8.6. ComponentInstances normally are inside nodes .....	172
13.8.7. Classes normally are inside components .....	172
13.8.8. Interfaces normally are inside components .....	172
13.8.9. Objects normally are inside components .....	173
13.8.10. LinkEnds have not the same locations .....	173

---

---

13.8.11. Set classifier (Deployment Diagram) .....	173
13.8.12. Missing return-actions .....	173
13.8.13. Missing call(send)-action .....	173
13.8.14. No Stimuli on these links .....	173
13.8.15. Set Classifier (Sequence Diagram) .....	173
13.8.16. Wrong position of these stimuli .....	173
13.9. Relationships .....	173
13.9.1. Circular Association .....	173
13.9.2. Make <association> Navigable .....	174
13.9.3. Remove Navigation from Interface via <association> .....	174
13.9.4. Add Associations to <artifact> .....	174
13.9.5. Remove Reference to Specific Subclass .....	174
13.9.6. Reduce Associations on <artifact> .....	174
13.9.7. Make Edge More Visible .....	175
13.10. Instantiation .....	175
13.11. Modularity .....	175
13.11.1. Classifier not in Namespace of its Association .....	175
13.11.2. Add Elements to Package <package> .....	175
13.12. Expected Usage .....	175
13.12.1. Clean Up Diagram .....	175
13.13. Methods .....	176
13.13.1. Change Names or Signatures in <artifact> .....	176
13.13.2. Class Must be Abstract .....	176
13.13.3. Add Operations to <class> .....	176
13.13.4. Reduce Operations on <artifact> .....	176
13.14. Code Generation .....	176
13.14.1. Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces .....	176
13.15. Stereotypes .....	176
13.16. Inheritance .....	176
13.16.1. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict .....	176
13.16.2. Remove <class>'s Circular Inheritance .....	177
13.16.3. Class Must be Abstract .....	177
13.16.4. Remove final keyword or remove subclasses .....	177
13.16.5. Illegal Generalization .....	177
13.16.6. Remove Unneeded Realizes from <class> .....	177
13.16.7. Define Concrete (Sub)Class .....	177
13.16.8. Define Class to Implement <interface> .....	177
13.16.9. Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces .....	177
13.16.10. Make Edge More Visible .....	177
13.17. Containment .....	178
13.17.1. Remove Circular Composition .....	178
13.17.2. Duplicate Parameter Name .....	178
13.17.3. Two Aggregate Ends (Roles) in Binary Association .....	178
13.17.4. Aggregate End (Role) in 3-way (or More) Association .....	178
13.17.5. Wrap DataType .....	178
13.17.6. Import Parameter Type into Class .....	179
14. ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference .....	
14.1. Introduction .....	180
14.2. The Model .....	180
14.2.1. Model Details Tabs .....	180
14.2.2. Model Property Toolbar .....	181
14.2.3. Property Fields For The Model .....	181
14.3. Datatype .....	182
14.3.1. Datatype Details Tabs .....	183
14.3.2. Datatype Property Toolbar .....	184
14.3.3. Property Fields For Datatype .....	184
14.4. Stereotypes .....	186
14.4.1. Stereotype Details Tabs .....	186

---



---

14.4.2. Stereotype Property Toolbar .....	187
14.4.3. Property Fields For Stereotype .....	188
14.5. ArgoUML Diagrams .....	190
14.5.1. Diagram Details Tabs .....	190
14.5.2. Property Fields For Diagram .....	190
15. ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
15.1. Introduction .....	192
15.1.1. ArgoUML Limitations Concerning Use Case Diagrams .....	192
15.2. Actor .....	192
15.2.1. Actor Details Tabs .....	193
15.2.2. Actor Property Toolbar .....	194
15.2.3. Property Fields For Actor .....	194
15.3. Use Case .....	195
15.3.1. Use Case Details Tabs .....	195
15.3.2. Use Case Property Toolbar .....	196
15.3.3. Property Fields For Use Case .....	197
15.4. Extension Point .....	198
15.4.1. Extension Point Details Tabs .....	199
15.4.2. Extension Point Property Toolbar .....	199
15.4.3. Property Fields For Extension Point .....	200
15.5. Association .....	200
15.6. Association End .....	201
15.7. Dependency .....	201
15.7.1. Dependency Details Tabs .....	201
15.7.2. Dependency Property Toolbar .....	202
15.7.3. Property Fields For Dependency .....	202
15.8. Generalization .....	203
15.8.1. Generalization Details Tabs .....	203
15.8.2. Generalization Property Toolbar .....	205
15.8.3. Property Fields For Generalization .....	205
15.9. Extend .....	207
15.9.1. Extend Details Tabs .....	207
15.9.2. Extend Property Toolbar .....	208
15.9.3. Property Fields For Extend .....	209
15.10. Include .....	210
15.10.1. Include Details Tabs .....	210
15.10.2. Include Property Toolbar .....	211
15.10.3. Property Fields For Include .....	211
16. ArgoUML Class Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
16.1. Introduction .....	214
16.1.1. Limitations Concerning Class Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	216
16.2. Package .....	216
16.2.1. Package Details Tabs .....	216
16.2.2. Package Property Toolbar .....	217
16.2.3. Property Fields For Package .....	217
16.3. Datatype .....	221
16.4. Stereotype .....	221
16.5. Class .....	221
16.5.1. Class Details Tabs .....	221
16.5.2. Class Property Toolbar .....	222
16.5.3. Property Fields For Class .....	223
16.6. Attribute .....	228
16.6.1. Attribute Details Tabs .....	228
16.6.2. Attribute Property Toolbar .....	229
16.6.3. Property Fields For Attribute .....	229
16.7. Operation .....	232
16.7.1. Operation Details Tabs .....	232
16.7.2. Operation Property Toolbar .....	233

---

---

16.7.3. Property Fields For Operation .....	233
16.8. Parameter .....	236
16.8.1. Parameter Details Tabs .....	236
16.8.2. Parameter Property Toolbar .....	237
16.8.3. Property Fields For Parameter .....	238
16.9. Signal .....	239
16.9.1. Signal Details Tabs .....	240
16.9.2. Signal Property Toolbar .....	240
16.9.3. Property Fields For Signal .....	241
16.10. Association .....	245
16.10.1. Three-way and Greater Associations .....	246
16.10.2. Association Details Tabs .....	246
16.10.3. Association Property Toolbar .....	247
16.10.4. Property Fields For Association .....	247
16.11. Association End .....	251
16.11.1. Association End Details Tabs .....	251
16.11.2. Association End Property Toolbar .....	252
16.11.3. Property Fields For Association End .....	252
16.12. Dependency .....	254
16.13. Generalization .....	254
16.14. Interface .....	254
16.14.1. Interface Details Tabs .....	254
16.14.2. Interface Property Toolbar .....	255
16.14.3. Property Fields For Interface .....	256
16.15. Abstraction .....	259
16.15.1. Abstraction Details Tabs .....	260
16.15.2. Abstraction Property Toolbar .....	261
16.15.3. Property Fields For Abstraction .....	261
17. ArgoUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
17.1. Introduction .....	263
17.1.1. Limitations Concerning Sequence Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	264
17.2. Object .....	264
17.2.1. Object Details Tabs .....	265
17.2.2. Object Property Toolbar .....	266
17.2.3. Property Fields For Object .....	266
17.3. Stimulus .....	269
17.3.1. Stimulus Details Tabs .....	270
17.3.2. Stimulus Property Toolbar .....	271
17.3.3. Property Fields For Stimulus .....	271
17.4. Stimulus Call .....	273
17.5. Stimulus Create .....	273
17.6. Stimulus Destroy .....	273
17.7. Stimulus Send .....	273
17.8. Stimulus Return .....	274
17.9. Link .....	274
17.9.1. Link Details Tabs .....	274
17.9.2. Link Property Toolbar .....	275
17.9.3. Property Fields For Link .....	276
18. ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
18.1. Introduction .....	277
18.1.1. Limitations Concerning State Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	278
18.2. State .....	278
18.2.1. State Details Tabs .....	279
18.2.2. State Property Toolbar .....	280
18.2.3. Property Fields For State .....	280
18.3. Action .....	282
18.3.1. Action Details Tabs .....	282
18.3.2. Action Property Toolbar .....	283

---

---

18.3.3. Property Fields For Action .....	284
18.4. Composite State .....	284
18.5. Transition .....	285
18.5.1. Transition Details Tabs .....	285
18.5.2. Transition Property Toolbar .....	286
18.5.3. Property Fields For Transition .....	286
18.6. Call Event .....	288
18.6.1. Call Event Details Tabs .....	289
18.6.2. Call Event Property Toolbar .....	289
18.6.3. Property Fields For Call Event .....	290
18.7. Guard .....	291
18.7.1. Guard Details Tabs .....	291
18.7.2. Guard Property Toolbar .....	292
18.7.3. Property Fields For Guard .....	292
18.8. Pseudostate .....	292
18.8.1. Pseudostate Details Tabs .....	293
18.8.2. Pseudostate Property Toolbar .....	294
18.8.3. Property Fields For Pseudostate .....	294
18.9. Initial State .....	295
18.10. Final State .....	295
18.10.1. Final State Details Tabs .....	295
18.10.2. Final State Property Toolbar .....	296
18.10.3. Property Fields For Final State .....	297
18.11. Branch .....	298
18.12. Fork .....	298
18.13. Join .....	298
18.14. Shallow History .....	298
18.15. Deep History (to be improved...) .....	299
19. ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
19.1. Introduction .....	300
19.1.1. Limitations Concerning Collaboration Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	301
19.2. Classifier Role .....	301
19.2.1. Classifier Role Details Tabs .....	302
19.2.2. Classifier Role Property Toolbar .....	303
19.2.3. Property Fields For Classifier Role .....	304
19.3. Association Role .....	305
19.3.1. Association Role Details Tabs .....	305
19.3.2. Association Role Property Toolbar .....	307
19.3.3. Property Fields For Association Role .....	307
19.4. Association End Role .....	308
19.4.1. Association End Role Details Tabs .....	309
19.4.2. Association End Role Property Toolbar .....	310
19.4.3. Property Fields For Association End Role .....	310
19.5. Message .....	312
19.5.1. Message Details Tabs .....	312
19.5.2. Message Property Toolbar .....	313
19.5.3. Property Fields For Message .....	314
20. ArgoUML Activity Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
20.1. Introduction .....	317
20.1.1. Limitations Concerning Activity Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	318
20.2. Action State .....	318
20.2.1. Action State Details Tabs .....	319
20.2.2. Action State Property ToolBar .....	320
20.2.3. Property fields for action state .....	320
20.3. Action .....	322
20.4. Transition .....	322
20.5. Call Event .....	322
20.6. Guard .....	322

---

20.7. Initial State .....	322
20.8. Final State .....	322
20.9. Branch .....	323
20.10. Fork .....	323
20.11. Join .....	323
21. ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference .....	
21.1. Introduction .....	324
21.1.1. Limitations Concerning Deployment Diagrams in ArgoUML .....	325
21.2. Node .....	326
21.2.1. Node Details Tabs .....	326
21.2.2. Node Property Toolbar .....	327
21.2.3. Property Fields For Node .....	327
21.3. Node Instance .....	330
21.3.1. Node Instance Details Tabs .....	330
21.3.2. Node Instance Property Toolbar .....	332
21.3.3. Property Fields For Node Instance .....	332
21.4. Component .....	333
21.4.1. Component Details Tabs .....	333
21.4.2. Component Property Toolbar .....	334
21.4.3. Property Fields For Component .....	335
21.5. Component Instance .....	337
21.5.1. Component Instance Details Tabs .....	337
21.5.2. Component Instance Property Toolbar .....	338
21.5.3. Property Fields For Component Instance .....	339
21.6. Dependency .....	340
21.7. Class .....	340
21.8. Interface .....	340
21.9. Association .....	340
21.10. Object .....	340
21.11. Link .....	340
22. ArgoUML Built In DataTypes, Classes, Interfaces and Stereotypes .....	
22.1. Introduction .....	341
22.1.1. Package Structure .....	341
22.2. Built In Datatypes .....	342
22.3. Built In Classes .....	342
22.3.1. Built In Classes From java.lang .....	343
22.3.2. Built In Classes From java.math .....	343
22.3.3. Built In Classes From java.net .....	343
22.3.4. Built In Classes From java.util .....	343
22.4. Built In Interfaces .....	344
22.5. Built In Stereotypes .....	344

# Chapter 7. User Interface Reference



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

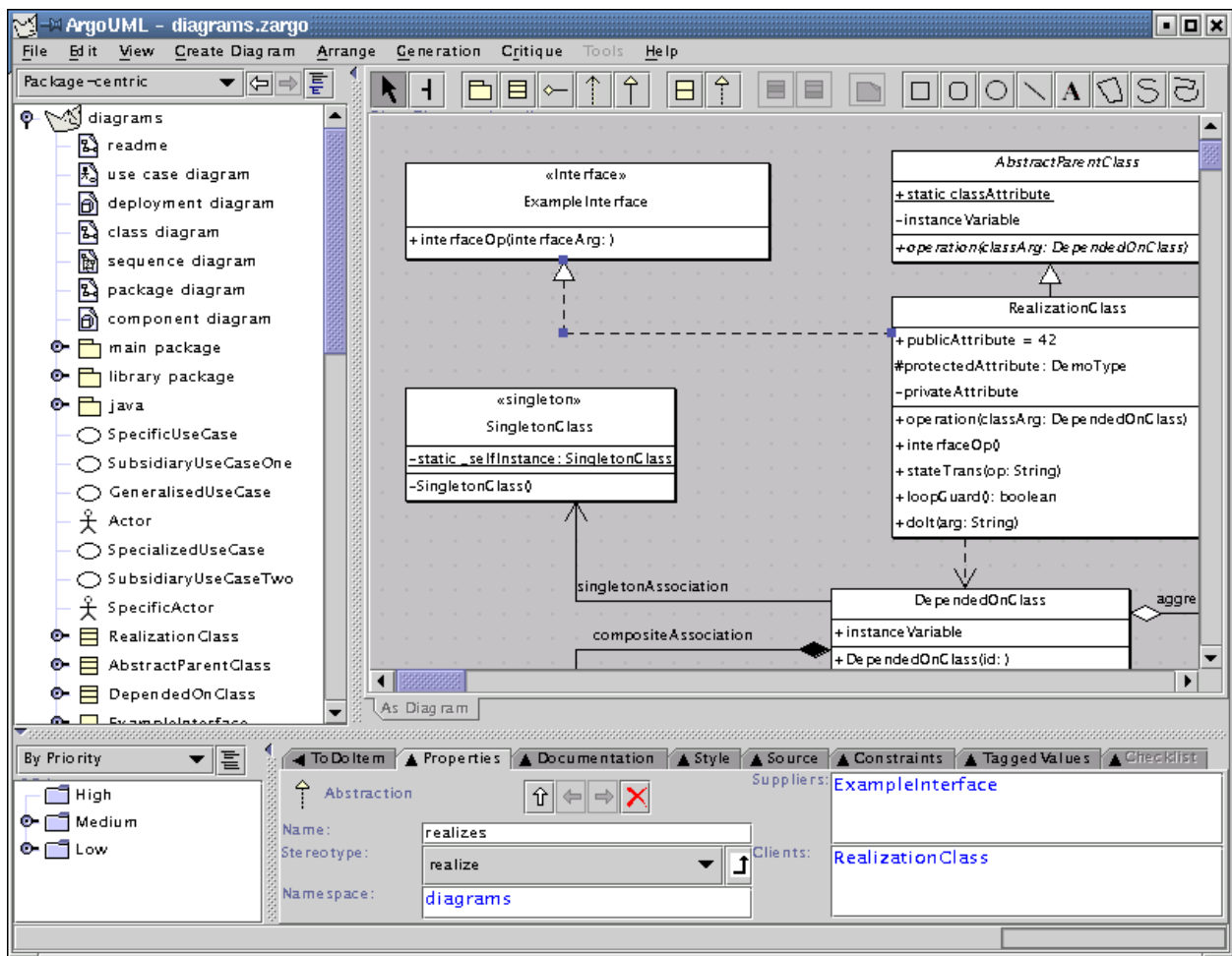
## 7.1. Introduction

This chapter describes the overall behavior of the user interface. Description of the various component parts—the menu bar, panes and various diagrams—is in separate chapters.

## 7.2. Overview of the Window

Figure 7.1 shows the main ArgoUML window.

Figure 7.1. Overview of the ArgoUML window



At the top of screen is a *menu bar* described in Chapter 12, *The Menu bar*. The bulk of the window comprises four sub-windows or *panes*. Clockwise from top left these are the *explorer* (see Chapter 8, *The Explorer*), *editing pane* (see Chapter 9, *The Editing Pane*), *details pane* (see Chapter 10, *The Details Pane*) and *to-do pane* (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*). At the top of the editing pane is a *tool bar*. An overview of the panes is given in Section 7.5, “General Information About Panes”. Finally at the bottom of the window is a *status bar* described in Section 7.6, “The status bar”.

## 7.3. UML Diagram Types supported by ArgoUML

The UML standard specifies eight principle diagrams, all of which are supported by ArgoUML.

- *Use case diagram*. Used to capture and analyse the requirements for any OOA&D project. See Chapter 15, *ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the ArgoUML use case diagram and the artifacts it supports.
- *Class diagram*. This diagram captures the static structure of the system being designed, showing the classes, interfaces and datatypes and how they are related. Variants of this diagram are used to show package structures within a system (the *package diagram*) and the relationships between particular instances (the *object diagram*).

The ArgoUML class diagram provides support for class and package diagrams. See Chapter 16, *ArgoUML Class Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the artifacts it supports. The current implementation has no support for object diagrams.

- *Behavior diagrams*. There are four such diagrams (or strictly speaking, five, since the use case diagram is a type of behavior diagram), which show the dynamic behavior of the system at all levels.
  - *State diagram*. Used to show the dynamic behavior of a single object (class instance). This diagram is of particular use in systems using complex communication protocols, such as in telecommunications. See Chapter 18, *ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the ArgoUML state diagram and the artifacts it supports.
  - *Activity diagram*. Used to show the dynamic behavior of groups of objects (class instance). This diagram is an alternative to the state diagram, and is better suited to systems with a great deal of user interaction. See Chapter 20, *ArgoUML Activity Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the ArgoUML activity diagram and the artifacts it supports.
  - *Interaction diagrams*. There are two diagrams in this category, used to show the dynamic interaction between objects (class instances) in the system.
    - *Sequence diagram*. Shows the interactions (typically messages or procedure calls) between instances of classes (objects) and actors against a timeline. Particularly useful where the timing relationships between interactions are important. See Chapter 17, *ArgoUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the ArgoUML sequence diagram and the artifacts it supports.
    - *Collaboration diagram*. Shows the interactions (typically messages or procedure calls) between instances of classes (objects) and actors against the structural relationships between those instances. Particularly useful where it is useful to relate interactions to the static structure of the system. See Chapter 19, *ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the ArgoUML collaboration diagram and the artifacts it supports.
- *Implementation diagrams*. UML defines two implementation diagrams to show the relationship between the software components that make up a system (the *component diagram*) and the relationship between the software and the hardware on which it is deployed at run-time (the *deployment diagram*).

The ArgoUML deployment diagram provides support for both component and deployment diagrams. See Chapter 21, *ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference* for details of the diagram and the artifacts it supports.

There are some artifacts that are common to all diagrams. These are described in a separate chapter (see Chapter 14, *ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference*).

## 7.4. General Mouse Behavior in ArgoUML

Mouse behavior that is specific to the various panes of ArgoUML (see Section 7.5, “General Information About Panes#) or the menu bar, is discussed in the chapters covering those panes and the menu bar. In this section we cover behavior that is general across all of ArgoUML.

In a number of places in ArgoUML text may be directly edited (for example the constraint editor—see Section 10.8.1, “The Constraint Editor#). The behavior of the mouse when handling text is discussed in the sections that follow.

### 7.4.1. Mouse Button Terminology

ArgoUML assumes a two button mouse. We will refer to the buttons as “button 1# and “button 2#. Button 1 is the leftmost button on a right-handed mouse, and sometimes referred to as the *select* button. Button 2 is the rightmost button on a right-handed mouse, and is sometimes referred to as the *adjust* button.

A single depress and release of a mouse button while the mouse is referred to as a *click*. Two clicks in quick succession is referred to as a *double click*. Moving the mouse while holding a button down is referred to as *button motion* with the starting point being at *button down* and the end point at *button up*.

### 7.4.2. Button 1 Click

This action is generally used to select an item for subsequent operations. If the item is an artifact in the explorer or the editing pane it will be highlighted.

#### 7.4.2.1. General Behavior When Editing Text

Here button 1 is used to select the point within the text at which operations (text entry and deletion) will take place.

### 7.4.3. Button 1 Double Click

The behavior of button 1 double click varies between panes and is discussed in their chapters.

#### 7.4.3.1. General Behavior When Editing Text

Here button 1 double click is used to select a complete word, or other syntactic unit within the text. Subsequent operations (text entry and deletion) will replace the selected text.

### 7.4.4. Button 1 Motion

#### 7.4.4.1. General Behavior When Editing Text

Here button 1 motion is used to select a range of text. Subsequent operations (text entry and deletion) will replace the selected text.

## 7.4.5. Shift and Control with Button 1

### 7.4.5.1. Within Lists

This behavior applies where there is a list of things that may be selected. This includes various dialog boxes, and the to-do pane, where there is a list of to-do items to be selected.

Where selections are to be made, the SHIFT key is used to with button 1 to *extend* from the original button 1 selection to the current position.

Similarly the CONTROL key with button 1 is used to add individual items to the current selection. Where Ctrl-button 1 is used on an item already selected, that item is removed from the selection.



#### Caution

Users of Microsoft Windows will be familiar with the use SHIFT and CONTROL together to add sub-lists to an existing selection. ArgoUML does not support this. SHIFT-CONTROL will behave as CONTROL.

### 7.4.5.2. General Behavior When Editing Text

In a number of places in ArgoUML text may be directly edited (for example the constraint editor—see Section 10.8.1, “The Constraint Editor#). Here SHIFT button 1 is used to select a range of text from the previously selected point. Subsequent operations (text entry and deletion) will replace the selected text.

## 7.4.6. Button 2 Actions

Button 2 actions are all dependent on the pane or menu bar, and discussed in their various chapters.

### 7.4.7. Button 2 Double Click

Button 2 actions are all dependent on the pane or menu bar, and discussed in their various chapters.

### 7.4.8. Button 2 Motion

Button 2 actions are all dependent on the pane or menu bar, and discussed in their various chapters.

## 7.5. General Information About Panes

The four sub-windows of the main ArgoUML window are called *panes*. Clockwise from top left these are the *explorer* (see Chapter 8, *The Explorer*), *editing pane* (see Chapter 9, *The Editing Pane*), *details pane* (see Chapter 10, *The Details Pane*) and *to-do pane* (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*). At the top the editing pane is a *tool bar*.

### 7.5.1. Re-sizing Panes

You can re-size panes by dragging on the divider bars between them. The mouse cursor changes to a vertical or horizontal bar with an arrow at right-angles when over the divider bars.

In addition you will see there are two small left pointing arrows within the vertical divider bars, one at the top of the vertical divider bar between explorer and editing pane and one at the top of the vertical divider bar between to-do pane and details pane. Button 1 click on the first of these will expand the editing pane to the full width of the window, button 1 click on the second will expand the details pane to the full width of the window.



There is also a small downward pointing arrow within the horizontal divider bar at its leftmost end. Clicking on this will expand the explorer and editing panes to the full depth of the window.

By using both the top arrow on the vertical divider and the arrow on the horizontal divider, it is possible to expand the editing pane to use the entire window.

## 7.5.2. Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously

ArgoUML provides the ability to spawn copies of key windows. This is possible for the editing pane and for the tabs of the details pane. These can then be manipulated as separate windows and placed as desired on the screen.

This is achieved through use of button 1 double click as described in sections Section 9.2, “Mouse Behavior in the Editing Pane# and Section 10.2, “Mouse Behavior in the Details Pane#.



### Note

There is no equivalent function for the explorer or to-do panes.

## 7.5.3. Reducing the Number of Panes Visible

This function is not implemented directly. However you can spawn a pane (see Section 7.5.2, “Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously#) and maximize this to be the whole window, which achieves the same thing.

## 7.6. The status bar

The status bar is at the very bottom of the ArgoUML window and is used to display short advisory messages. In general such messages are self explanatory. It is also used for debugging messages for the system in development—these messages can be ignored.

---

# Chapter 8. The Explorer

The Explorer was previously called Navigation Pane/Tree or sometimes Navigator Pane/Tree.



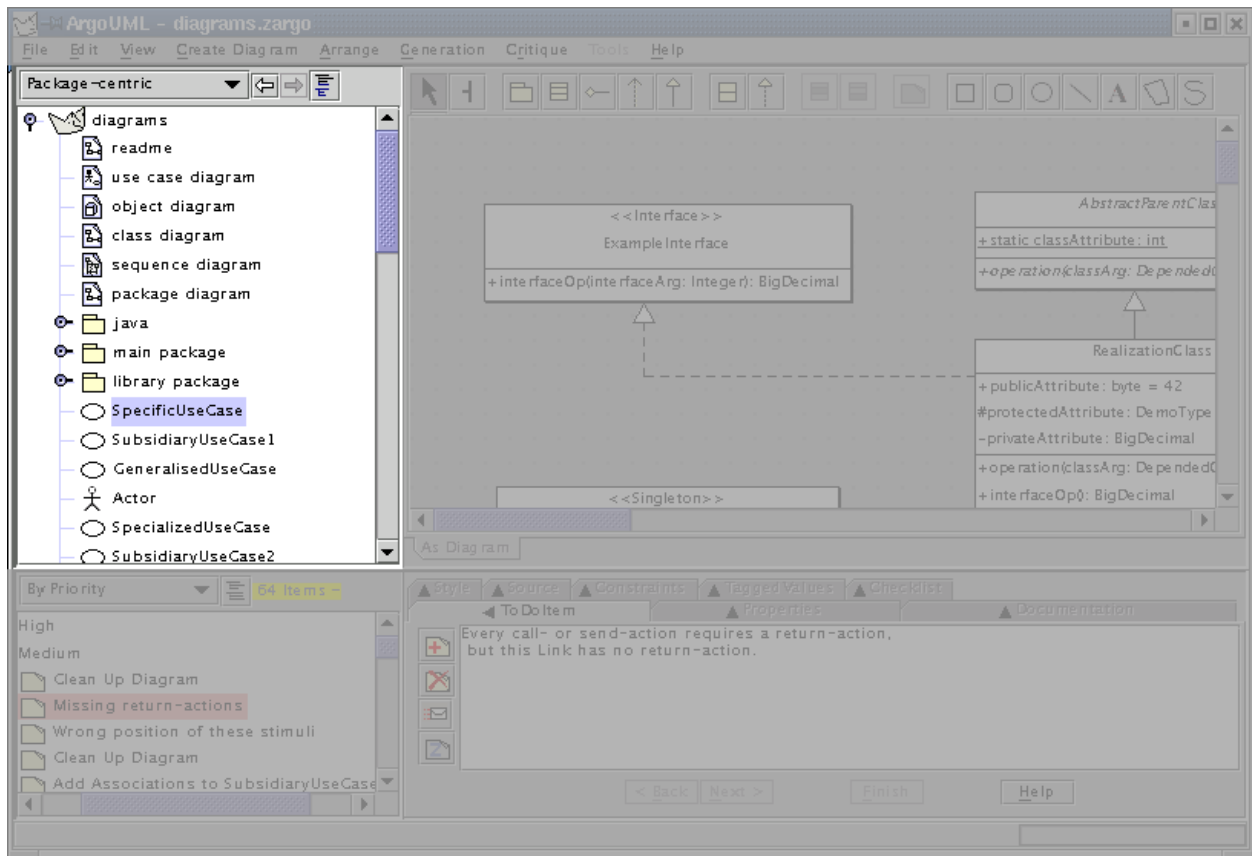
## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 8.1. Introduction

Figure 8.1 shows the ArgoUML window, with the explorer highlighted.

**Figure 8.1. Overview of the explorer**





The explorer allows the user to view the structure of the model from a number of predefined perspectives. It also allows the user to define their own perspectives for custom exploring of the model.

An important feature, related to the cognitive psychology ideas behind ArgoUML is that not all artifacts are necessarily shown in all perspectives. Rather, the perspectives are used to implement hiding of uninteresting parts of the model.

## 8.2. Mouse Behavior in the Explorer

Behavior of the mouse in general, and the naming of the buttons is covered in the chapter on the overall user interface (see Chapter 7, *User Interface Reference*).

### 8.2.1. Button 1 Click

Within the hierarchical display, elements which have sub-hierarchies are indicated by  when the hierarchy is hidden and  when the hierarchy is open.

Button 1 click over the name of any diagram artifact will cause the diagram to be selected and displayed in the editing pane. Its details will also be displayed in the details pane.

Button 1 click over the name of any artifact other than a diagram in the main area of the explorer will cause it to be selected, and its details shown in the details pane. If the artifact is part of a diagram currently displayed in the editing pane, it will be highlighted there.



#### Note

If the artifact is part of a diagram other than that currently displayed in the Editing Pane, there will be *no* change of diagram in the Editing Pane.

Where button 2 click has been used to bring up a context sensitive pop-up menu (see below), button 1 click is used to select the menu entry required. button 1 click outside the menu area will remove it.

### 8.2.2. Button 1 Double Click

This has no effect other than that of button 1 single click.

### 8.2.3. Button 2 Actions

When used over text items in the the explorer, this will display a context dependent pop-up menu. Menu entries are highlighted (but not selected) and sub-menus exposed by subsequent mouse motion (without any buttons). Menu entry selection is with button 1

If the artifact generating the menu has not yet been selected it will also be selected.

### 8.2.4. Button 2 Double Click

This has no effect other than that of button 2 single click.

## 8.3. Perspective Selection

The artifacts in the ArgoUML model may be ordered from a number of perspectives. This drop-down allows selection of the perspective to be used in the explorer.



#### Note

Within the hierarchy, there is no particular ordering of artifacts at a particular level. They tend to be in order of creation. This is a known limitation of the current release of ArgoUML.

- **Package-centric** (the default). The exploring hierarchy is organized by package hierarchy. The top level shows the model. Under this are all the top level packages in the model and all the artifacts that are directly in the namespace of the model.

Beneath each package are all the artifacts that sit within the namespace of that package, including any further sub-packages (which in turn have their own sub-hierarchies).

- **Diagram-centric**. In this view the top level comprises all the diagrams in the model. Beneath each diagram is a flat listing of all the artifacts on the diagram. Artifacts that have sub-artifacts that do not appear on the diagram have their own hierarchy (for example attributes and operations of classes).
- **Inheritance-centric**. In this view the top level shows the model. Beneath this are all artifacts that have no generalization in the model. Those artifacts that have specializations have a sub-hierarchy showing the specializations.
- **Class Associations**. In this view the top level shows the model. Beneath this are all diagrams and all classes. All classes that have associations have a hierarchy tracking through the associated classes.
- **Navigable Associations**. This is identical to the Class Associations ordering, but includes only navigable associations.
- **Association-centric**. In this view the top level shows the model. Beneath this are all diagrams and all associations. All associations then have a sub-hierarchy listing the classes they connect. Where classes have associated state diagrams these are shown beneath the class.
- **State-centric**. In this view the top level shows all the state machines and all activity graphics associated with classes. The state machine for *Class* is named *ClassStateMachine* and the activity graph for *Class* is named *ClassActivityGraph*.

Beneath each state machine is a hierarchy showing the state diagram and all of the states. Beneath each state is a list of the transitions in and out of the state.

Beneath each activity graph is a hierarchy showing the activity diagram and all of the action states. Beneath each action state is a list of the transitions in and out of the action state.

- **Transitions-centric**. This is very similar to *State-centric* view, but under each state machine is listed the diagrams and all transitions on the diagram, with states being shown as sub-hierarchies under their connected transitions.

Similarly under each activity graph is listed the diagrams and all transitions on the diagram, with action states being shown as sub-hierarchies under their connected transitions.

- **Transitions-paths**. This is similar to *State-centric* view. However under each state machine is shown the state diagram and the initial state. Under the initial state is a hierarchy showing the states to which it has transitions, and so on for each of those states. A similar structure is used for activity diagrams.
- **Collaboration-centric**. This should show all collaborations in the view with artifacts in hierarchies under their collaborations.



## Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML this view is broken, and will display nothing.

- **Dependency-centric**. In this view the top level shows the model. Beneath this are all diagrams and top level artifacts. A hierarchy is shown for any dependency beneath any top level artifact.





## Caution

Dependencies include realizations and implicit dependencies such as inner classes and state machines on their owning classes.

When examining older ArgoUML models, you may find some dependencies stereotyped as «extend» or «include», since they were used (incorrectly) to depict extend and include relationships on use case diagrams. If such dependencies are seen, they should be replaced by proper extend and include relationships, which are now supported on the use case diagram.

## 8.4. Navigating Backward and Forward

Two buttons are provided allowing the user to navigate back and forward through diagrams in the model.

-  **Navigate Back.** ArgoUML keeps a record of the diagrams that you have been viewing while navigating the model. This button moves you back to the previous one viewed. If there are no more previous diagrams, the button is grayed out.
-  **Navigate Forward.** ArgoUML keeps a record of the diagrams that you have been viewing while navigating the model. This button moves you forward to the next one viewed (after you have used the Navigate Back button to move back). If there are no more next diagrams, the button is grayed out.




### Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML there is believed to be a problem, where the same diagram appears several times in a row so that Navigate Back/Forward does not appear to work.

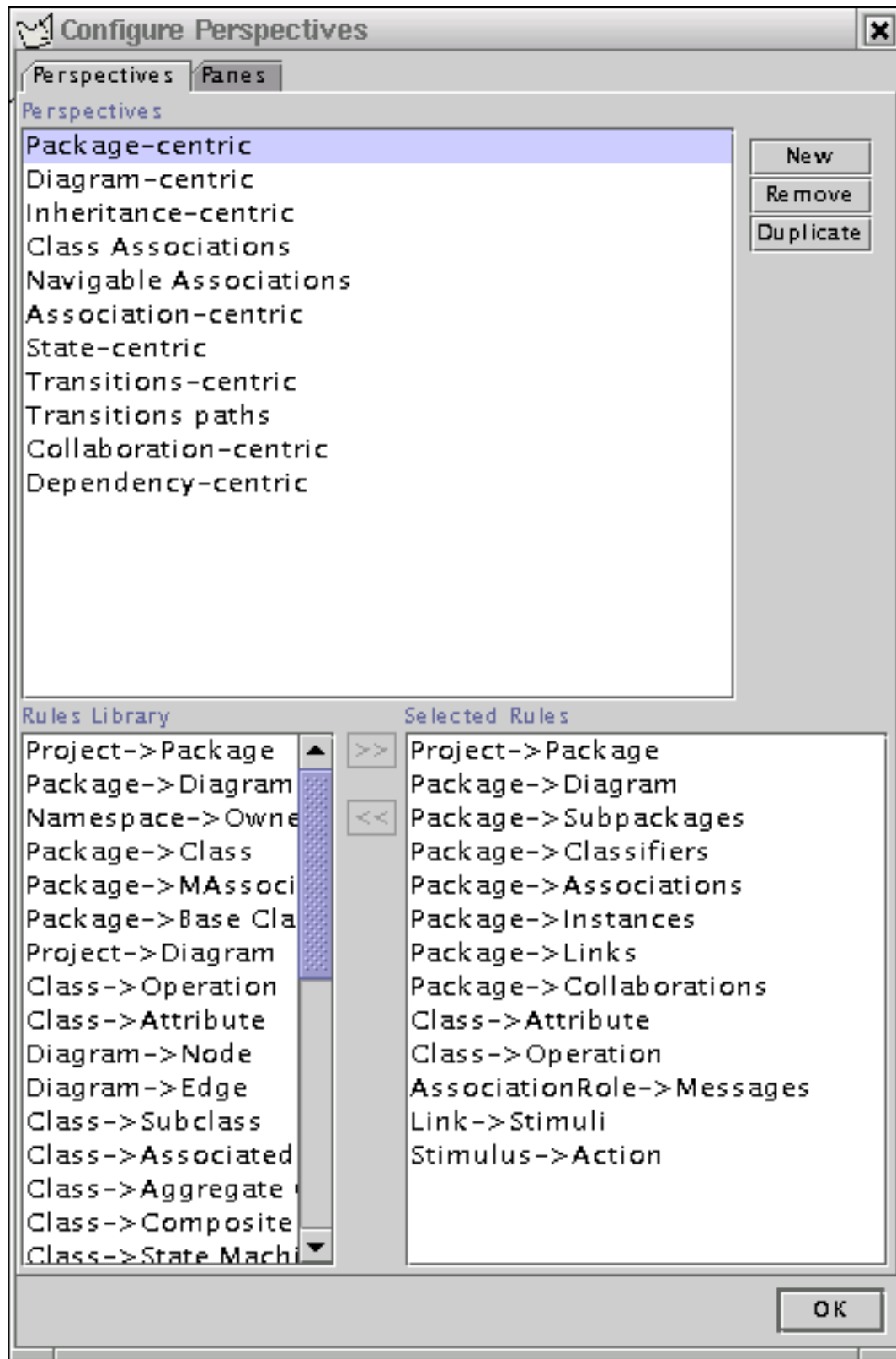
## 8.5. Configuring Perspectives

The explorer is designed to be user configurable, to allow the designer to view in his or her preferred way.

### 8.5.1. Perspectives Tag

button 1 click on the NavConfig icon () brings up the explorer perspectives dialog (see Figure 8.2).

**Figure 8.2. Explorer perspectives dialog box**



The dialog box has at the top two tabs, labeled `Perspectives` and `Panes`. The first of these is the default, but can

be selected explicitly by button 1 click on the tab.

The top half of the dialog contains a text area with a list of all the currently defined perspectives and to the right three buttons stacked vertically. Button 1 click can be used to select a perspective, with CONTROL and SHIFT keys used for multiple perspectives.

- **New.** This creates a new perspective from scratch with no rules selected.
- **Remove.** This removes the selected perspective(s).
- **Duplicate.** This should copy the selected perspective(s) so it/they can be used as the basis of a new perspective.



### Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML this function, although not grayed out, has no effect.

The lower half of the dialog contains two text areas. The one on the left, labeled `Rules Library` contains possible expansion rules to be expanded in turn to create the hierarchy. The one on the right contains the actual rules chosen for the hierarchy.

Separating the two areas are buttons labeled `>>` and `<<`. The first of these transfers rules selected on the left to the text area on the right—i.e. it adds rules to the perspective. The second transfers rules selected on the right to the text area on the left—i.e. it removes rules from the perspective.

The rules are applied in turn to the overall project (UML model) to create the top level list. They are then reapplied in turn to each of the elements in the top level list to create the next level hierarchy, and so on until no further expansion is possible.


At the very bottom right is a button labeled `OK` to indicate that all changes are complete. button 1 click on this button will close the dialog window.



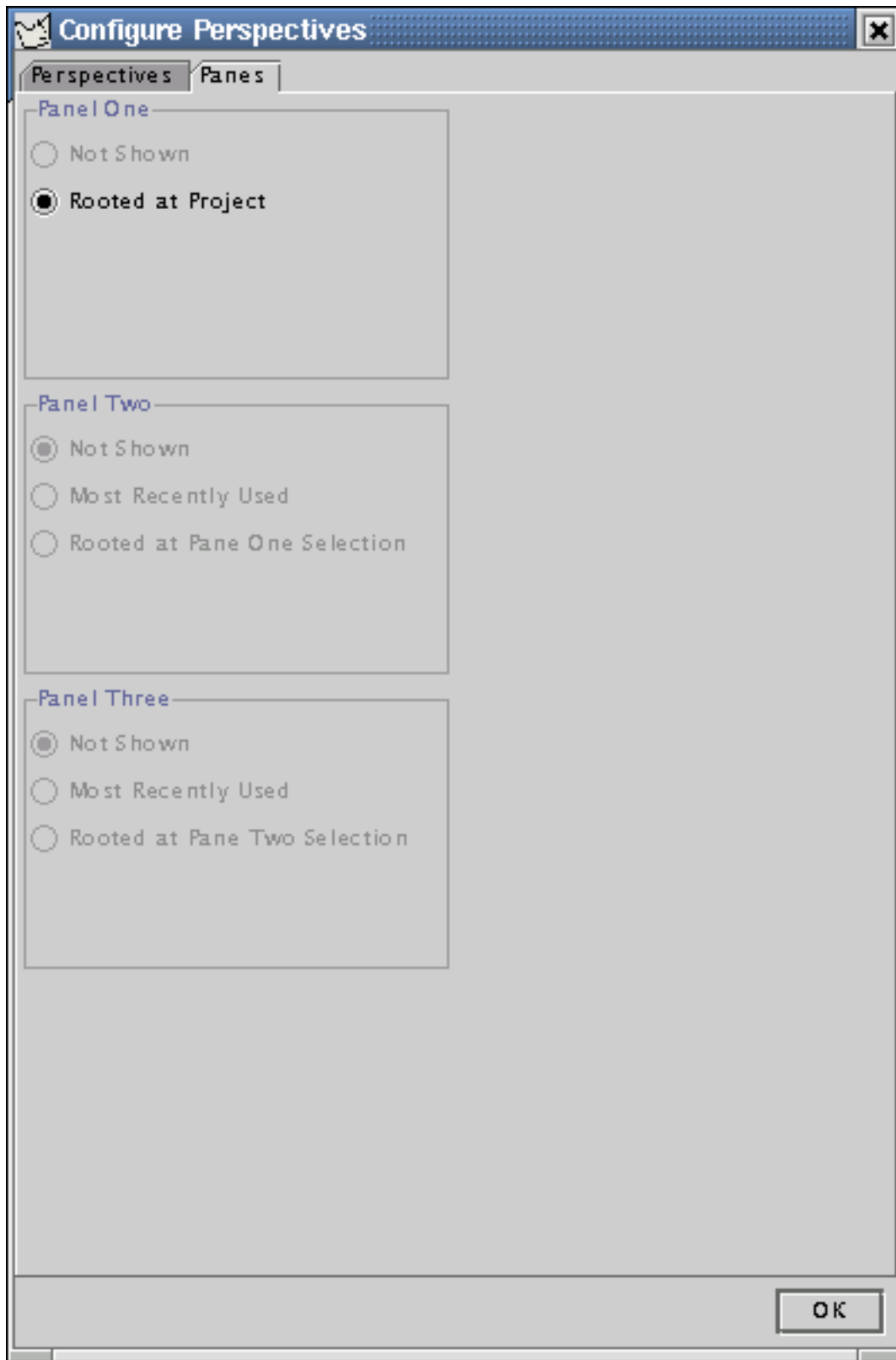
### Note

There is no `Cancel` button, because all changes take immediate effect.

## 8.5.2. Panes Tag

This dialog is obtained by using button 1 to select the `Panes` tab after button 1 click on the NavConfig icon () has brought up the explorer perspectives dialog (see Figure 8.3).

**Figure 8.3. explorers dialog box**



The explorer was conceived as being able to offer multiple views simultaneously, with up to three panels of hierar-



chy. This dialog offers control of these panels, with an option to show or not show each panel, and the option of the second and third panels to be rooted at the selection on the previous panel, or to show the previously used hierarchy.



### Caution

This functionality is not yet implemented in ArgoUML. Only the first panel is ever shown, which is always rooted at project. All other options are grayed out and unavailable.

When using the explorer, it is worth bearing in mind that this is a useful visualization of the model, it is not *solely* for navigation and selection. It is also useful for users to easily (meaning a few mouse clicks without having to arrange a diagram) visualize the model structured according to some perspective. For example, show me the state nesting, or show me the class inheritance tree, or show me the package nesting, or show me the list of actors.

The idea with the second and third nav tree panes, is that sometimes it is easier to explore the tree to a certain level in one tree and then continue expanding in a second tree. Since each tree will not be so deep, it will look more like a list.

For example, look at the way javadocs are viewed with frames: the packages are selected from one list, and interfaces, classes, and exceptions in that package are shown in a second pane. In the case of javadocs, the second pane has a tree with three roots that are always expanded, but it is visually presented as three lists with three headers.

The other suggested use of a second or third nav panel is to list recently visited model elements. This is similar to the recently visited files listed on the `File` menu of most applications, but for model elements rather than files.

The motivation is the fact that designers frequently “interrupt# themselves: they are thinking of working on one part of the design, and then they make a decision that needs a change in some other part, and then that has an implication on some other part, and... and... and... the designer forgets what it was they were originally trying to accomplish. They need to “pop their mental stack# to come back to finish what they started. If they fail to do that, they leave half-finished fragments all over the design which always seem to come out as soon as it is presented to someone else.

A recently visited list should be LIFO (stack) ordered, or FIFO (queue) ordered. The goal would be to help designers come back to finish what they were doing, or simply to help them switch between two or three related parts of the design. The `Navigate Back` and `Navigate Forward` buttons in the explorer serve the same basic purpose and use a lot less screen space.

ArgoUML's tear-off tabs (see Section 7.5.2, “Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously# also help with alternating between views, but sometimes users don't want to work with so many separate windows.

This is the theory that motivates the idea of multiple nav panes. For more information see Jason Robbins' PhD dissertation [http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/) [http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\_dissertation/]. One practical usability concern is available screen space and another is visual complexity. For this reason the multiple panes have yet to be implemented in ArgoUML while more pressing issues are addressed.

## 8.6. Context Sensitive Menu

Button 2 Click over any selected artifact in the main area of the explorer will cause a pop-up menu to appear.

### 8.6.1. Properties Pop-Up

This entry on the pop-up menu causes the properties tab of the selected artifact or diagram to be displayed in the details pane.

### 8.6.2. Add to Diagram

This entry on the pop-up menu appears for any artifact that could be added to a diagram in the editing pane. This

could be the diagram currently displayed in editing pane, or it could be a diagram in a “spawned# window (see Section 9.2.2, “Button 1 Double Click# for an explanation of how to do this).

The item can be placed in a diagram by moving the cursor to the editing pane or a spawned editing pane window (where it will appear as a cross) and clicking button 1.



### Caution

This menu entry appears and is not grayed out, even for some artifacts that can not be placed on the currently selected diagram in the editing pane.

This is because there may be separate spawned editing pane windows on which the artifact can validly be placed. ArgoUML cannot track which windows are available, and can only know if an artifact can be validly placed, until a window is selected with the cursor *after* the `Add to Diagram` is chosen.

The only way to find out if an artifact can be placed in a particular window is to try the operation and see if the artifact is placed.



### Caution

A separate known limitation is that the current release of ArgoUML will not let you place more than one copy of any particular artifact on a diagram.

## 8.6.3. Delete From Model

This entry on the pop-up menu appears for any artifact that could be deleted from the model.



### Warning

This deletes the artifact from the model completely, not just from the diagram. To remove the artifact just from the diagram, use the edit menu (see Section 12.4.7, “Remove From Diagram#).



### Caution

You cannot delete a diagram from the model. This function will just delete all the items on the diagram.

The only way to delete a diagram is to remove it from the saved project file (a project file with the suffix `.zargo` is just a ZIP archive of all the files that describe the project. There is one `.pgml` file for each diagram that must be removed from the archive to delete the diagram. Use this technique with caution!

# Chapter 9. The Editing Pane



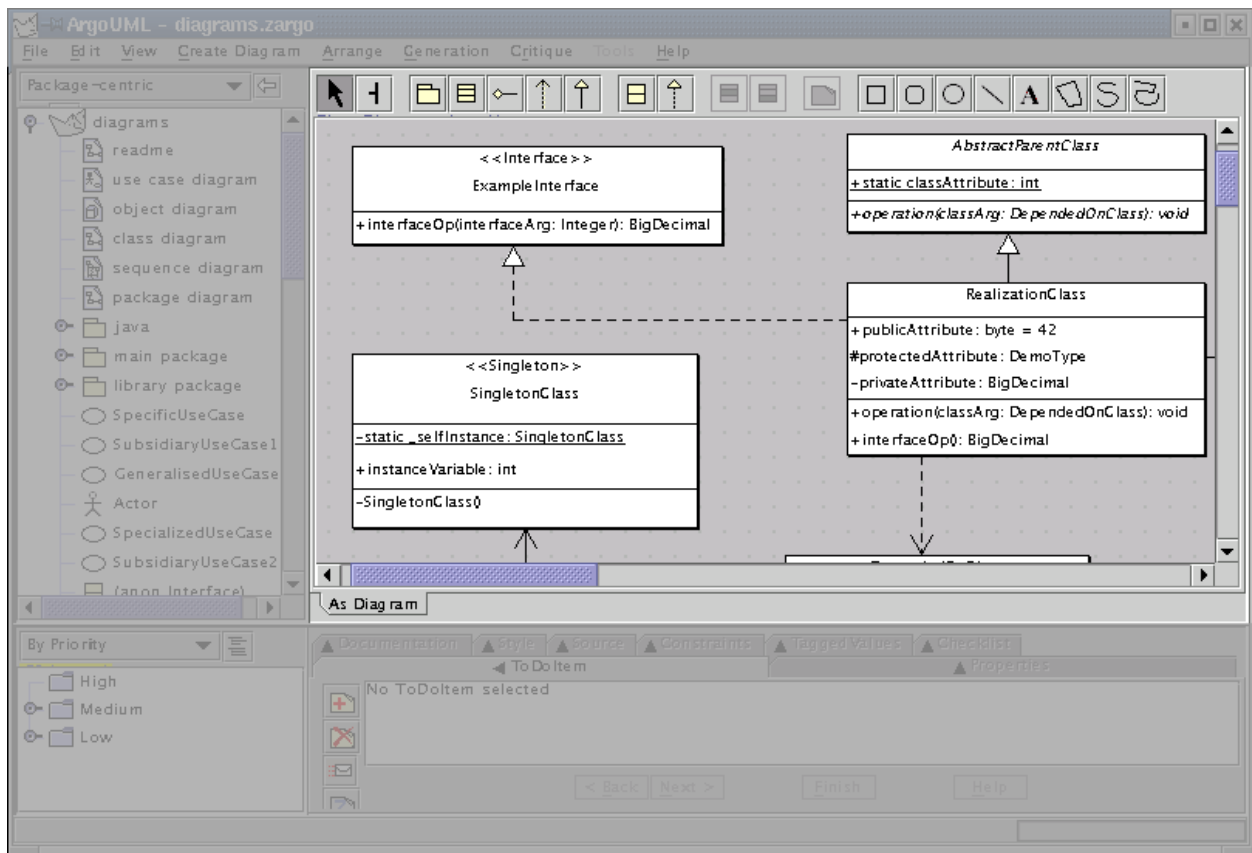
## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 9.1. Introduction

Figure 9.1 shows the ArgoUML window with the editing pane highlighted.

**Figure 9.1. Overview of the editing pane**



This is where all the diagrams are drawn. In earlier versions of ArgoUML this pane went under a variety of names. You may encounter “drawing pane#”, “diagram pane#” or “multi-editor pane#” in other documentation that is still being updated.

The pane has a tool bar at the top, and a single tab labeled `As Diagram` at the bottom. So long as your window is big enough, you will see the name of the diagram in the top right corner at the end of the tool bar.

## 9.2. Mouse Behavior in the Editing Pane

Behavior of the mouse in general, and the naming of the buttons is covered in the chapter on the overall user interface (see Chapter 7, *User Interface Reference*).

### 9.2.1. Button 1 Click

In the tool bar of the editing pane, button 1 click is used to select the next tool for adding artifacts to the diagram (but only once—see double clicking for adding multiple artifacts). Adding to the diagram is achieved by moving the mouse to the editing area and clicking again.

In the main editing area button 1 click is used to select an individual artifact.

Where button 2 click has been used to bring up a context sensitive pop-up menu (see below), button 1 click is used to select the menu entry required. The pop-up menu will be removed by any button 1 click outside of the menu area."

There are various more detailed effects, which are discussed under the descriptions of the various tools (see Section 9.3, "The tool bar#).

### 9.2.2. Button 1 Double Click

When used on the tool bar with a tool to add an artifact, the selected artifact will be added multiple times to the drawing area, once for each further button click, until the tool is again selected or another tool chosen.

When used within the drawing area on an artifact that has sub-components, double click will select the sub-component (creating it if necessary).

For example double clicking over an operation compartment of a class will select the operation. Or create one if there is not one there.

A special use is with package artifacts on the class diagram. A double click on a package will navigate to the class diagram associated with a package (the first created if there is more than one), or will offer to create one for you if there is none.

You can "spawn# a copy of the editing pane by double-clicking on the `As Diagram` tab at the bottom of the pane. It will then show as an individual window and you can put it where you will on the screen.

### 9.2.3. Button 1 Motion

When adding an artifact using the toolbar, button 1 motion can generally be used to define the size of the new artifact. Its dimensions (line ends, diagonal corners of a rectangular artifact etc) are defined by button 1 down and button 1 up.

Where the artifact being added is some form of connector its termination point is shown with button 1 up over the terminating artifact. button 1 click may be used in the space between artifacts to create articulation points in the connector. This is particularly useful where connectors must loopback on themselves.

Over graphical artifacts button 1 motion will move the artifact to a new position. Graphical artifacts that are selected show handles, and these can be used for re-sizing.

Some artifacts (e.g. actor, class) show special handles at the sides, top and bottom, which can be dragged to form types of relationship with other artifacts.

Where the artifact is some form of connector between other items, button 1 motion other than at a handle will cause a new handle to be created, allowing the connector to be articulated at that point. Such new handles can be removed by moving them to the end of the connector.

There are various more detailed effects, which are discussed under the descriptions of the various tools (see Section 9.3, “The tool bar”).

## 9.2.4. Shift and Control with Button 1

Where selections are to be made, the SHIFT key is used to with button 1 to *add* unselected artifacts to the current selection. Where an artifact is already selected, it is removed from the current selection.

Using the CONTROL key invokes the broom tool, causing the selected artifacts (and any others swept up with them) to be moved with the broom tool (see Section 9.3.1, “Layout Tools”).

## 9.2.5. Button 2 Actions

When used over artifacts in the the editing pane, this will display a context dependent pop-up menu. Menu entries are highlighted (but not selected) and sub-menus exposed by subsequent mouse motion (without any buttons). Menu entry selection is with button 1. See Section 9.7, “Pop-Up Menus” for details of the specific pop-up menus.

If the artifact generating the menu has not yet been selected it will also be selected.


## 9.2.6. Button 2 Double Click

This has no effect other than that of button 2 single click.

## 9.2.7. Button 2 Motion

This is used to select items in a context sensitive menu popped up by use of button 2 click.

# 9.3. The tool bar


The toolbar at the top of the editing pane provides the main functions of the pane. The default tool is the *Select* tool (  ). In general button 1 on any tool click selects a tool for one use, before reverting to the default tool, button 1 double click selects a tool for repeat use until another tool is selected.

The tools fall into four categories.


- *Layout tools*. Provide assistance in laying out artifacts on the diagram.
- *Annotation tools*. Used to annotate artifacts on the diagram.
- *Drawing tools*. Used to add general graphic artifacts to diagrams.
- *Diagram specific tools*. Used to add UML artifacts specific to a particular diagram type to the diagram.

## 9.3.1. Layout Tools

Two tools are provided in all diagrams in this category.

-  *Select*. This tool provides for general selection of artifacts on the diagram. Button 1 click will select an artifact. SHIFT with button 1 can be used to select (or deselect multiple artifacts. Button 1 motion will move selected 2D items or add and move a new control point on a link. Button 1 motion on a selected component's con-

trol point will stretch that component's shape.

-  *Broom*. Button 1 motion with this tool provide a “broom# which will sweep all artifacts along. This is very shortcut way of lining things up.


Broom can also be invoked by using `CONTROL` with button 1 motion when the `Select` tool is in use.



### Tip

Additional control of artifact layout is provided through the `Arrange` menu (see Section 12.7, “The Arrange Menu#).

## 9.3.2. Annotation Tools

Only one annotation tool is provide, `Note` (). This is used to add a note to a selected UML artifact.



### Caution

Unlike most other tools you use the `Select` tool to select an artifact, and then button 1 click on `Note` to create the note.

The note is created alongside the selected artifact, with the default contents `New note`. This text can be selected with button 1 and edited from the keyboard.



### Warning

The UML standard allows notes to be attached to any artifact. However in the current version of ArgoUML there is only a partial implementation. `Note` is only provided on class and state diagrams, and can only be attached to classes, interfaces, states and pseudostates.



### Tip

You can add a note also to an object in a deployment diagram by using its context sensitive `Add` pop-up menu (see Section 9.7, “Pop-Up Menus#).



### Tip

If you need to add a note to some other artifact, try using a text box from the graphics drawing tools (see Section 9.3.3, “Drawing Tools#).

## 9.3.3. Drawing Tools

These are a series of tools for providing graphical additions to diagrams. Although they are not UML artifacts, the UML standard provides for such decoration to improve the readability of diagrams.











### Tip

These drawing tools provide a useful way to partially support some of the UML features (such as gen-




eral purpose notes) that are missing from the current release of ArgoUML.





Eight tools are provided. button 1 click on the diagram will place an instance of the graphical item of the same size as the last one placed. The size can be controlled by button 1 motion during placement. One side or end of the element will be at button 1 down, the other side or end at button 1 up. In general after they are placed on the diagram, graphical elements can be moved with the `Select` tool and button 1 and re-sized by button 1 motion on the handles after they have been selected.

-  `Rectangle`. Provides a rectangle.
-  `Rounded Rectangle`. Provides a rectangle with rounded corners. There is no control over the degree of rounding.
-  `Circle`. Provides a circle.
-  `Line`. Provides a line.
-  `Text`. Provides a text box. The text is entered by selecting the box and typing. Text is in blue and centered and after typing, the box will shrink to the size of the text. However it can be re-sized by dragging on the corners.
-  `Polygon`. Provides a polygon. The points of the polygon are selected by button 1 click and the polygon closed with button 1 double click (which will link the final point to the first point).
-  `Spline`. Provide an open spline. The control points of the spline are selected with button 1 and the last point selected with button 1 double click.
-  `Ink`. Provide a polyline. The points are provided by button 1 motion.

### 9.3.4. Use Case Diagram Specific Tools

Seven tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on use case diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on use case diagram artifacts (see Chapter 15, *ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference*).


-  `Actor`. Add an actor to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected actor it displays two handles to left and right which may be dragged to form association relationships.
-  `Use Case`. Add a use case to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected use case it displays two handles to left and right which may be dragged to form association relationships and two handles top and bottom which may be dragged to form generalization and specialization relationships respectively.
-  `Association`. Add an association between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (for the first artifact to the second).

-  **Generalization.** Add a generalization between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the child to the parent).
-  **Extend.** Add an extend relationship between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the extended to the extending use case).
-  **Include.** Add an include relationship between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the including to the included use case).
-  **Add Extension Point.** Add an extension point to a selected use case. The extension point is given the default name `newEP` and location `loc`. Where the extension point compartment is displayed, the extension point may be edited by button 1 double click and using the keyboard, or by selecting with button 1 click (after the use case has been selected) and using the property tab. Otherwise it may be edited through its property tab, selected through the property tab of the owning use case.



### Note

This tool is grayed out except when a use case is selected.

-  **Dependency.** Add a dependency between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the dependent artifact).







### Caution





Older versions of ArgoUML incorrectly used stereotyped dependencies to represent UML `extends` and `includes` relationships. Where these are found they should be replaced by proper `extend` and `include` relationships, which are now supported on the use case diagram.

## 9.3.5. Class Diagram Specific Tools

Nine tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on class diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on class diagram artifacts (see Chapter 16, *ArgoUML Class Diagram Artifact Reference*).

-  **Package.** Add a package to the diagram.
-  **Class.** Add a class to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected class it displays two handles to left and right which may be dragged to form association relationships and two handles top and bottom which may be dragged to form generalization and specialization relationships respectively.
-  **Association.** Add an association between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the first artifact to the second artifact).
-  **Dependency.** Add a dependency between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the dependent artifact).



-  **Generalization.** Add a generalization between two artifacts selected using button 1 (from the child to the parent).
-  **Interface.** Add an interface to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected interface it displays a handle at the bottom which may be dragged to form a realization relationship (the target being the realizing class).
-  **Realization.** Add a realization between a class and an interface selected using button 1 motion (from the realizing class to the realized interface).
-  **Add Attribute.** Add an attribute to the currently selected class. The attribute is given the default name `newAttr` of type `int` and may be edited by button 1 double click and using the keyboard, or by selecting with button 1 click (after the class has been selected) and using the property tab.




### Note

This tool is grayed out except when a class or interface is selected.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this tool is not grayed out for interfaces as it should be (attributes are not permitted for interfaces in the UML 1.3 standard). However the tool has no effect if selected for an interface.

-  **Add Operation.** Add an operation to the currently selected class or interface. The operation is given the default name `newOperation` with no arguments and return type `void` and may be edited by button 1 double click and using the keyboard, or by selecting with button 1 click (after the class has been selected) and using the property tab.






### Note




This tool is grayed out except when a class or interface is selected.

## 9.3.6. Sequence Diagram Specific Tools

Six tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on sequence diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on sequence diagram artifacts (see Chapter 17, *ArgoUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference*).





-  **Object.** Add an object to the diagram.
-  **Stimulus Call.** Add a call stimulus between two objects selected using button 1 motion (from the originating object to the receiving object).
-  **Stimulus Create.** Add a create stimulus between two objects selected using button 1 motion (from the

originating object to the receiving object).

-  **Stimulus Destroy.** Add a destroy stimulus between two objects selected using button 1 motion (from the originating object to the receiving object).
-  **Stimulus Send.** Add a send stimulus between two objects selected using button 1 motion (from the originating object to the receiving object).
-  **Stimulus Return.** Add a return stimulus between two objects selected using button 1 motion (from the originating object to the receiving object).

### 9.3.7. State Diagram Specific Tools



Ten tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on state diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on state diagram artifacts (see Chapter 18, *ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference*).

-  **State.** Add a state to the diagram.
-  **Composite State.** Add a composite state to the diagram. All artifacts that are subsequently placed on the diagram on top of the composite state will form part of that composite state.
-  **Transition.** Add a transition between two states selected using button 1 motion (from the originating state to the receiving state).
-  **Initial.** Add an initial pseudostate to the diagram.



#### Caution


There is nothing to stop you adding more than one initial state to a diagram or composite state. However to do so is meaningless, and one of the critics will complain.

-  **Final State.** Add a final state to the diagram.
-  **Branch.** Add a branch pseudostate to the diagram.



#### Caution


A well formed branch should have one incoming transition and two or more outgoing. ArgoUML does not enforce this, but an ArgoUML critic will complain about any branch that does not follow this rule.

-  **Fork.** Add a fork pseudostate to the diagram.



#### Caution



A well formed fork should have one incoming transition and two or more outgoing. ArgoUML does not enforce this, but an ArgoUML critic will complain about any fork that does not follow this rule.

-  Join. Add a join pseudostate to the diagram.






### Caution

A well formed join should have one outgoing transition and two or more incoming. ArgoUML does not enforce this, but an ArgoUML critic will complain about any join that does not follow this rule.

-  Shallow History. Add a shallow history pseudostate to the diagram.
-  Deep History. Add a deep history pseudostate to the diagram.

## 9.3.8. Collaboration Diagram Specific Tools

Three tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on collaboration diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on collaboration diagram artifacts (see Chapter 19, *ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference*).

-  Classifier Role. Add a classifier role to the diagram.
-  Association Role. Add an association role between two classifier roles selected using button 1 motion (from the originating classifier role to the receiving classifier role).
-  Add Message. Add a message to the selected association role.





### Note


This tool is grayed out except when an association role is selected.

## 9.3.9. Activity Diagram Specific Tools

Seven tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on activity diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on activity diagram artifacts (see Chapter 20, *ArgoUML Activity Diagram Artifact Reference*).

-  Action State. Add an action state to the diagram.
-  Transition. Add a transition between two action states selected using button 1 motion (from the originat-



ing action state to the receiving action state).

-  **Initial.** Add an initial pseudostate to the diagram.



### Caution


There is nothing to stop you adding more than one initial state to a diagram. However to do so is meaningless, and one of the critics will complain.

-  **Final State.** Add a final state to the diagram.
-  **Branch.** Add a branch pseudostate to the diagram.



### Caution


A well formed branch should have one incoming transition and two or more outgoing. ArgoUML does not enforce this, but an ArgoUML critic will complain about any branch that does not follow this rule.

-  **Fork.** Add a fork pseudostate to the diagram.



### Caution

A well formed fork should have one incoming transition and two or more outgoing. ArgoUML does not enforce this, but an ArgoUML critic will complain about any fork that does not follow this rule.

-  **Join.** Add a join pseudostate to the diagram.



### Caution

A well formed join should have one outgoing transition and two or more incoming. ArgoUML does not enforce this, but an ArgoUML critic will complain about any join that does not follow this rule.







## 9.3.10. Deployment Diagram Specific Tools

Ten tools are provided specific to UML artifacts on deployment diagrams. The detailed properties of these artifacts are described in the section on deployment diagram artifacts (see Chapter 21, *ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference*).



### Note


Remember that ArgoUML's deployment diagrams are also used for component diagrams.

-  **Node.** Add a node to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected node it displays four handles to left, right, top and bottom which may be dragged to form association relationships.
-  **Node Instance.** Add a node instance to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected node instance it displays four handles to left, right, top and bottom which may be dragged to form link relationships.
-  **Component.** Add a component to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected component it displays four handles to left, right, top and bottom which may be dragged to form dependency relationships.
-  **Component Instance.** Add a component instance to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected component instance it displays four handles to left, right, top and bottom which may be dragged to form dependency relationships.
-  **Dependency.** Add a dependency between two artifacts selected using button 1 motion (from the dependent artifact).
-  **Class.** Add a class to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected class it displays two handles to left and right which may be dragged to form association relationships.



### Note


Unlike a class diagram, two handles top and bottom which may be dragged to form generalization and specialization relationships are not shown. Such relationships may not be described on a deployment or component diagram.

-  **Interface.** Add an interface to the diagram.



### Caution


In the current release of ArgoUML, when the mouse is over a selected interface it displays a handle at the bottom. This suggests this may be dragged to form a realization relationship as in a class diagram. Such relationships may not be displayed on a deployment or component diagram, and this handle has no effect.


-  **Association.** Add an association between two artifacts (node, component, class or interface) selected using button 1 motion (from the first artifact to the second artifact).



### Caution




The constraint that associations between classes and interfaces must not be navigable *from* the interface still applies on deployment diagrams.

-  **Object.** Add an object to the diagram. For convenience, when the mouse is over a selected object it displays four handles to left, right, top and bottom, which may be dragged to form link relationships.

-  **Link.** Add a link between two artifacts (node instance, component instance or object) selected using button 1 motion.

## 9.4. Clarifiers

A key feature of ArgoUML are the critics, which run in parallel with the main ArgoUML tool. When they find a problem, they typically raise a to-do item, and also highlight the problem on the editing pane. The graphical techniques used for highlighting are called *Clarifiers*

- Note icon () . Displayed at the top left of an artifact indicates a critic of that artifact. Moving the mouse over the icon will pop up the critic headline.
- Colored wavy line () . Used for critics specific to sub-components of graphical artifacts. For example to underline attributes with a problem within a class.
- Solid colored line () . Not seen in ordinary editing, but used when a to-do item is highlighted from the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*) by button 1 double click. The solid line is used to show all the artifacts affected by the critic, for example all stimuli that are out of order.

## 9.5. The Drawing Grid

The editing pane is provided with a background grid which can be set in various styles or turned off altogether through the **Edit** menu (see Section 12.5.6, “Adjust Grid#”).

Whatever grid is actually displayed, placement of items on the diagram is always controlled by the setting for grid snap, which ranges from 4 to 32 pixels (see Section 12.5.7, “Adjust Grid Snap#”).

## 9.6. The Diagram Tab

At the bottom of the editing pane is a small tab labeled as **As Diagram**. The concept is that a UML diagram can be displayed in a number of ways, for example as a graphical diagram or as a table. Each representation would have its own tab and be selected by button 1 click on the tab.

Earlier versions of ArgoUML did implement a tabular representation, but the current release only supports a diagram representation, so this tab is of null function.

In addition you can use button 1 double click on this tab to spawn a copy of the current diagram (see Section 7.5.2, “Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously# for more details).

## 9.7. Pop-Up Menus

Within the editing pane, button 2 click over an artifact will bring up a pop-up menu with up to six main entries, each with a sub-menu.





### 9.7.1. Critiques

This sub-menu gives list of all the critics that have triggered for this artifact. Selection of a menu entry causes that entry to be highlighted in the to-do pane and its detailed explanation to be placed in the **ToDoItem** tab of the details

pane.




## 9.7.2. Ordering

This menu controls the ordering of overlapping artifacts on the diagram. It is equivalent to the `Reorder` sub-menu of the `Arrange` menu (see Section 12.7.3, “The Reorder Sub-Menu#”). There are four entries.

-  **Forward.** The selected artifacts are moved one step forward in the ordering hierarchy with respect to other artifacts they overlap.
-  **Backward.** The selected artifacts are moved one step back in the ordering hierarchy with respect to other artifacts they overlap.
-  **To Front.** The selected artifacts are moved to the front of any other artifacts they overlap.
-  **To Back.** The selected artifacts are moved to the back of any other artifacts they overlap.

## 9.7.3. Add

This sub-menu only appears for artifacts that can have notes attached (class, interface, object, state, pseudostate) or have operations or attributes added (class, interface). There are at most three entries.

-  **Add Attribute.** Only appears where the selected artifact is a class or interface. Adds an attribute to the artifact
-  **Add Operation.** Only appears where the selected artifact is a class or interface. Adds an operation to the artifact
-  **Note.** Attaches a note to the selected artifact.

## 9.7.4. Show

This sub-menu only appears with use case, class or object artifacts. It is used to control whether the extension point compartment is displayed for use cases and whether the attribute and operation compartments are displayed for classes and objects. There are six possible entries, but at most three show at any one time.

- **Hide Extension Point Compartment.** Only appears when the extension point compartment of a use case is displayed. Hides the compartment.
- **Show Extension Point Compartment.** Only appears when the extension point compartment of a use case is hidden. Displays the compartment.
- **Hide All Compartments.** Only appears when both attribute and operation compartments are displayed on a class or object. Hides both compartments.
- **Show All Compartments.** Only appears when both attribute and operation compartments are hidden on a class or object. Displays both compartments.

- **Hide Attribute Compartment.** Only appears when the attribute compartment of a class or object is displayed. Hides the compartment.
- **Show Attribute Compartment.** Only appears when the attribute compartment of a class or object is hidden. Displays the compartment.
- **Hide Operation Compartment.** Only appears when the operation compartment of a class or object is displayed. Hides the compartment.
- **Show Operation Compartment.** Only appears when the operation compartment of a class or object is hidden. Displays the compartment.

## 9.7.5. Modifiers

This sub-menu only appears with class artifacts. It is used to set or clear the values of the various modifiers available.

- **Public.** Set if this class is visible outside its package.
- **Abstract.** Set for an abstract class.
- **Final.** Set for a final class, i.e. one with no subclasses.
- **Root.** Set for a root class, i.e. one with no superclasses.
- **Active.** Set for a class with dynamic behavior.



### Note

This really ought to be set automatically for classes with state machines or activity diagrams.

## 9.7.6. Multiplicity

This sub-menu only appears with association artifacts. It is used to control the multiplicity at the end of the association nearest the mouse click point. There are only four entries, a sub-set of the range of multiplicities that are available through the property sheet of a association end (see Section 15.6, “Association End#”).

- 1
- 0..1
- 1..\*
- 0..\*

## 9.7.7. Aggregation

This sub-menu only appears with association artifacts. It is used to control the aggregation at the end of the association nearest the mouse click point. There are three entries.



- none. Remove any aggregation.
- aggregate. Make this end a shared aggregation (loosely known as an “aggregation#”).
- composite. Make this end a composite aggregation (loosely known as a “composition#”).



### Warning

UML requires that at most one end of an association has any aggregation relationship. The current release of ArgoUML has a known problem where it believes any end whose aggregation has not been explicitly set is in some form of aggregation (although this is not shown on the diagram or property sheet). This will trigger a critic. The solution is to change the aggregation to one of the aggregate forms and then back to none to explicitly set no aggregation.



### Caution

UML requires that an end with a composition relationship must have a multiplicity of 1 (the default).

## 9.7.8. Navigability

This sub-menu only appears with association artifacts. It is used to control the navigability of the association. There are three entries.

- bidirectional. Make the association navigable in both directions.
- <class1> to <class2>. Make the association navigable only from <class1> to <class2>. In other words <class1> can reference <class2> but not the other way round.
- <class2> to <class1>. Make the association navigable only from <class2> to <class1>. In other words <class2> can reference <class1> but not the other way round.



### Note

UML does permit an association to be non-navigable in both directions. If you want this, you will have to set each of the association ends navigation property, reached from the property tab of the association.

This is considered bad design practice (it will trigger a critic in ArgoUML), so is only of theoretical interest.



### Note

UML does not permit navigability from an interface to a class. This drop down is disabled for associations between interfaces and classes.

## 9.7.9. Properties

This entry has no sub-menu. Selecting the entry will cause the property tab for the selected artifact to be displayed in the details pane.

# Chapter 10. The Details Pane



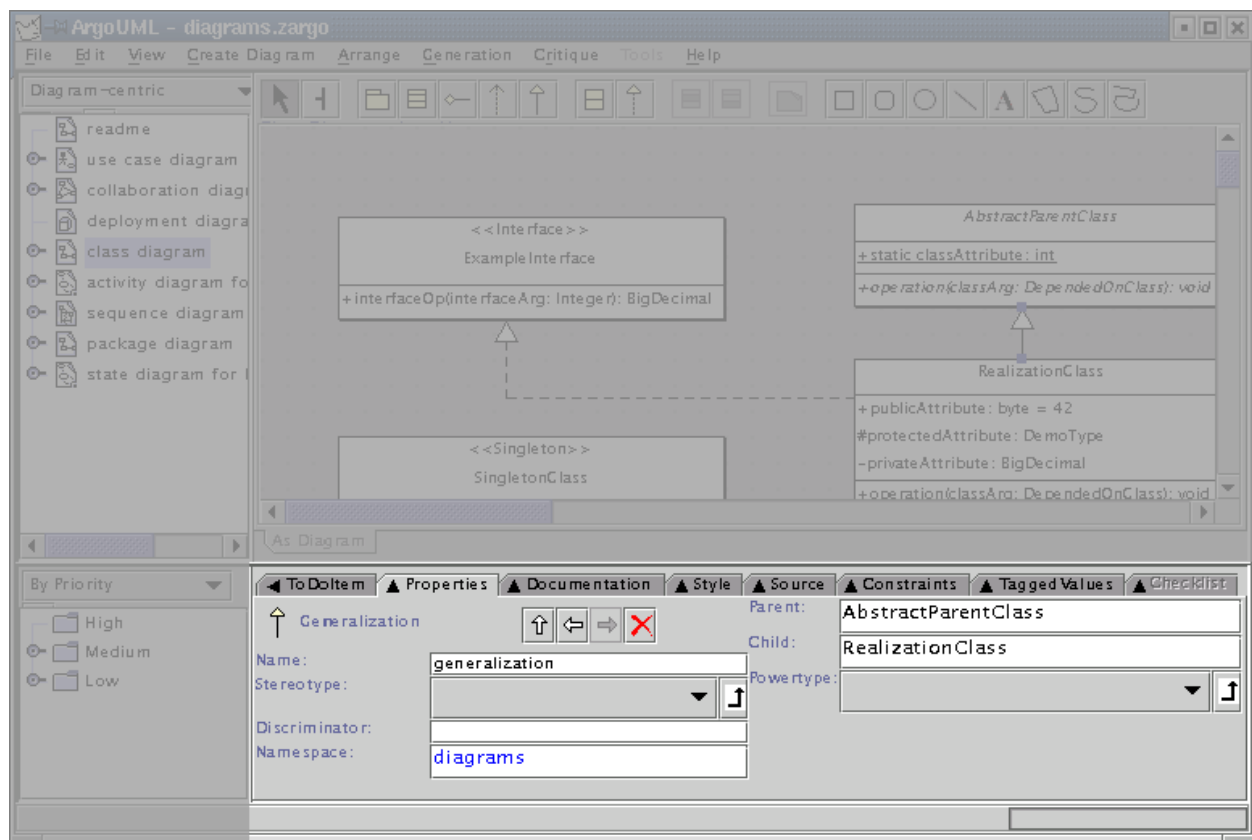
## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 10.1. Introduction

Figure 10.1 shows the ArgoUML window, with the details pane highlighted.

**Figure 10.1. Overview of the details pane**



For any artifact within the system, this pane is where all its associated data is viewed and entered.

The Pane has a series of tabs at the top, which are selected by button 1 click, through the View > Details Tabs menu or through the menu shortcuts. The body of a tab is a menu of items to be checked, selected or entered specific to the particular tab selected.

Of these, the Properties Tab is by far the most complex, with a different presentation for each artifact within the system. The detailed descriptions of the properties tab for each artifact are the subject of separate chapters covering the artifacts that may appear on the various diagrams (see Chapter 14, *ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference*

through Chapter 21, *ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference*).

### 10.1.1. Spawning Details Tabs

Tabs in the details pane may be spawned as separate stand alone windows, by button 1 double click on the tab. See Section 7.5.2, “Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously# for more information.

## 10.2. Mouse Behavior in the Details Pane

Behavior of the mouse in general, and the naming of the buttons is covered in the chapter on the overall user interface (see Chapter 7, *User Interface Reference*).

### 10.2.1. Button 1 Click

This action is generally used to select an item for subsequent operations. For fields of the property tab that are references to other artifacts this will navigate to that artifact.

Where button 2 click has been used to bring up a context sensitive pop-up menu (see below), button 1 click is used to select the menu entry required. button 1 click outside the menu area will remove it.

### 10.2.2. Button 1 Double Click

In general this has no effect other than that of button 1 single click.

However you can “spawn# a copy of any tab by double-clicking on the tab. It will then show as an individual window and you can put it where you will on the screen.

### 10.2.3. Button 2 Actions

When used over text field entries in the the properties tab, this may display a context dependent pop-up menu (depending on the field). Menu entries are highlighted (but not selected) and sub-menus exposed by subsequent mouse motion (without any buttons). Menu entry selection is with button 1

If the entry generating the menu has not yet been highlighted it will also be highlighted.

### 10.2.4. Button 2 Double Click

This has no effect other than that of button 2 single click.

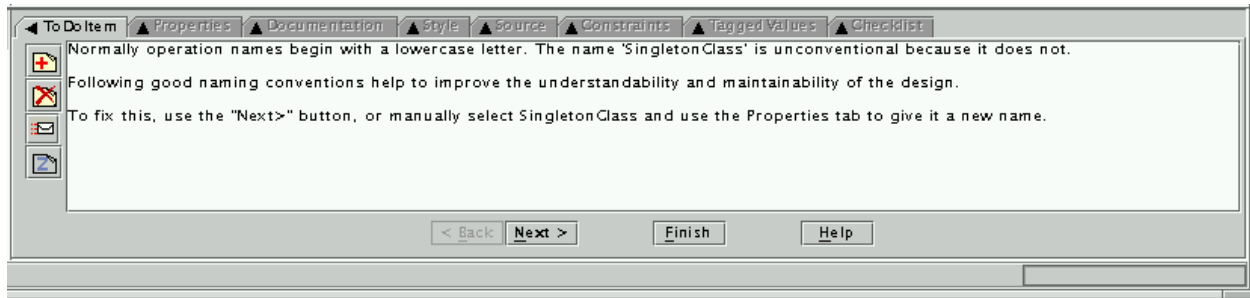
### 10.2.5. Button 2 Motion

This is used to select items in a context sensitive menu popped up by use of button 2 click.


## 10.3. To Do Item Tab

This tab provides control over the various to-do items raised by the ArgoUML critics (discussed in more detail in the section on the Critique menu—see Section 12.9, “The Critique Menu#). Figure 10.2 shows a typical pane. The to-do item is selected with button 1 in the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*) or by using the Critiques context sensitive pop-up menu on the editing pane.

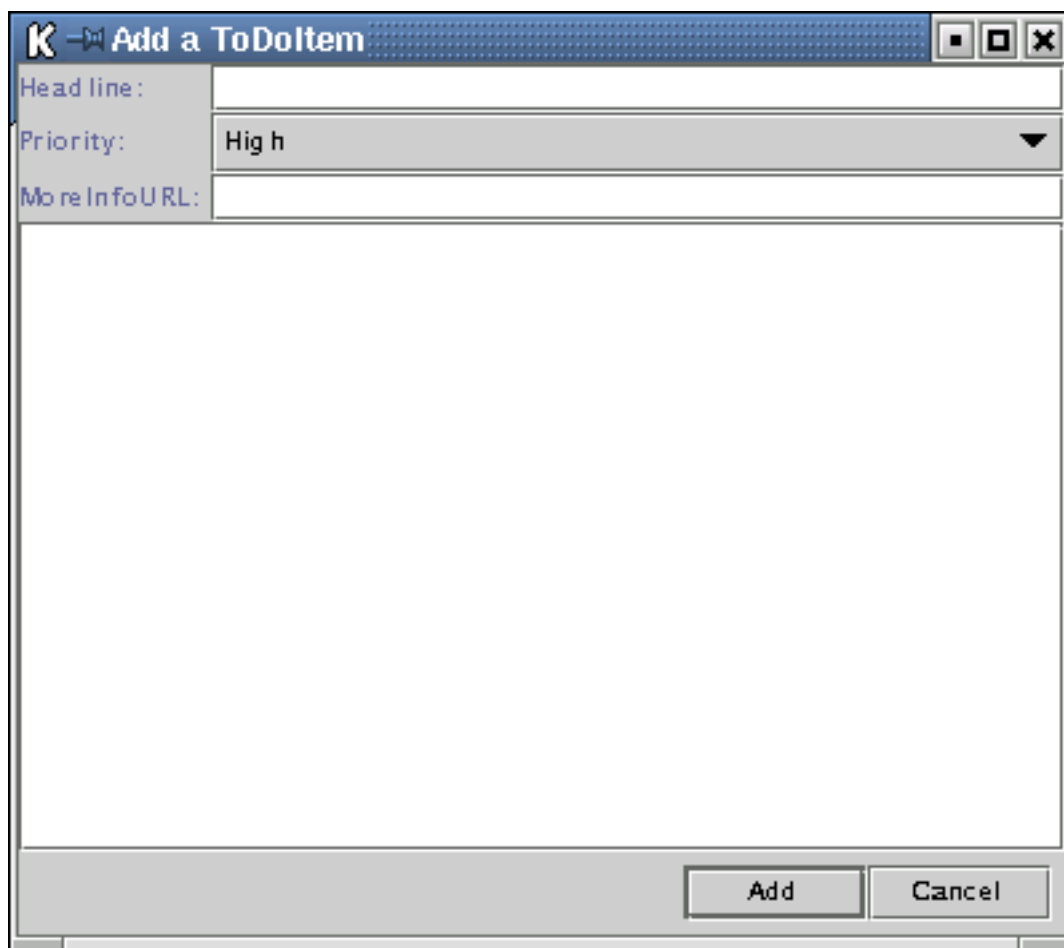
**Figure 10.2. Example of the To Do Item tab on the properties pane**



The body of the tab describes the problem found by the critic and outlines how it can be fixed. To the left are four buttons.

-  New To Do Item... This launches a dialog box (see Figure 10.3), which allows you to create your own to-do item, with its own headline (which appears in the to-do pane), priority for the to-do pane, reference URL and detailed description for further information.


**Figure 10.3. Dialog box for New To Do Item**



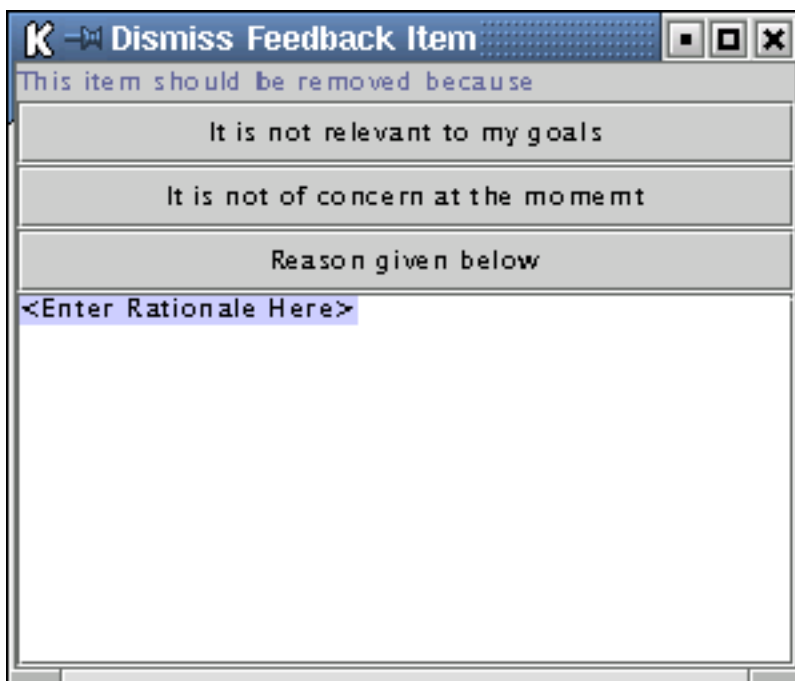


## Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML these to-do notes are not saved, and so will be lost. They should not be used at this stage.

- 
**Resolve Item...** This pops up a dialog allowing the user to resolve the selected to-do item (see Figure 10.4). This is an important dialog, because it allows you to deal with to-do items in ways other than the recommendation of the to-do item (which is the whole point of their being advisory).

**Figure 10.4. Dialog box for New To Do Item**



At the top are three buttons, which will dismiss the selected item, labeled 1) It is not relevant to my goals, 2) It is not of concern at the moment, and 3) Reason given below. If you choose the third of these you should *first* enter a reason in the main text box.




## Tip

If you wish to resolve a to-do item by following its recommendations, just make the recommended changes and the to-do item will disappear of its own accord. There is no need to use this dialog.



## Caution


Because of the layout of the dialog box in the current release of ArgoUML, it is all too easy to click the Reason given below button before entering a reason.

- 
**Send Email To Expert...** This pops up a dialog allowing the user to send Email to an expert asking for advice.



## Note

This feature is currently disabled because the target address of the email i.e. the expert is not available. One idea is to direct these kind of messages to the Users' mailing list `users@argouml.tigris.org`.

-  **Snooze Critic** This suspends the activity of the critic that generated the current to-do item. The to-do item (and all others generated by the critic) will disappear from the to-do pane.

The critic will wake up after a period of time. Initially this period is 10 minutes, but it doubles on each successive application of the Snooze button. The critic can be awakened explicitly through the Critique > Browse Critics... menu (see Section 12.9.4, “Browse Critics...#”).



## Tip

Some common critics can fire the whole time as you build a big diagram. Some users find it useful to snooze these critics until the diagram has been completed.

Some of the more common critics now have a “wizard#” available to help in fixing the problem. This comprises a series of pages in the To Do Item tab that step you through the changes. The wizard is driven through the first three buttons at the bottom of the tab.

- **Back.** This will take you back to the previous step in the wizard. Grayed out if this is the first step.
- **Next.** This will take you back to the next step in the wizard. Grayed out if this is the last step.
- **Finish.** This will commit the changes you have made through the wizard. Grayed out until you get to the last step.



## Note

Not all to-do items yet have wizards in the current release of ArgoUML. If there is no wizard all three buttons will remain grayed out.

There is one remaining button at the bottom of the To Do Item tab, labeled **Help**. This will fire up a browser to a URL with further help.



## Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML the URLs are generally invalid. The few that are valid have no information.

Customization of the critics menu is possible through the Browse critics... menu (see Section 12.9.4, “Browse Critics...#”).

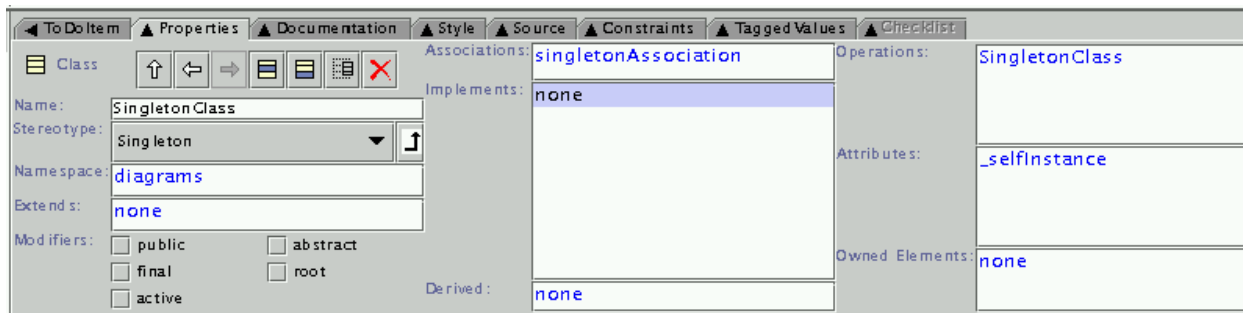
## 10.4. Properties Tab

Through this tab, the properties of artifacts selected in the explorer or editing pane may be set. The properties of an artifact may be displayed in one of two ways:

1. Selection of the artifact in the explorer or editing panes, followed by selection of the properties tab in the details pane; or
2. Context sensitive pop-up menu *Properties* (using button 2 click) on an artifact in the editing or explorer, which will select the item *and* select the *Properties* tab in the details pane.

Figure 10.5 shows a typical properties tab for an artifact in ArgoUML (in this case a class).

**Figure 10.5. A typical *Properties* tab on the details pane**



At the top left is the icon and name of the type of artifact (i.e. the UML metaclass, not the actual name of this particular artifact). In this example the property tab is for a class.

To the right of this is a toolbar of icons relevant to this property tab. The first three are always navigation (Go up, Go back and Go forward). The last is always Delete to delete the selected artifact from the model.

The remainder of the tab comprises fields, laid out in two or three columns. Each field has a label to its left. The fields may be text boxes, text areas, drop down selectors, radio boxes and check boxes. In most (but not all cases) the values can be changed. In the case of text boxes this is sometimes by just typing the required value.

However for most text boxes and all text areas, data entry is usually via a context sensitive pop-up menu (using button 2 click), which offers options to open an entry (i.e. transfer to its property sheet), add a new entry, delete an entry or move entries up and down (in text areas with multiple entries).

The first field is almost always a text field *Name*, where the name of the specific artifact can be entered. The remaining fields vary depending on the artifact selected.

The detailed property sheets for all ArgoUML artifacts are discussed in separate chapters for each of the diagram types (use case diagram (Chapter 15, *ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference*, class diagram (Chapter 16, *ArgoUML Class Diagram Artifact Reference*, sequence diagram (Chapter 17, *ArgoUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference*, state diagram (Chapter 18, *ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference*, collaboration diagram (Chapter 19, *ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference*, activity diagram (Chapter 20, *ArgoUML Activity Diagram Artifact Reference*, deployment diagram (Chapter 21, *ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference*). Property sheets for artifacts that are common to all diagram type have their own chapter (Chapter 14, *ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference*).



## Caution

ArgoUML will always try to squeeze all fields on to the property sheet. If the size of the property tab is too small, it may become unusable. The solution is to either enlarge the property tab by moving the dividers to left and top, or to split it off altogether as a separate window (see Section 7.5.2, “Looking at Different Diagrams Simultaneously”).

## 10.5. Documentation Tab

Within the UML 1.3 standard, all artifacts are children of the `Element` metaclass. The `Element` metaclass defines a tagged value `documentation` for comment, description or explanation of the element to which it is attached. Since this tagged value applies to every artifact, it is given its own tab in the details pane, rather than being part of the `Tagged Values` tab.

Figure 10.6 shows a typical documentation tab for an artifact in ArgoUML.

**Figure 10.6. A typical `Documentation` tab on the details pane**



The fields on this tab are the same for all artifacts.

- **Author:** A text box for the author of the documentation.
- **Version:** A text box for the version of the documentation.
- **Since:** A text box to show how long the documentation has been valid.
- **Deprecated:** A check box to indicate whether this artifact is deprecated (i.e. planned for removal in future versions of the design model).
- **See:** Pointers to documentation outside the system.
- **Documentation:** Literal text of any documentation.



### Tip

ArgoUML is not primarily a documentation system. For artifacts that require heavy documentation, notably use cases, the use of the `See:` field to point to external documents is more practical.

## 10.6. Style Tab

This tab provides some limited control over the graphical representation of artifacts in the editing pane.



### Caution

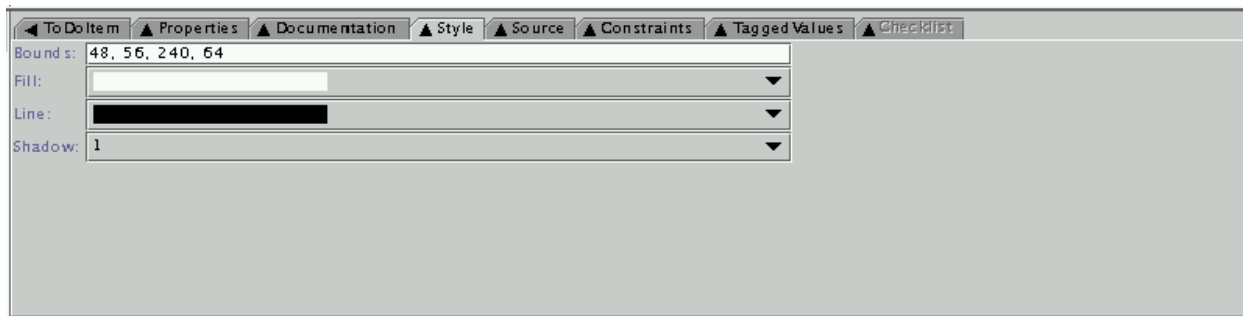
Artifacts that do not have any specific direct graphical representation on the screen (beyond their textual description) do not have style tabs of their own. They show the style tab of their nearest parent that does have a style sheet, and any changes will affect that parent. For example the style sheet of an oper-



ation on a class will be the style sheet of the class.

Style sheets vary a little from artifact to artifact, but Figure 10.7 shows a typical style tab for an artifact in ArgoUML (in this case an interface).

**Figure 10.7. A typical style tab on the details pane**



There may be further fields in some cases, but the four fields shown are common to many artifacts.

- **Bound:** This defines the corners of the bounding box for a 2D artifact. It comprises four numbers separated by periods. These four numbers are respectively: i) the X coordinate of the upper left corner of the box; ii) the Y coordinate of the upper left corner of the box; iii) the width of the box; and iv) the height of the box. All units are pixels on the editing pane.



### Caution

This field has no effect on 1D artifacts that link other artifacts (associations, generalizations etc), since their position is constrained by their connectedness.



### Warning

In the current version of ArgoUML there is strange behavior when typing in this field. Be wary of the cursor jumping around unexpectedly.

- **Fill:** This drop-down selector specifies the fill color for 2D artifacts. It is not present for line artifacts.
- **Line:** This drop-down selector specifies the line color for artifacts.
- **Shadow:** This drop-down selector specifies the width of the shadow (if any) for 2D artifacts. It is not present for line artifacts.

## 10.7. Source tab

This tab is a single box, containing the source code that will be generated for this artifact. ArgoUML generates a template of the code required (most specifically for classes). The intention is that you will add artifact specific code here, and it will be incorporated.



## Warning

This is part of ArgoUML that is very much under development. At this stage any code you add will be lost.

## 10.8. Constraints Tab

Constraints are one of the extension mechanisms provided for UML. ArgoUML is equipped with a powerful constraint editor based on the *Object Constraint Language (OCL)* defined in the UML 1.3 standard.

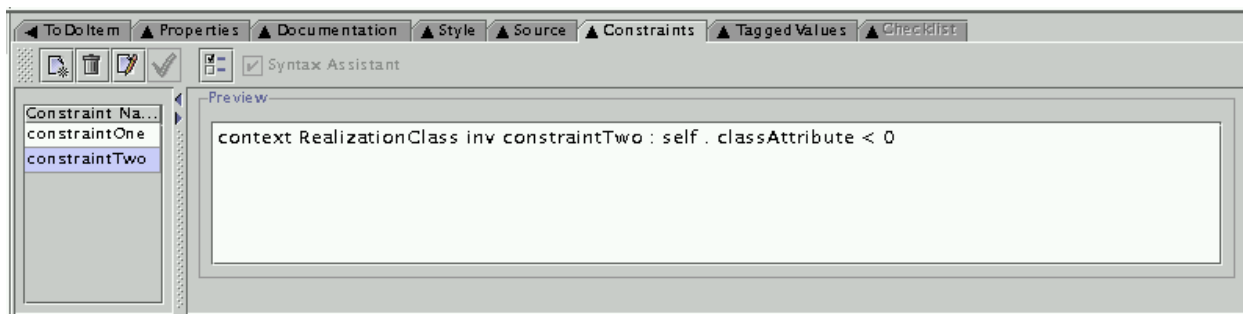
The standard pre-defines a small number of constraints (for example the `xor` constraint over a set of associations indicating that only one may be manifest for any particular instance).

The standard also envisages a number of circumstances where general purpose constraints may be useful:

- To specify invariants on classes and types in the class model;
- To specify type invariants for stereotypes;
- To describe pre- and post-conditions on operations and methods;
- To describe guards;
- As a navigation language; and
- To specify constraints on operations.



Figure 10.8 shows a typical constraint tab for an artifact in ArgoUML (in this case a class).

**Figure 10.8. A typical Constraints tab on the details pane**



Along the top of the tab are a series of icons.


- New Constraint. This creates a new constraint and launches the constraint editor in the Constraints tab for that new constraint (see Section 10.8.1, “The Constraint Editor#”). The new constraint is created with a context declaration for the currently selected artifact.
- Delete Constraint. The constraint currently selected in the Constraint Name box (see below) is deleted.

-  **Edit Constraint.** This launches the constraint editor in the `Constraints` tab (see Section 10.8.1, “The Constraint Editor#”). The editor is invoked on the constraint currently selected in the `Constraint Name` box.
-  **Check OCL Syntax.** This button is intended to check the syntax of the selected constraint.

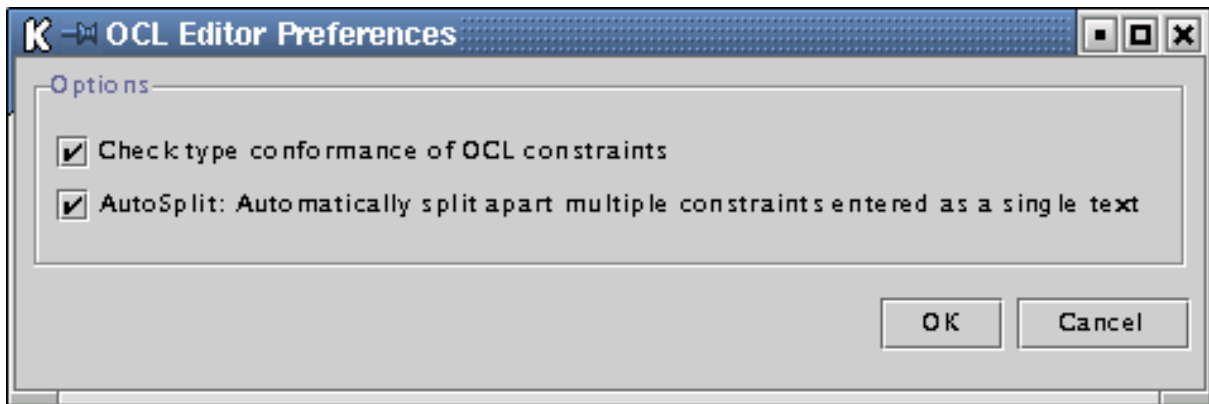


### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this button is always grayed out on the main `Constraints` tab. It may only be invoked from within the constraint editor (see Section 10.8.1, “The Constraint Editor#”).

-  **Configure Constraint Editor.** This a dialog to configure options in the constraint editor (see Figure 10.9).

**Figure 10.9. Dialog box for configuring constraints**



The dialog box has a check box for two options, both enabled by default.

- **Check type conformance of OCL constraints.** OCL is strictly typed. At the early stages of design it may be helpful to disable type checking, rather than follow through all the detailed specification needed to get type consistency.
- **AutoSplit:** Automatically split apart multiple constraints entered as a single text. If you enter multiple constraints in the editor, this will cause them to be split into separate constraints.

At the bottom are two buttons, labeled `OK` (to accept the option changes) and `Cancel` (to discard the changes).



To the right of the toolbar is a check box labeled `Syntax Assistant` (unchecked by default), which will enable the syntax assistant in the constraint editor (see Section 10.8.1, “The Constraint Editor#”).



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this check box is always grayed out on the main `Constraints` tab. It may only be changed from within the constraint editor.

The main body of the constraints tab comprises two boxes, a smaller to the left and a larger one to the right. The two are separated by two small arrow buttons which control the size of the boxes.

-  Shrink Left. Button 1 click on this icon shrinks the box on the left. Its effect may be reversed by use of the Shrink Right button (see below).
-  Shrink Right. Button 1 click on this icon shrinks the box on the right. Its effect may be reversed by use of the Shrink Left button (see above).

Finer control can be achieved by using button 1 motion to drag the dividing bar to left and right.

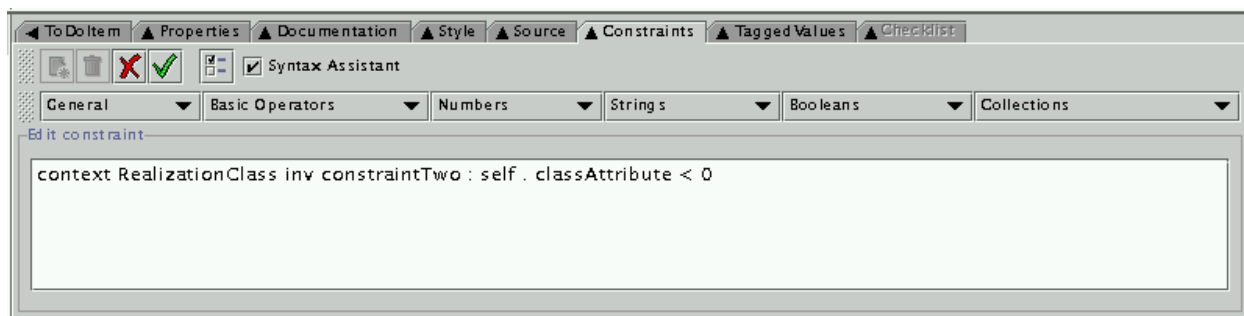
The box on the left is titled `Constraint Name` and lists all the constraints (if any) so far defined for the selected artifact. A constraint may be selected by button 1 click.

The box on the right is labeled `Preview` and contains the text of the constraint. Where a constraint is too large for the box, a scroll bar is provided to the right.


## 10.8.1. The Constraint Editor

This is invoked through the use of the `New Constraint` or `Edit Constraint` buttons on the main `Constraints` tab. The constraint editor takes up the whole tab (see Figure 10.10).

**Figure 10.10. Dialog box for configuring constraints**




Along the top of the tab are a series of icons.

-  New Constraint. This is intended to create a new constraint for editing.



### Caution



In the current release of ArgoUML this button is always grayed out in the constraints editor. It can only be invoked from the main `Constraints` tab (see Section 10.8, “Constraints Tab#”).

-  Delete Constraint. The constraint is intended to delete the constraint being edited.



### Caution


In the current release of ArgoUML this button is always grayed out in the constraints editor. It can only be invoked from the main Constraints tab (see Section 10.8, “Constraints Tab#”).

-  **Cancel Edit Constraint.** This exits the constraint editor without saving any changes and returns to the main Constraints tab.
-  **Check OCL Syntax.** This button invokes a full syntax check of the OCL written in the editor. If the syntax is valid, the constraint is saved, and control returns to the main Constraints tab. If the syntax is not valid, a dialog box explains the problem.



### Tip

Whether type checking is included is configurable using the **Configure Constraint Editor** button (see Section 10.8, “Constraints Tab#” for more details).

-  **Configure Constraint Editor.** This a dialog to configure options in the constraint editor. It is also available in the main Constraints tab and is discussed in detail there (see Section 10.8, “Constraints Tab#”).

To the right of the toolbar is a check box labeled **Syntax Assistant** (unchecked by default), which will enable the syntax assistant in the constraint editor.

If the syntax assistant is enabled, six drop down menus are provided in a row immediately after the toolbar. These provide standard templates for OCL that, when selected, will be inserted into the constraint being edited.

- **General.** General OCL constructors. Entries: `inv` (inserts an invariant); `pre` (inserts a pre-condition); `post` (inserts a post-condition); `self` (inserts a self-reference); `@pre` (inserts a reference to a value at the start of an operation); and `result` (inserts a reference to a previous result).
- **Basic Operators.** Relational operators and parentheses. Entries: `=`; `<>`; `<`; `>`; `<=`; `>=`; and `()`.
- **Numbers.** Arithmetic operators and functions. Entries: `+`; `-`; `*`; `/`; `mod`; `div`; and `abs`.
- **Strings.** String functions. Entries: `concat`; `size`; `toLowerCase`; `toUpperCase`; and `substring`.
- **Booleans.** Logical functions. Entries: `or`; `and`; `xor`; `not`; `implies`; and `if then else`.
- **Collections.** Operators and functions on collections—bags, sets and sequences. The large number of functions are organized into sub-groups.
  - **General.** Functions that apply to all types of collection. Entries: `Collection {}` (insert a new collection); `Set {}` (insert a a new set); `Bag {}` (insert a new bag); `Sequence {}` (insert a new sequence); `size`; `count`; `isEmpty`; `notEmpty`; `includes`; `includesAll`; `iterate`; `exists`; `forAll`; `collect`; `select`; `reject`; `union`; `intersection`; `including`; `excluding`; and `sum`.
  - **Sets.** Operators and functions that apply only to sets. Entries: `-` (set difference); and `symmetricDifference`.
  - **General.** Functions that apply to sequences. Entries: `first`; `last`; `at`; `append`; `prepend`; and `subSequence`.

The remainder of the tab comprises a writable text area containing the text to be edited. The mouse buttons have their standard behavior within an editable text area (see Section 7.4, “General Mouse Behavior in ArgoUML#”).

In addition, cut, copy and paste operations may be invoked through the keyboard shortcuts `Ctrl-X`, `Ctrl-C` and `Ctrl-V` respectively.



### Warning

There is a known problem with the current release of ArgoUML. The `Cut`, `Copy` and `Paste` functions on the `Edit` menu cannot be used within the constraint editor. If used they will work on the currently selected artifact in the editing pane.

Given the known problems with these menu buttons in the current release of ArgoUML (see Section 12.4.4, “`Cut#`”, Section 12.4.5, “`Copy#`” and Section 12.4.6, “`Paste#`”) this could disrupt the model. It should be avoided at all costs.

## 10.9. Tagged Values Tab

Tagged values are another extension mechanism provided by UML. The user can define name-value pairs to be associated with artifacts which define properties of that artifact. The names are known as *tags*. UML pre-defines a number of tags that are useful for many of its artifacts.



### Note

The `documentation` tag is defined for the top UML metaclass, `Element` and is so available to all artifacts. In ArgoUML documentation values are provided through the `Documentation` tab, rather than by using the `Tagged Values` tab.

The `Tagged Values` tab in ArgoUML comprises a simple two column table, with an editable box on the left for the tag name and an editable box on the right for the associated value. There is always at least one empty row available for any new tag. The mouse buttons have their standard behavior within an editable text area (see Section 7.4, “General Mouse Behavior in ArgoUML#”).

In addition, cut, copy and paste operations may be invoked through the keyboard shortcuts `Ctrl-X`, `Ctrl-C` and `Ctrl-V` respectively.



### Warning

There is a known problem with the current release of ArgoUML. The `Cut`, `Copy` and `Paste` functions on the `Edit` menu cannot be used within the constraint editor. If used they will work on the currently selected artifact in the editing pane.

Given the known problems with these menu buttons in the current release of ArgoUML (see Section 12.4.4, “`Cut#`”, Section 12.4.5, “`Copy#`” and Section 12.4.6, “`Paste#`”) this could disrupt the model. It should be avoided at all costs.

## 10.10. Checklist Tab

ArgoUML provides the concept that the user can maintain a checklist of things to do. The `Checklist` tab will eventually provide the mechanism to do this.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this tab is not implemented, and is always grayed out.

# Chapter 11. The To-Do Pane



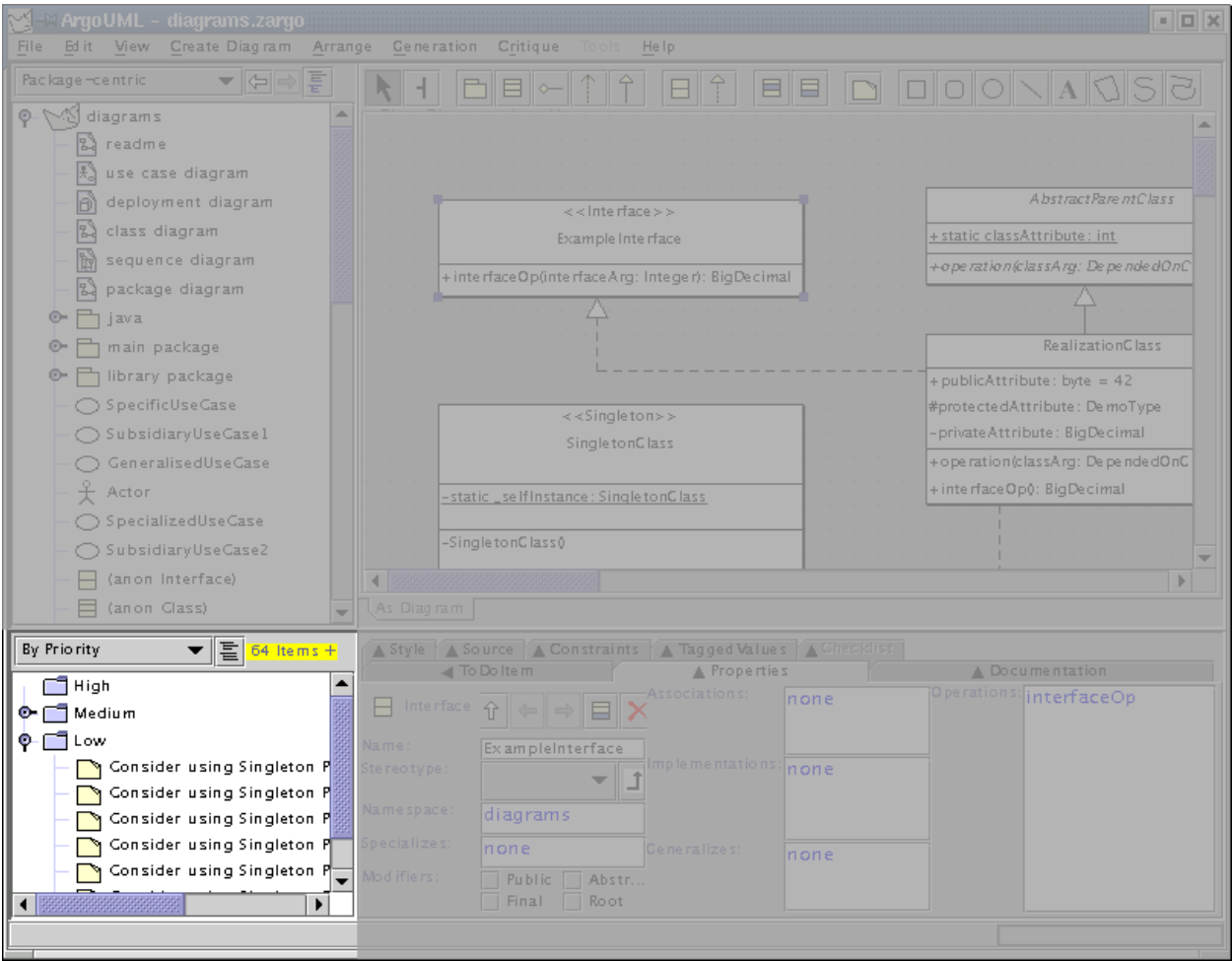
## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 11.1. Introduction

Figure 11.1 shows the ArgoUML window with the to-do pane highlighted.

Figure 11.1. Overview of the to-do pane



This pane provides access to the advice that comes from the critics processes running within ArgoUML. A selector box at the top allows a choice of how the data is presented, a button allows the display of the hierarchy to be changed, and there is an indicator of the number of to-do items identified.





More information on critics can be found in the discussion of the Critique menu (see Section 12.9, “The Critique Menu#”).

## 11.2. Mouse Behavior in the To-Do Pane

Behavior of the mouse in general, and the naming of the buttons is covered in the chapter on the overall user interface (see Chapter 7, *User Interface Reference*).

### 11.2.1. Button 1 Click

This action is generally used to select an item for subsequent operations.

Within the hierarchical display, elements which have sub-hierarchies may be indicated by  when the hierarchy is hidden and  when the hierarchy is open.

When these icons are displayed, the display of the hierarchy is toggled by button 1 click on these icons.



#### Tip

It is possible to turn off the display of these icons using the Flat button in the explorer.

Button 1 click over the headline of any to-do item will cause its details to be shown in the To Do Item tab of the details pane. That tab is automatically selected if it is not currently visible.

### 11.2.2. Button 1 Double Click

When applied to the folder icon alongside a hierarchy category, this will cause the display of that hierarchy to be toggled.

When applied to a headline, button 1 double click will show the diagram for the artifact to which the to-do item applies in the editing pane and select the artifact on the diagram using an appropriate clarifier (the artifact may be highlighted, underlined with a wavy line or surrounded by a colored box as appropriate).

### 11.2.3. Button 2 Actions

There are no button 2 functions in the to-do pane.

### 11.2.4. Button 2 Double Click

There are no button 2 functions in the to-do pane.

## 11.3. Presentation Selection

At the top of the pane is a drop-down selector controlling how the to-do items are presented. The to-do items may be presented in six different ways.

- **By Priority.** The to-do items are organized into three hierarchies by priority: High, Medium and Low. The priority associated with the to-do items generated by a particular critic may be altered through the Critique > Browse Critics... menu (see Section 12.9.4, “Browse Critics...#”).
- **By Decision.** The to-do items are organized into 16 hierarchies by design issue: Uncategorized,

Class Selection, Naming, Storage, Planned Extensions, MState Machines, Design Patterns, Relationships, Instantiation, Modularity, Expected Usage, Methods, Code Generation, Stereotypes, Inheritance and Containment. The details of the critics in each category are discussed in Section 12.9.2, “Design Issues...#.

- By Goal. ArgoUML has a concept that critics may be grouped according to the user goals they affect. This presentation groups the to-do items into hierarchies by goal.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML there is only one goal, Unspecified and all to-do items will appear under this heading.

- By Offender. The to-do items are organized into a hierarchy according to the artifact that caused the problem.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML collaboration and sequence diagrams which generate to-do items sometimes appear with internal package reference names, rather than their given name.

- By Poster. The to-do items are organized into a hierarchy according to which critic generated the to-do item.






### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML the fully qualified class name of the critic is given instead of just its headline name.

- By Knowledge Type. ArgoUML has the concept that a critic reflects a deficiency in a category of knowledge. This presentation option groups the critics according to their knowledge category: Designer's, Correctness, Completeness, Consistency, Syntax, Semantics, Optimization, Presentational, Organizational, Experiential and Tool.

## 11.4. Flat/Hierarchical Button

To the right of the presentation selections is a button which toggles whether hierarchies are shown with “twisties# (  ) to indicate the hierarchy.

-  Hierarchical. The current presentation uses “twisties# to show the hierarchy. Button 1 click will on the icon will switch to a representation without them.
-  Flat. The current presentation does not use “twisties# to show the hierarchy. Button 1 click will on the icon will switch to a representation which has them.



### Caution

The current version of ArgoUML (as described above) really has the flat/hierarchical icons logically back to front.

## 11.5. Item Count

To the right of the flat/hierarchical button is a count of the number of to-do items currently found, highlighted in yellow. This is followed by + to indicate the last change in number was an increase or - to indicate the last change in number was a decrease.



### **Caution**

This count will not show if the to-do pane is shrunk too small.

---

# Chapter 12. The Menu bar



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 12.1. Introduction

An important principle behind ArgoUML is that actions should be able to be invoked in whatever way the user finds convenient. As a result many (but not all) actions that can be carried out on the menu can be carried out in other ways as well under ArgoUML.

A number of the common menu entries are also available through keyboard shortcuts.



## Warning

It should also be possible to navigate the menu from the keyboard, Motif style. Each level of each menu is identified by a letter (shown underlined in the menu or entry name). This sequence of letters while holding down the ALT key should select the entry. In the current version of ArgoUML this functionality is only available when running under Microsoft Windows.

## 12.2. Mouse Behavior in the Menu Bar

Behavior of the mouse in general, and the naming of the buttons is covered in the chapter on the overall user interface (see Chapter 7, *User Interface Reference*).

### 12.2.1. Button 1 Click

Over a top level drop down menu this will expose the menu. If the button is held down and moved, the behavior of button 1 motion (see below) will follow.

Over an exposed menu entry this will invoke the action of the menu.

Within menu dialog boxes this will generally select a text item, and invoke a button action.

### 12.2.2. Button 1 Double Click

This has no effect other than that of button 1 single click.

### 12.2.3. Button 1 Motion

Moving over a top level menu, or a sub-menu will cause that menu to be exposed.

If the button is released (thereby completing a click) over a menu entry that entry will be invoked.

### 12.2.4. Button 2 Actions

In general button 2 click behaves as button 1 click with the menu bar.

## 12.2.5. Button 2 Double Click

In general button 2 double click behaves as button 1 click with the menu bar.

## 12.2.6. Button 2 Motion

In general button 2 motion behaves as button 1 click with the menu bar.

# 12.3. The File Menu

These are actions concerned with input and output and the overall management of projects and the ArgoUML system.

## 12.3.1. New...

Shortcut Ctrl-N.

This initializes a new project within ArgoUML. The project is created with the name `untitledModel` and with two empty diagrams: a class diagram and a use case diagram.



### Note

Although the entry is named `New...` there is no dialog—the project is just created. The entry should properly be just `New`.



### Caution

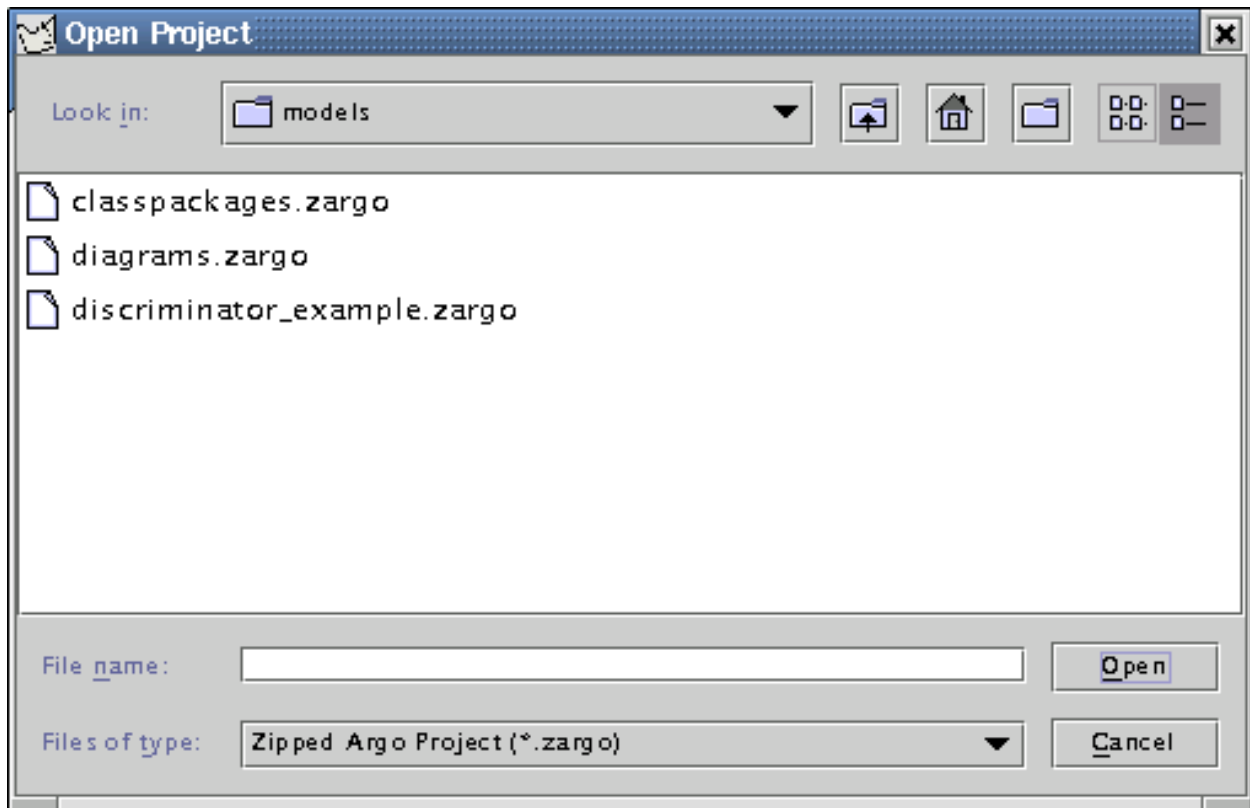
`untitledModel` is not a conventional model name (most processes suggest models should start with an upper case letter). ArgoUML permits you to use a lower case letter, but a critic will trigger to warn that this is not conventional. See Section 14.2, “The Model#” for a discussion of this.


## 12.3.2. Open Project...





Shortcut Ctrl-O.

This opens an existing project. Selecting this menu option will open a file selection dialog (see Figure 12.1).

**Figure 12.1. The file selection dialog for Open Project... .**



At the top of the dialog is a drop down selector labeled `Look in:`, specifying the currently selected directory preceded by the folder icon, . The drop down selector gives access to all directories above this directory.

Next to this are four icons:  to move up a directory;  to select the users home directory,  to specify that a simple file list is displayed; and  (which is always grayed out) that would show details of all files if enabled.

The main body of the dialog is a text area with a listing of all files in the currently selected directory which match the current filter (see below). If these will not all fit on the display, scroll bars are provided to move up and down.

In the lower portion of the dialog is a text box labeled `File name:` for the name of the file to be opened. The file name may be typed directly in here, or selected from the directory listing above using button 1 click.

Beneath this is a drop down selector labeled `Files of type:` to specify a filter on the files to be shown in the directory listing. Only files that match the filter are listed. The available filters are:

- all files;
- zipped Argo project files (the default);
- Argo project files; and
- XMI format files.

Argo project files are produced by earlier releases of ArgoUML, XMI files allow you to use diagrams from other tools (which may not always work!).

To the right of the file name and filter are two buttons, `Open` and `Cancel` to open the selected project or cancel the operation.



### Note

Open will only succeed if a valid filename is provided.

## 12.3.3. Save Project

Shortcut Ctrl-S.

This saves the project using its current file name.



### Note

A newly created project (see Section 12.3.1, “New...#”) will not have been saved to file. And so this entry is grayed out. Use `Save Project As...` to save the project to a file for the first time (see Section 12.3.4, “Save Project As...#”).

## 12.3.4. Save Project As...

This opens a dialog allowing you to save the project under a different file name (or to specify a file name for the first time if the project is a new project).



### Caution

If you are using an experimental version of ArgoUML you will receive a warning message that file formats are not guaranteed to be supported in the long term. You should be cautious about using unstable versions of the system for important projects.

The dialog box is identical to that for `Open Project` (see Figure 12.1). The `Files of type:` also specifies the file type used for saving, and you should choose a filename with the corresponding ending.



### Tip

Zipped Argo Project files, ending in `.zargo` (the default) are the most efficient way of saving projects. They capture all the model and graphical information in a very compact format.

## 12.3.5. Import...

This sub-menu provides access to mechanisms to import a variety of material into ArgoUML. In the current version of ArgoUML only one type of import is provided as standard, the importing of Java code for reverse engineering.



### Note

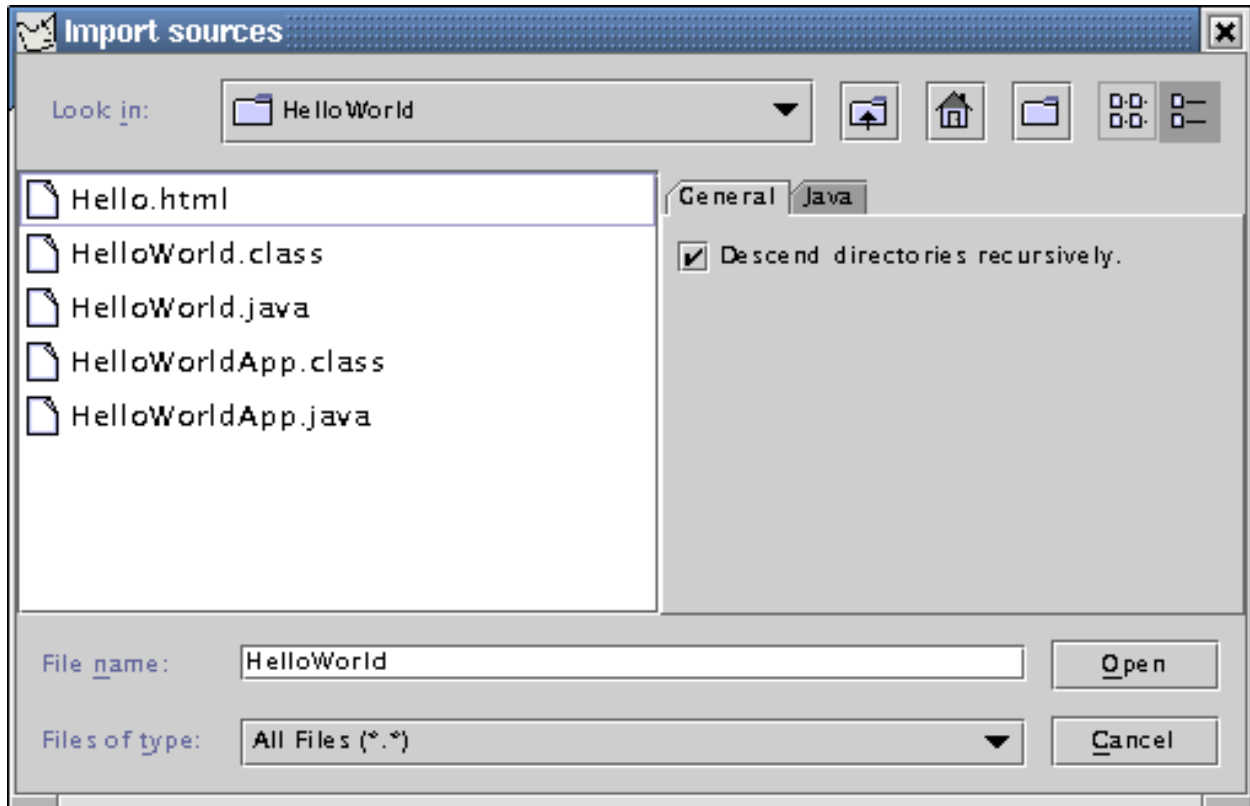
Despite being named `Import...` there is no dialog box associated with the `Import` menu itself (there may be with the sub-menu entries). It should strictly speaking be labeled just `Import` on the menu.

### 12.3.5.1. Import Sources...

A very powerful feature of ArgoUML is that it can “Reverse Engineer# Java code to yield a class diagram. This sub-menu entry specifies Java code to be imported for reverse engineering.

The dialog box is very similar to that for `Open Project` (see Figure 12.1), but with two extra tabs placed alongside the directory listing, as shown in Figure 12.2).

**Figure 12.2.** The file selection dialog for `Import Sources...` .



Those fields that are the same as `Open Project` behave in the same way (see Section 12.3.2, “`Open Project...#`”).



## Caution

The only file filter provided selects all files. However reverse engineering is currently only available, and Java source files only should be selected.

The first of the two tabs is labeled `General` and is selected by button 1 click on its tab. It provides a single check box `Descend directories recursively`. If enabled (the default), reverse engineering will track through sub-directories for any further Java files. If not it will restrict to the selected directory.

The second of the two tabs is labeled `Java` and is selected by button 1 click on its tab. It provides two pairs of radio boxes.

The first radio box allows selection between modeling attributes of Java classes as UML attributes (the default) or as UML associations to the class specified.

The second radio box allows selection between modeling arrays as new datatypes in their own right (the default) or



as their base datatype with multiplicity.

## 12.3.6. Load Model From DB

ArgoUML has the ability to save models to and from an SQL database. However the code for this is quite old, and at present this menu option is grayed out.

## 12.3.7. Save Model To DB

ArgoUML has the ability to save models to and from an SQL database. However the code for this is quite old, and at present this menu option is grayed out.

## 12.3.8. Print...

Shortcut Ctrl-P.

This brings up a dialog box allowing the ArgoUML model to be printed out.



### Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML this function behaves strangely if you have no printer configured under Linux. A small dialog box appears, but it has no functionality.

## 12.3.9. Save Graphics...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box allowing the currently selected diagram (in the editing pane) to be saved in one of a number of graphic formats.

The dialog box is identical to that for `Open Project` (see Figure 12.1). The `Files of type:` also specifies the graphics type used for saving, and you should choose a filename with the corresponding ending.

The available graphics types are:

- GIF (the default);
- Postscript;
- Encapsulated Postscript; and
- Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG).

The filter also allows you to specify all files, in which case the file type is deduced from the filename ending.



### Caution

You should be aware that there are patent issues surrounding GIF files and act accordingly. There are *currently* no such concerns about SVG.



### Warning

If you use the all files filter and specify a filename ending that ArgoUML does not support (i.e. anything other than `.gif`, `.ps`, `.eps` and `.svg`) ArgoUML will silently do nothing.

## 12.3.10. Save Configuration

ArgoUML has various user specific configurations that can be set, both through the `Settings...` entry on the `Edit` menu (see Section 12.4.10, “Settings...#”) and directly on the various panes. This menu entry saves the information in the file `argo.user.properties` in the users home directory.



### Tip

This is a text file, which you can edit to configure ArgoUML.

## 12.3.11. Exit

Shortcut Alt-F4.

This closes down ArgoUML. A warning message will pop-up if you have a project open with unsaved changes asking if you wish to save it. The three options are:

- `Yes` (save the project and exit ArgoUML);
- `No` (do not save the project, but still exit ArgoUML); and
- `Cancel` (do not save the project and do not exit ArgoUML).

## 12.4. The Edit Menu

This menu provides support for selecting artifacts on the editing pane; an undo/redo function; cut, copy and paste functions; removal of artifacts from diagrams and the model; and control of user settings.

### 12.4.1. The Select Sub-Menu

This sub-menu provides for selection of items on the editing menu. It has four entries.

- `Select All` (shortcut Ctrl-A). Selects all artifacts on the editing pane.
- `Select Previous`. ArgoUML has a concept of the ordering of artifacts on a diagram. This selects the item prior to the currently selected item in that ordering.



### Caution

The behavior of this menu function can be very strange, selecting items that do not appear to be on any diagram. It is probably best avoided.

- `Select Next`. Similarly this selects the item following the currently selected item in that ordering.



### Caution

Again the behavior of this menu function can be very strange, selecting items that do not appear to be on any diagram. It is probably best avoided.

- `Invert Selection`. This inverts the current selection (i.e. everything that was selected is de-selected and ev-

everything that was not selected is selected).

## 12.4.2. Undo

This is intended to undo editing actions.



### Warning

In the current implementation of ArgoUML this function is not available and is permanently grayed out.

## 12.4.3. Redo

This is intended to redo editing actions—that is to reverse the effect of the Undo function.



### Warning

In the current implementation of ArgoUML this function is not available and is permanently grayed out.

## 12.4.4. Cut

Shortcut Ctrl-X.

This should take the currently selected items, remove them from the diagram, and place them on the clipboard for subsequent pasting.



### Warning

In the current implementation of ArgoUML there are some difficulties with clipboard based functions. This menu option is permanently grayed out.

## 12.4.5. Copy

Shortcut Ctrl-C.

This should take the currently selected items and make a copy of them on the clipboard for subsequent pasting.



### Warning

If the original item is deleted from the model or removed from the diagram, subsequent pasting will produce a copy that has no namespace, and cannot be properly saved.

In addition pasting back to the diagram from which the copy was made will replace the original, rather than duplicating it.

In the light of this, the copy function is best avoided.

## 12.4.6. Paste

Shortcut Ctrl-V.

This should paste the item(s) last cut or copied to the clipboard on to the current diagram in the drawing pane.



### Warning

If the original item has since been deleted from the model or removed from the diagram, pasting will produce a copy that has no namespace, and cannot be properly saved.

In addition pasting back to the diagram from which the copy was made will replace the original, rather than duplicating it.

In the light of this, the paste function is best avoided.

## 12.4.7. Remove From Diagram

Shortcut Delete.

This removes the currently selected item(s) from the diagram, but not from the model.



### Caution

In previous versions of ArgoUML there was a problem where, in some circumstances, the item(s) were deleted from the model completely, not just from the diagram.

*This is now believed to be fixed, but you should consider saving your model prior to using this function.*

## 12.4.8. Delete From Model

Shortcut Ctrl-Delete.

This function deletes the selected item(s) from the model completely.



### Caution

In the current version of ArgoUML the item(s) may not disappear from diagrams other than the current one. However the copies on other diagrams will have no associated properties. They should be deleted, or will disappear after the model is saved and reloaded.

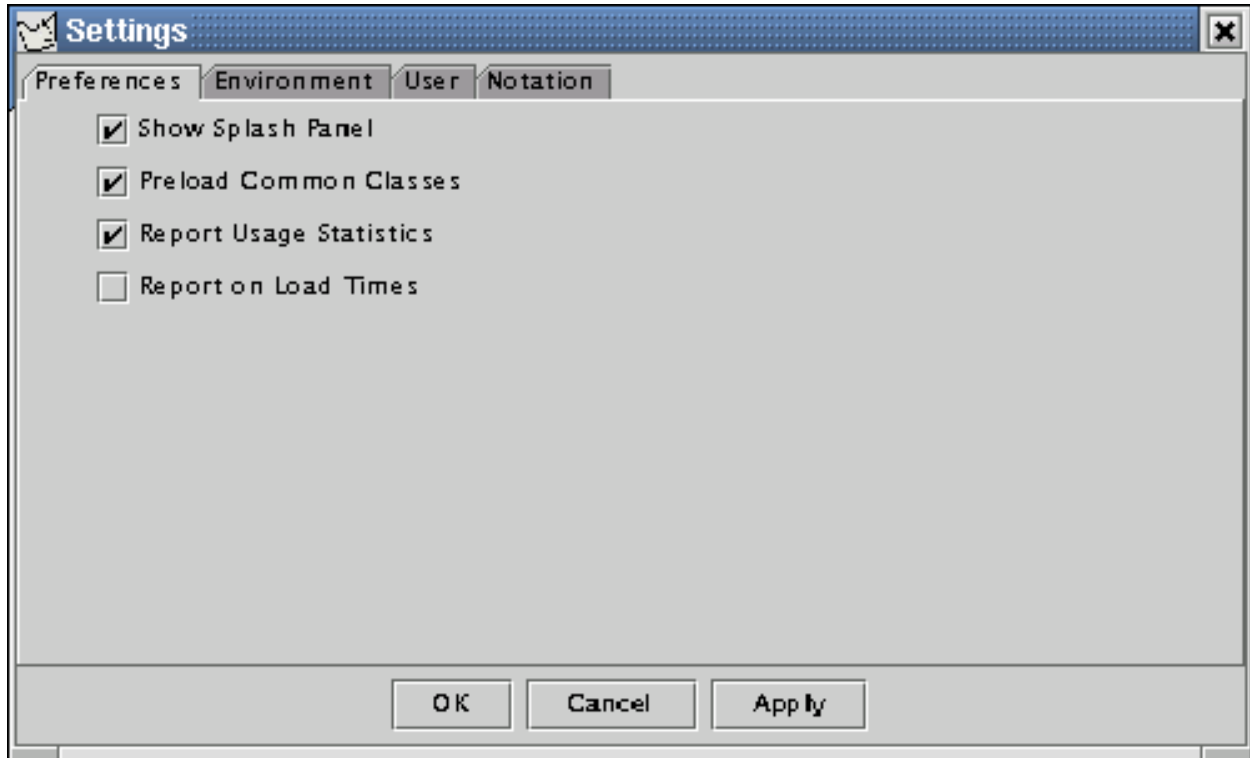
## 12.4.9. Empty trash

This menu function has no discernible effect. It is believed to invoke a garbage collection in the Java system.

## 12.4.10. Settings...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box, which allows the user to set various options that control the behavior of ArgoUML (see Figure 12.3).

**Figure 12.3. The dialog for Settings .**



The options that can be set up on the various tabs are described in the following sections. For each tab there are three buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.

- **OK.** Selecting this button (button 1 click) applies the chosen settings and exits the dialog.
- **Cancel.** Selecting this button (button 1 click) exits the dialog without applying any settings changed since the last **Apply** (or since the dialog started if **Apply** has not been used).
- **Apply.** Selecting this button (button 1 click) applies the chosen settings and remains in the dialog.

These settings can be saved for use by subsequent ArgoUML sessions (see Section 12.3.10, “Save Configuration#”).

### 12.4.10.1. Preferences Tab

Selecting the **Preferences** tab (button 1 click on the tab) gives four options as check boxes.

- **Show Splash Panel** (set by default). If enabled ArgoUML will show a small panel with a picture while loading.



#### Tip

The splash panel can be seen by using the Help menu (see Section 12.11.1, “About Argo/UML#”).

- **Preload Common Classes** (set by default). If enabled ArgoUML creates class objects of a number of classes internally during start up so that instantiation is quicker when they are needed.
- **Report Usage Statistics** (set by default). If enabled usage statistics are reported on the console.



### Caution

In the current version of ArgoUML there is only a very small amount of information, which may be missed amongst the other console output.

- `Report on Load Times` (clear by default). If enabled load times at start up for the various phases of initialization are reported.



### Caution

These times are only of use to developers—they have no meaning to the ordinary user.

## 12.4.10.2. Environment Tab

Selecting the `Environment` tab (button 1 click on the tab) lists seven environmental items. Note that none of these can be set—this tab is just a matter of record.

- `${argo.root}`. The directory holding the top level argo class definitions. By default the `classes` sub-directory of the ArgoUML build directory.
- `${argo.home}`. The ArgoUML build directory.
- `${argo.ext.dir}`. The directory holding ArgoUML extensions—by default the `ext` sub-directory of the ArgoUML build directory.
- `${java.home}`. The home directory of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE).
- `${user.home}`. The user's home directory.
- `${user.dir}`. The directory from which ArgoUML was started.
- `startup directory`. The directory in which ArgoUML starts file searches etc.

## 12.4.10.3. User Tab

This tab allows the user to record additional information of use to the system. There are two text boxes provided.

- `Full Name:`. Allows the user to record their full name.
- `Email Address:`. Allows the user to record their Email address.

This information is used when requesting to-do help by Email.

## 12.4.10.4. Notation Tab

This tab allows the user to specify certain notation settings. It comprises two check boxes.

- `Only allow strict UML notation text` (clear by default). This feature is for future use. One possibility is that a designer may create a diagram and indicate that the notation of the diagram is Java. Someone viewing the diagram with strict UML notation checked will *only* see UML notation in the classes no matter what notation

the designer has used. See also Section 12.5.10, “The Notation Sub-Menu#).



## Warning

This is not currently supported and is not a commitment to the feature of assigning a notation to a diagram either.

- Use guillemots (« ») for stereotypes (clear by default). By default ArgoUML uses pairs of “less than# and “greater than# (<< >>) characters for stereotypes. If this box is checked stereotypes on diagrams are shown between true guillemots (« »).



## Caution

This feature is not fully implemented in the current version of ArgoUML.

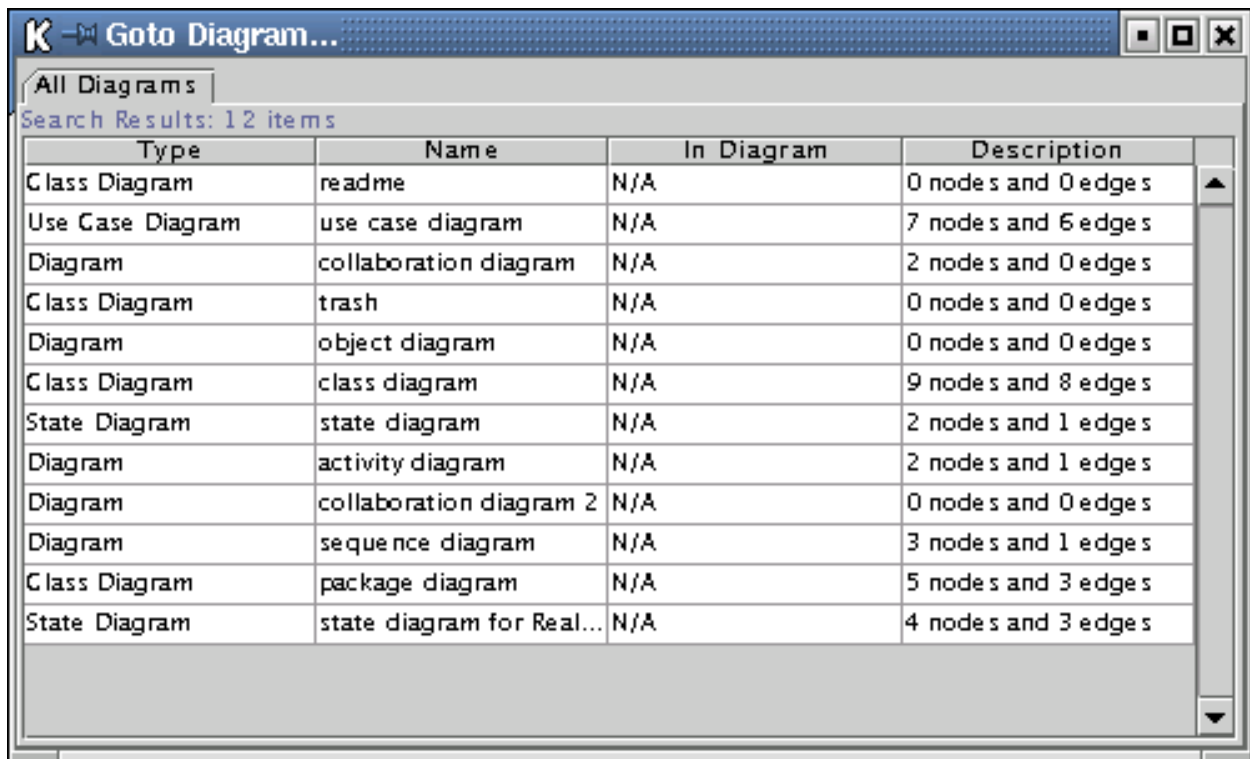
# 12.5. The View Menu

This menu is used for actions that affect how the various panes are viewed.

## 12.5.1. Goto Diagram...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box, describing all the diagrams in the current project under ArgoUML (see Figure 12.4).

**Figure 12.4. The dialog for Goto Diagram... .**



The dialog box is in the form of a tab containing a table with four columns and one row for each diagram in the current project. A scroll bar gives access if the list is too long for the box. Double button 1 click on any row will select that diagram in the editing pane. The four columns are as follows.

- **Type.** Lists the type of diagram.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML activity diagrams, collaboration diagrams, sequence diagrams and deployment diagrams are all listed as type `Diagram`.

- **Name.** Lists the name given to the diagram.
- **In Diagram.** This shows the diagram in which the diagram is contained. Since diagrams cannot be contained within other diagrams, this always shows the entry `N/A`.



### Tip

This column is present, because this menu item reuses the code for the more general `Find` menu.

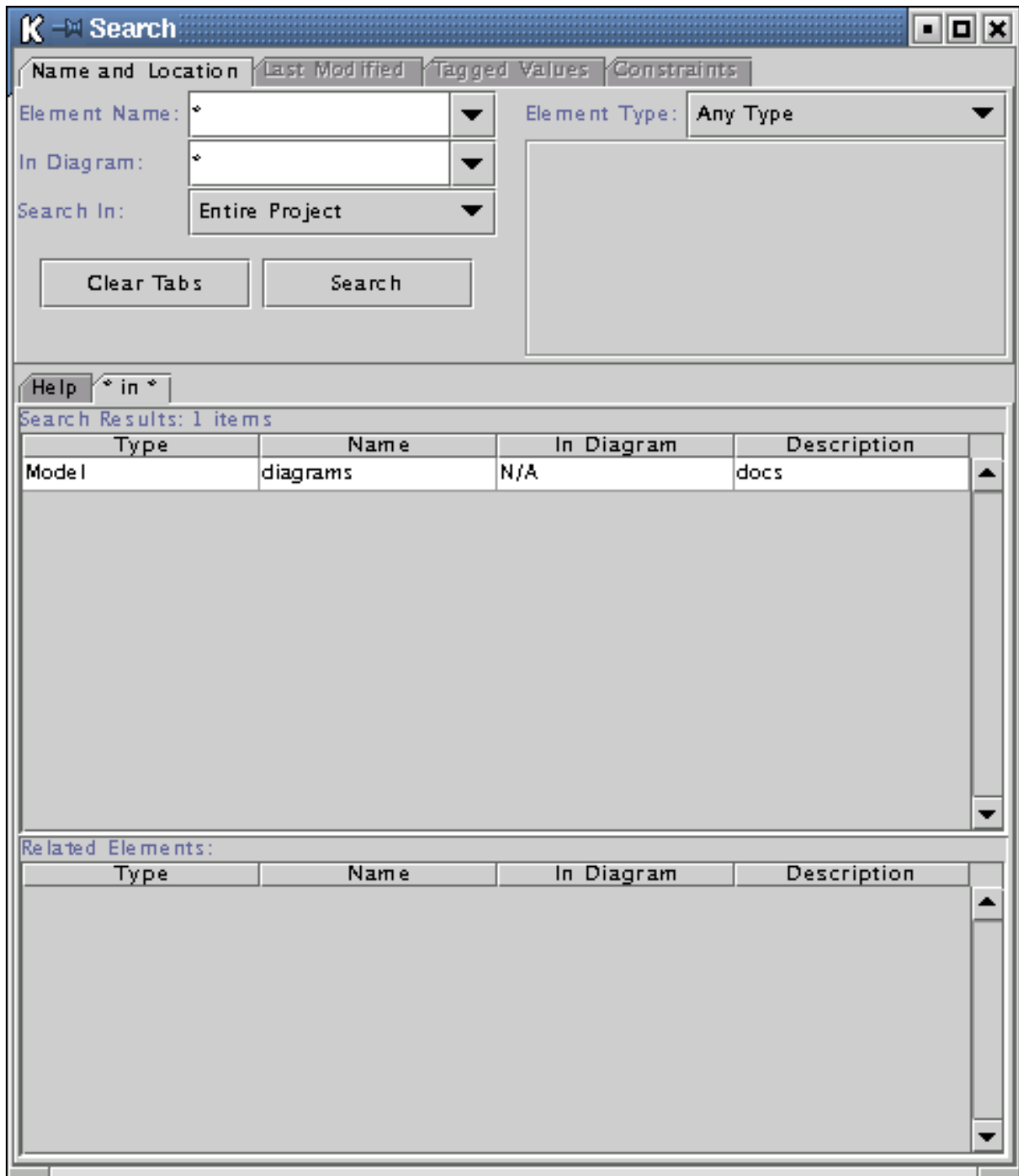
- **Description.** Shows how many nodes and edges there are on the diagrams. The number of “2-D# artifacts and the number of connector artifacts respectively.

## 12.5.2. Find...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box for the ArgoUML search engine (see Figure 12.5).

**Figure 12.5. The dialog for Find... .**





## Warning

In the current version of ArgoUML this function is largely broken. The only item that can ever be found is the model itself, and it is not possible (or meaningful) to navigate to this item's diagram.

At the top level, the dialog box has four tabs labeled Name and Location, Last Modified, Tagged Values

and Constraints. Of these all but the first are grayed out, so the first tab is always selected.

The tab is split into three areas vertically. The top third specifies the search to be made. A text box labeled `Element Name`: specifies the name of the element (or artifact) to search for. Wild cards (\*, ?) may be used here. A drop down gives access to search expressions previously used. A text box labeled `In Diagram`: specifies which diagrams are to be searched. Again wild cards may be used. Both these two text boxes have a default entry of \*, i.e. match anything.

To the right of these two text boxes, a selector labeled `Element Type`: allows you to specify the UML metaclass for which you are searching.



## Caution

The names in of the element types use the NovoSoft UML convention, being the UML metaclass name preceded by M. Not all metaclasses are available.

A selector labeled `Entire Project` allows the search to be made over the entire project (the default) or as a sub-search over the results of a previous search.

Beneath these boxes are two buttons.

- `Clear Tabs`. This clears the display of tabs with the results from previous searches (see below). The results are still available however for sub-searching.
- `Search`. This causes the search specified in the text boxes and selectors above to be executed. The results are displayed in a tab taking up the lower two thirds of the page.

The lower two thirds of the dialog comprises an initial tab (labeled `Help`) giving summary help, and further tabs displaying the results of searches. These search tabs are labeled with a summary of the search *element in diagram* and are divided horizontally in two halves.

The top half is labeled `Search Results`: followed by a count of the number of items found. It comprises a table with one row for each element (artifact) and four columns.

- `Type`. Lists the type of element (artifact).
- `Name`. Lists the name given to the element (artifact).
- `In Diagram`. Where the artifact is visible on a diagram, this lists the name of the diagram, otherwise it shows N/A.



## Caution

The behavior when an item is on more than one diagram is unknown.

- `Description`. Contains a description of the element (artifact). At present this seems to be restricted to the single entry docs.

Button 1 click on any row will give more information on that artifact and show related artifacts in the bottom half (see below). Double click on any row describing an artifact on a diagram and that item and diagram will be selected.

The bottom half of the tab is a table labeled `Related Elements`: and is a table with the same columns as the top half. When an element (artifact) has been selected in the top half, this table shows the details of any related elements.

### 12.5.3. The Zoom Sub-Menu

This entry brings up a sub-entry, which scales the view of the current diagram to a given percentage of its notional size.

The sub-menu values that can be selected are 25%, 50%, 75%, 100%, 125%, 150%.

When created all diagrams are at a zoom level of 100%.



#### Warning

The current version of ArgoUML has a known problem, where zoom may not work on some diagrams.

### 12.5.4. The Editor Tabs Sub-Menu

The editing pane is conceived as a multi-mode editor, allowing you to edit a UML diagram from a number of perspectives.

- As a diagram. This views the diagram in conventional graphical terms and is the default.
- As a table. The artifacts on the diagram are listed in a table with a column for each of their properties, which may be edited.



#### Note

Although this representation was available in ArgoUML 0.8, it is not supported in the current version.

- As metrics. This representation is yet to be defined and is not currently available in ArgoUML.

The various representations may be selected by button 1 click on the corresponding tab at the bottom of the editing pane. Since the current version of ArgoUML only supports a diagram representation, there is only one tab labeled `As Diagram`.

The `Editor Tabs` sub-menu has four entries.

- `Next Editing Tab` (shortcut F6). Selects the next tab on the editing pane.



#### Caution

Since there is only one editing tab in the current version of ArgoUML, `As Diagram`, this always selects that representation, and is thus a null operation.

- `As Diagram` (shortcut Alt+Shift-1). Selects the `As Diagram` tab on the editing pane.
- `As Table` (shortcut Alt+Shift-2). Selects the `As Table` tab on the editing pane.



#### Caution

Since table representation is not supported in the current version of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out and not available.

- `As Metrics` (shortcut `Alt+Shift-3`). Selects the `As Metrics` tab on the editing pane.



### Caution

Since metrics representation is not supported in the current version of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out and not available.

## 12.5.5. The Details Tabs Sub-Menu

This provides a sub-menu allowing selection of the various tabs on the details pane for the currently selected artifact. The sub-menu has nine entries.

- `Next Details Tab` (shortcut `F5`). Selects the next available tab in the details pane.



### Note

If a tab is not available, it is skipped (for example a diagram text box only has `ToDoItem`, `Properties` and `Source` tabs, with all other tabs grayed out).

- `ToDoItem` (shortcut `Alt-1`). Selects the `ToDoItem` tab for the currently selected artifact.
- `Properties` (shortcut `Alt-2`). Selects the `Properties` tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Caution

The `Properties` tab will be selected even if it is not available for the current artifact, in which case it will be completely blank.

- `Javadocs` (shortcut `Alt-3`). Selects the `Javadocs` tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Warning

The current version of ArgoUML has no `Javadocs` tab, so this entry is always grayed out.

- `Source` (shortcut `Alt-4`). Selects the `Source` tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Caution

The `Source` tab will be selected even if it is not available for the current artifact, in which case it will just hold the grayed out text `Nothing selected`

- `Constraints` (shortcut `Alt-5`). Selects the `Constraints` tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Warning

The `Constraints` tab will be selected even if it is not available for the current artifact, in which case it will present a standard constraints tab with no entries. The side effects of entering any data are unknown.

- Tagged Values (shortcut Alt-6). Selects the Tagged Values tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Warning

The Tagged Values tab will be selected even if it is not available for the current artifact, in which case it will contain arbitrary data. The side effects of altering this data are unknown.

- Checklist (shortcut Alt-7). Selects the Checklist tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Caution

The Checklist tab will be selected even if it is not available for the current artifact, in which case it will be completely blank.

- History (shortcut Alt-8). Selects the History tab for the currently selected artifact.



### Warning

The current version of ArgoUML has no History tab, so this entry is always grayed out.

## 12.5.6. Adjust Grid

This cycles the grid representation on the screen through the following sequence:

- dots at 16 pixel spacing (the default);
- dots at 32 pixel spacing;
- no grid of any form;
- full grid at 16 pixel spacing; and
- full grid at 8 pixel spacing.



### Warning

A known problem with the current version of ArgoUML means that altering the grid may cause problems with the display, particularly if no grid is selected.

## 12.5.7. Adjust Grid Snap

This cycles the spacing of grid snapping through the following sequence:

- snap at 8 pixel spacing (the default);
- snap at 16 pixel spacing;
- snap at 32 pixel spacing; and

- snap at 4 pixel spacing.



### Note

There is no option to turn off snap to grid altogether



### Caution

In the current version of ArgoUML this is not actually a true snap to grid. It just defines the increments by which artifacts are moved around. Thus if an item has an X coordinate of 4 and Grid Snap is set to 8, moving will take it to X coordinates of 12, 20, 28 etc, *not* 8, 16, 24 etc

If you wish to align on true grid snap boundaries, you can use the `Arrange > Align To Grid` menu (see Section 12.7.1, “The Align Sub-Menu#”).

## 12.5.8. Adjust Page Breaks

This toggles whether page breaks are shown on the diagram (as white dotted lines).



### Caution

This is incorrectly named and implemented in the current version of ArgoUML, since there is no mechanism to alter the page breaks. It should be a tick box toggle labeled `Page Breaks Visible`

## 12.5.9. Buttons on Selection

If this menu option is enabled, certain artifacts on diagrams will display graphic handles when selected that can be dragged to create connections of various types (associations, generalizations) to other artifacts.



### Caution

The label is somewhat misleading. It is better thought of as `Handles On Selection`.

## 12.5.10. The Notation Sub-Menu

This sub-menu presents a radio box with two options.



### Note



This feature is not completely handled throughout ArgoUML, primarily because the multi-notation support is still rather new. See also Section 12.4.10.4, “Notation Tab#”).

In the future, this feature will define the user's default notation. At some point ArgoUML will allow defining a class in a diagram as being represented using a specific notation.

For example a class `Able` which is represented in Java, and class `Baker` which is represented in C++, with class `Able` using class `Baker` and a class `Charlie` which references `Able`, but does not have a specific notation defined for the diagram element.

In this situation, `Charlie` would be represented in the default notation, while `Able` and `Baker` would be repre-

sented as defined in the diagram element. Changing the default notation would cause Charlie's notation to change but not Able or Baker.

-  Uml . 1 . 3. Uses UML notation as the default notation for classes.
-  Java. Uses Java notation as the default notation for classes.

## 12.6. The Create Diagram Menu

This menu provides for creating the various types of UML diagrams supported by ArgoUML.

### 12.6.1. Class Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank class diagram, and selects that diagram in the editing pane. If a package is currently selected, the class diagram will be created within that package, it will be shown within the package on the explorer hierarchy (under Package-centric view) and artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the package.



#### Tip

This does not prevent artifacts from other namespaces/packages appearing on the diagram. They can be added from the explorer using **Add to Diagram** from the button 2 pop-up menu.

### 12.6.2. Use Case Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank use case diagram, and selects that diagram in the editing pane. If a package is currently selected, the use case diagram will be created within that package, it will be shown within the package on the explorer hierarchy (under Package-centric view) and artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the package.



#### Tip

This does not prevent artifacts from other namespaces/packages appearing on the diagram. They can be added from the explorer using **Add to Diagram** from the button 2 pop-up menu.

### 12.6.3. State Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank state diagram associated with the currently selected class, and selects that diagram in the editing pane. Artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the owning class.



#### Caution

State diagrams *must* be associated with a class. In the current version of ArgoUML the **State Diagram** menu entry is not grayed out if a class is not selected. However invoking the menu entry will have no effect.

### 12.6.4. Activity Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank activity diagram associated with the currently selected class, and selects that diagram in the editing pane. Artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the owning class.



### Caution

Activity diagrams *must* be associated with a class. In the current version of ArgoUML the **Activity Diagram** menu entry is not grayed out if a class is not selected. However invoking the menu entry will have no effect.

## 12.6.5. Collaboration Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank collaboration diagram, and selects that. Within the package hierarchy, collaboration diagrams are always created within a **Collaboration**, within the package or model, rather than within the package or model directly itself. If a package is currently selected, the collaboration diagram will be created within a collaboration within that package, it will be shown within the collaboration within the package on the explorer hierarchy (under Package-centric view) and artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the collaboration within the package.



### Tip

This does not prevent artifacts from other namespaces/packages appearing on the diagram. They can be added from the explorer using **Add to Diagram** from the button 2 pop-up menu.

## 12.6.6. Deployment Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank deployment diagram, and selects that diagram in the editing pane. If a package is currently selected, the deployment diagram will be created within that package, it will be shown within the package on the explorer hierarchy (under Package-centric view) and artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the package.



### Tip

This does not prevent artifacts from other namespaces/packages appearing on the diagram. They can be added from the explorer using **Add to Diagram** from the button 2 pop-up menu.

## 12.6.7. Sequence Diagram

This menu entry creates a blank sequence diagram, and selects that diagram in the editing pane. If a package is currently selected, the sequence diagram will be created within that package, it will be shown within the package on the explorer hierarchy (under Package-centric view) and artifacts created on the diagram will be created within the namespace of the package.



### Tip

This does not prevent artifacts from other namespaces/packages appearing on the diagram. They can be added from the explorer using **Add to Diagram** from the button 2 pop-up menu.








## 12.7. The Arrange Menu



This menu provides a range of functions to help in the alignment of artifacts on diagrams within the editing pane. In general the menu function invoked is applied to any artifact or artifacts currently selected in the editing pane.

## 12.7.1. The Align Sub-Menu

This sub-menu aligns the selected items. There are seven alignment options provided.

-  **Align Tops.** Aligns the selected artifacts by their top edges.
-  **Align Bottoms.** Aligns the selected artifacts by their bottom edges.
-  **Align Lefts.** Aligns the selected artifacts by their left edges.
-  **Align Rights.** Aligns the selected artifacts by their right edges.
-  **Align Horizontal Centers.** Aligns the selected artifacts so their horizontal centers are in a vertical line.
-  **Align Vertical Centers.** Aligns the selected artifacts so their vertical centers are in a horizontal line.
-  **Align To Grid.** Aligns the selected artifacts so their top and right edges are on the grid snap boundary (see Section 12.5.7, “Adjust Grid Snap#) edge.







### Caution

The alignment is to the current *grid snap* setting, which may be smaller, larger or the same as the displayed grid. Since items are aligned to the grid snap boundary any way when you place them, this menu entry has no effect unless you have either changed the grid snap to a larger value or used one of the other Arrange menu entries to push items off their initial positions.

## 12.7.2. The Distribute Sub-Menu





This sub-menu distributes the selected items. There are four distribution options provided.

-  **Distribute Horizontal Spacing.** The leftmost and rightmost selected artifacts are not moved. The others are adjusted horizontally until the horizontal space (i.e. from the right edge of the left artifact to the left edge of the right artifact) is the same for all of the selected items
-  **Distribute Horizontal Centers.** The leftmost and rightmost selected artifacts are not moved. The others are adjusted horizontally until the distance between the horizontal centers of all the selected items is the same.
-  **Distribute Vertical Spacing.** The top and bottom selected artifacts are not moved. The others are adjusted vertically until the vertical space (i.e. from the bottom edge of the top artifact to the top edge of the bottom artifact) is the same for all of the selected items
-  **Distribute Vertical Centers.** The top and bottom selected artifacts are not moved. The others are

adjusted vertically until the distance between the vertical centers of all the selected items is the same.





### 12.7.3. The Reorder Sub-Menu

This sub-menu adjusts the ordering of overlapping items. There are four reorder options provided.

-  **To Back**. The selected artifacts are moved to the back of any other artifacts they overlap.
-  **To Front**. The selected artifacts are moved to the front of any other artifacts they overlap.
-  **Backward**. The selected artifacts are moved one step back in the ordering hierarchy with respect to other artifacts they overlap.
-  **Forward**. The selected artifacts are moved one step forward in the ordering hierarchy with respect to other artifacts they overlap.

### 12.7.4. The Nudge Sub-Menu

This sub-menu provides fine adjustment to the positioning of selected artifacts. There are four nudge options provided.

-  **Nudge Left**. The selected artifacts are moved one pixel to the left.
-  **Nudge Right**. The selected artifacts are moved one pixel to the right.
-  **Nudge Up**. The selected artifacts are moved up one pixel.
-  **Nudge Down**. The selected artifacts are moved up one pixel.

### 12.7.5. The Layout Sub-Menu

This provides control of layout of items on class diagrams during reverse engineering (see Section 12.3.5.1, “Import Sources...#”). It provides two options.

- **Automatic**. Automated layout.
- **Incremental**. Incremental layout.



#### Caution

For all except class diagrams, the two menu entries are grayed out and unavailable (since reverse engineering only creates a class diagram). For class diagrams only the **Automatic** option is available. So the utility of this menu entry is somewhat limited.

## 12.8. The Generation Menu

This menu provides support for code generation from UML diagrams. The functionality is built around the structural information of class diagrams.



### Note

The current version of ArgoUML supports only code generation of Java. Future work will extend this to other languages.



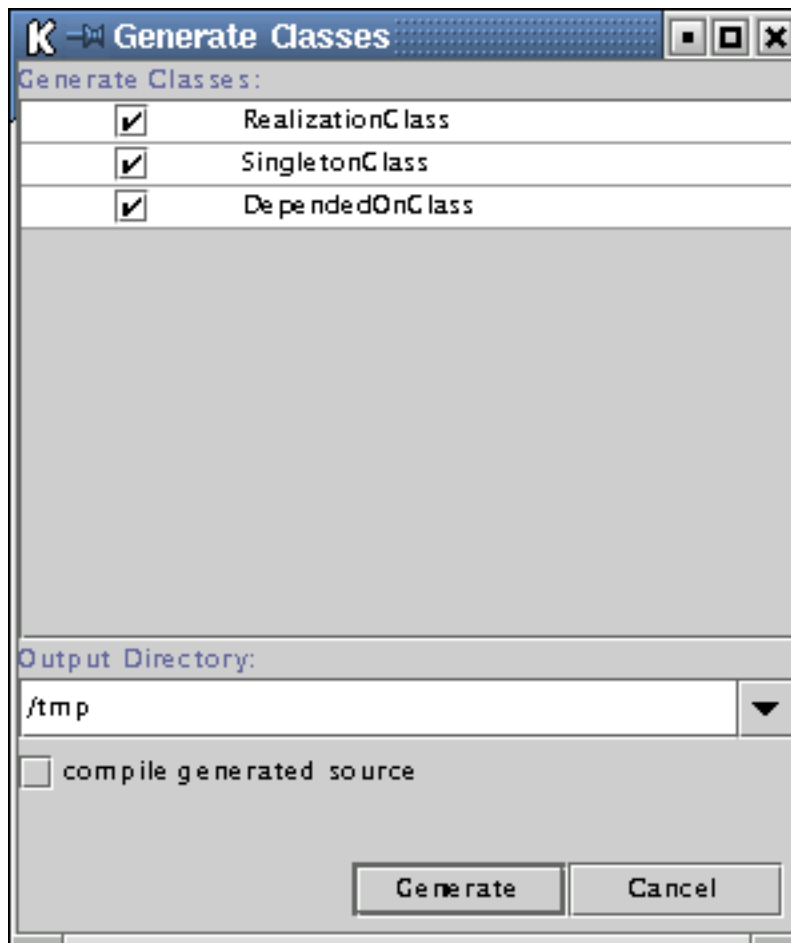
### Caution

This is still very much a work in progress. The current version of ArgoUML will generate a structural template for your code, but is not able to handle behavioral specifications to generate code for the dynamic behavior of the model.

### 12.8.1. Generate Selected Classes

This menu entry brings up a dialog box for the ArgoUML code generator (see Figure 12.6).

**Figure 12.6.** The dialog for **Generate Selected Classes** .



Below a label `Generate Classes`: the dialog box lists each of the selected classes by name with a check box to the left, which is initially checked. Unchecking any of these boxes will omit code generation for that class.

In the lower portion of the dialog box is a text box labeled `Output Directory`: to specify the directory in which code is generated. Within this directory, a top level directory will be created with the name of the model. Further sub-directories will be created to reflect the package/namespace hierarchy of the model. A drop down selector gives access to previously selected output directories.

Beneath this a check box labeled `compile generated source` (clear by default) controls whether the generated code should be compiled.

Finally, at the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons, labeled `Generate` and `Cancel`. Button 1 on the former will cause the code to be generated, button 1 on the latter will cancel code generation.



### Note

Strictly speaking this menu entry should be labeled `Generate Selected Classes...`, since it invokes a dialog box.

## 12.8.2. Generate All Classes

Shortcut F7.

This function behaves as `Generate Selected Classes` (see Section 12.8.1, “Generate Selected Classes#”) would with all classes in the model selected.

## 12.9. The Critique Menu

This menu controls one of ArgoUML's unique features—the use of critics to guide the designer. The theory behind this is well described in Jason Robbins' PhD dissertation [http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/) [[http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/)].



### Note

A word about terminology. The *critics* are background processes, which evaluate the current model according to various “good# design criteria. There is one critic for every design criterion.

The output of a critic is a *critique*—a statement about some aspect of the model that does not appear to follow good design practice.

Finally a critique will generally suggest how the bad design issue it has identified can be rectified, by raising a *to-do item*.



### Note

The critics run as asynchronous processes that run in parallel with the main ArgoUML tool. Changes typically take a second or two to propagate as the critics wake up.

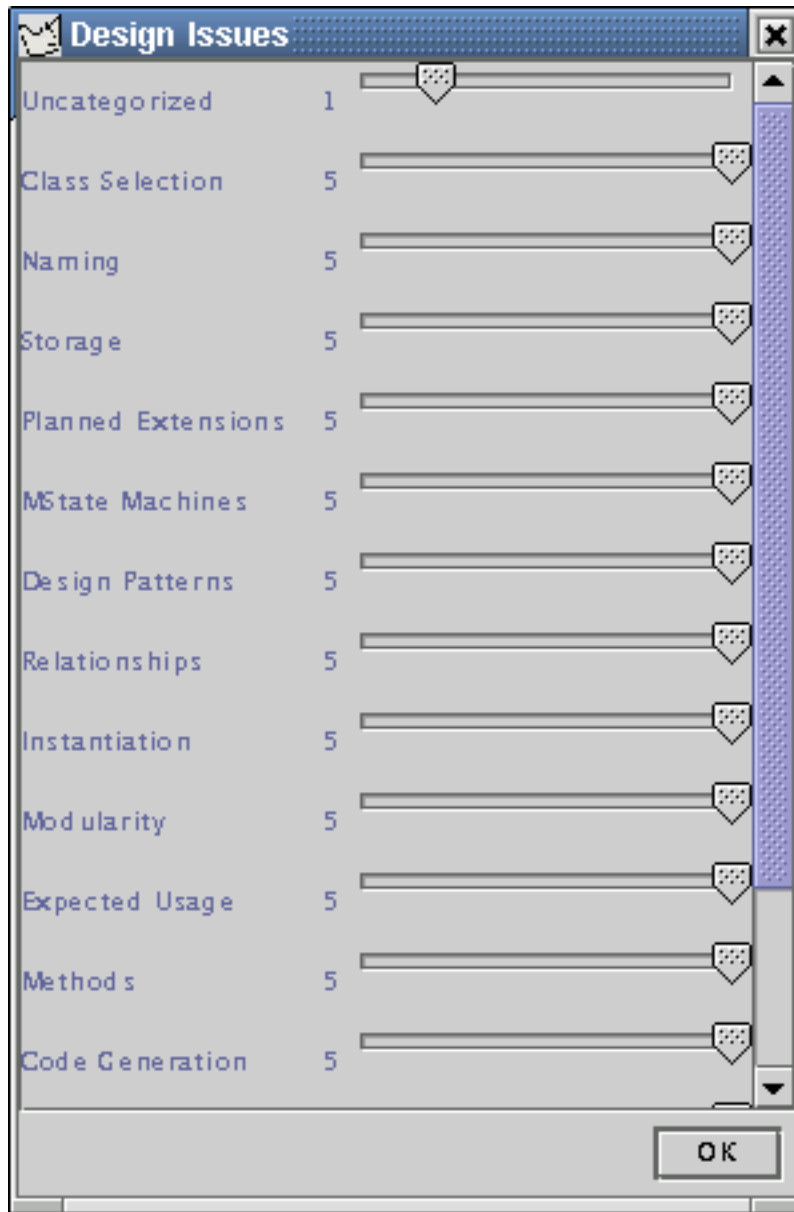
### 12.9.1. Toggle Auto-Critique

This is a check box, controlling whether the critics are running. By default it is checked. If unchecked, then all critics are disabled, and any to-do items generated by critics (the only others being those the designer has added by hand) are hidden in the to-do pane.

## 12.9.2. Design Issues...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box controlling how critics associated with a particular design areas are to be handled (see Figure 12.7).

**Figure 12.7.** The dialog for `Design Issues...`



ArgoUML categorizes critics according to the design issue they address. At present there are 16 such categories. The critics in each category are discussed in detail in the chapter on critics (Chapter 13, *The Critics*).

- `Uncategorized`. Unused (see Section 13.2, “`Uncategorized#`”).
- `Class Selection`. Three critics (see Section 13.3, “`Class Selection#`”).

- Naming. Nineteen critics (see Section 13.4, “Naming#.
- Storage. Four critics (see Section 13.5, “Storage#.
- Planned Extensions. Three critics (see Section 13.6, “Planned Extensions#.
- MState Machines. Fourteen critics (see Section 13.7, “MState Machines#.
- Design Patterns. Sixteen critics (see Section 13.8, “Design Patterns#.
- Relationships. Seven critics (see Section 13.9, “Relationships#.
- Instantiation. Unused (see Section 13.10, “Instantiation#.
- Modularity. Two critics (see Section 13.11, “Modularity#.
- Expected Usage. One critic (see Section 13.12, “Expected Usage#.
- Methods. Four critics (see Section 13.13, “Methods#.
- Code Generation. One critic (see Section 13.14, “Code Generation#.
- Stereotypes. Unused (see Section 13.15, “Stereotypes#.
- Inheritance. Ten critics (see Section 13.16, “Inheritance#.
- Containment. Six critics (see Section 13.17, “Containment#.

The sliders may be set for each category to control the critics that trigger for that category. Setting a slider to zero will disable all critics in that category, and remove all associated to-do items from the to-do pane.

Setting a slider to a higher value will enable all critics at or above that priority level within the design issue category (1 being the highest priority and 5 the lowest).



### Note

The sliders are set by default to 5 for all design categories except `Uncategorized` which is set to 1.



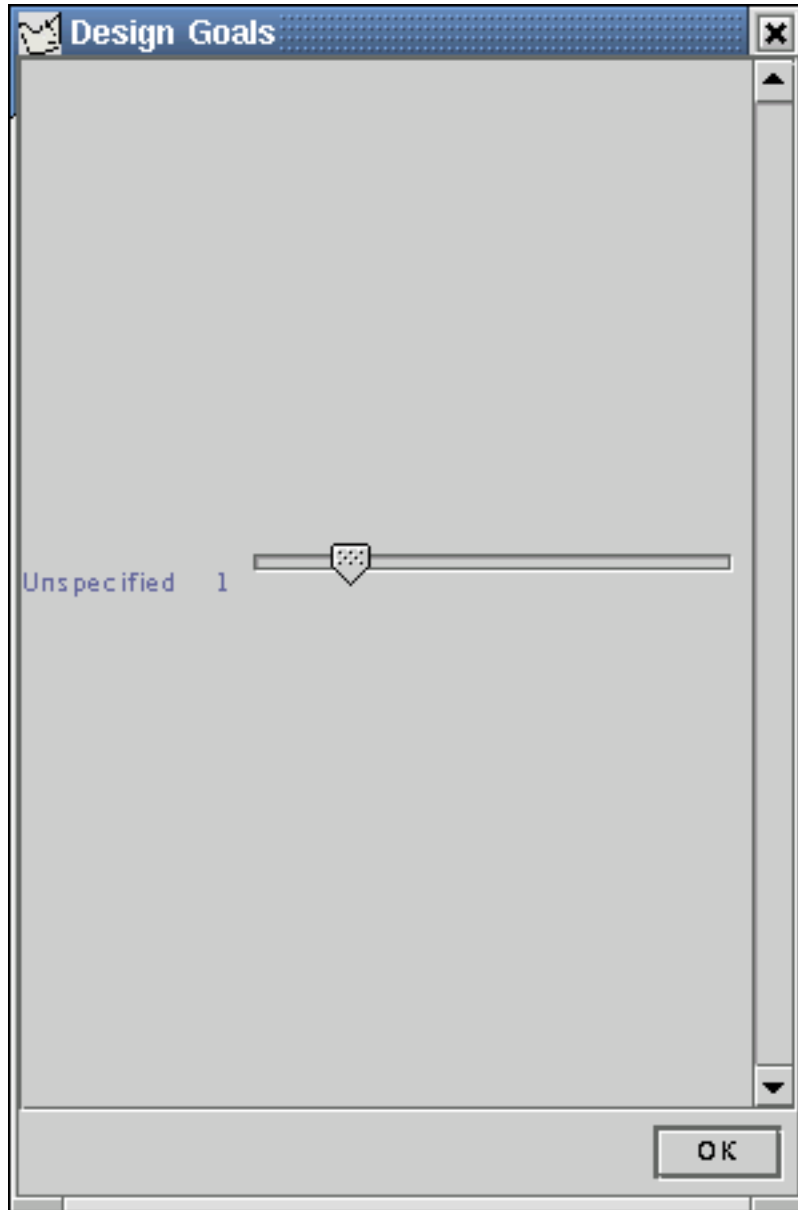
### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML all critics trigger at priority 1, so any higher values of the slider make no difference.

## 12.9.3. Design Goals...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box controlling how design goals are to be handled (see Figure 12.8).

**Figure 12.8. The dialog for Design Goals... .**



ArgoUML has the concept that the designer will have a number of design goals to be achieved (for example good structural representation, detailed behavioral representation etc). Critics are associated with one or more goals.

This dialog allows the user to specify the priority of each design goal.

The sliders may be set for each design goal to control the critics that trigger for that goal. Setting a slider to zero will disable all critics in that goal, and remove all associated to-do items from the to-do pane.

Setting a slider to a higher value will enable all critics at or above that priority level within the design issue category (1 being the highest priority and 5 the lowest).



### Tip

It may be useful to think of this function as very similar to `Design Issues...` (see Section 12.9.2, “Design Issues...#”, but with grouping of critics according to the outcomes of OOA&D rather than

grouping according to the structure of UML.



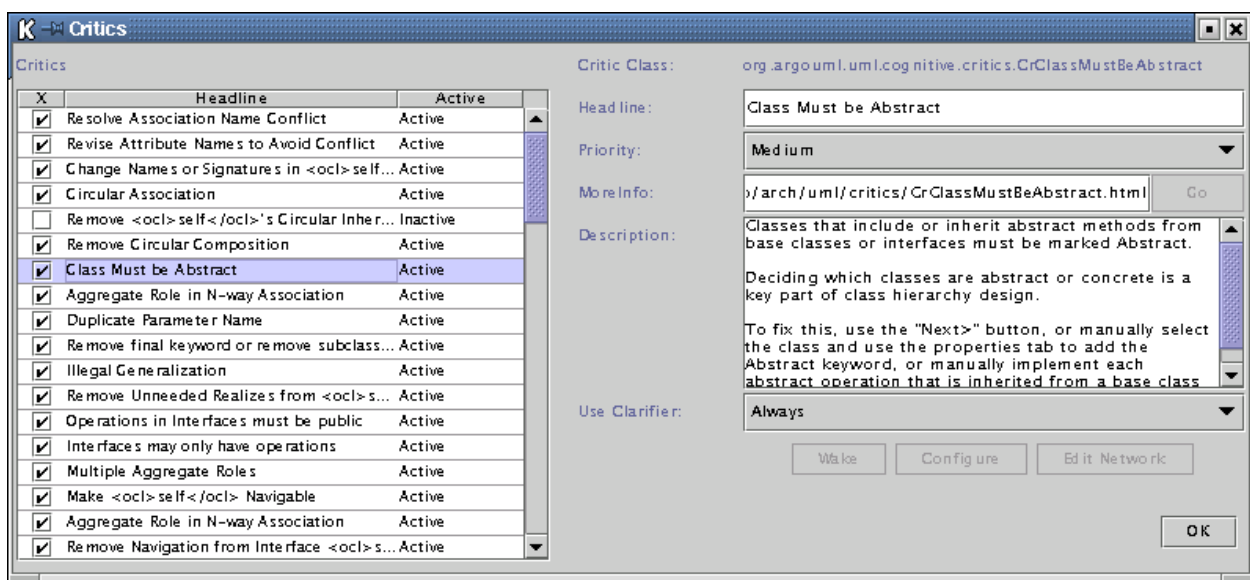
## Caution

The current version of ArgoUML provides a single design goal, *Unspecified*, with its slider set by default to priority 1. However it contains no critics and so has no effect.

## 12.9.4. Browse Critics...

This menu entry brings up a dialog box controlling the individual critics (see Figure 12.9).

Figure 12.9. The dialog for Browse Critics...



This dialog controls the behavior of individual critics. To the left is a list of all the critics. For each critic there are three columns, labeled X, Headline and Active. The first of these is a check box, which may be toggled with button 1 click. The second is the headline name of the critic, the third contains the word Active or Inactive. A critic is inactive if the box in the first column is unchecked *or* the box is checked, but the critic has been snoozed from the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*)

Any critic for which the box in the first column is unchecked is inactive and will not trigger. In addition any to-do items associated with that critic will be removed from the to-do pane.



## Note

In the current version of ArgoUML all critics but one are active by default. The one exception is *Remove <class>'s Circular Inheritance*.

The current version of ArgoUML has a total of 78 critics. They are described in detail by design issue category in the chapter on critics (see Chapter 13, *The Critics*).

- Resolve Association Name Conflict. See Section 13.4.1, "Resolve Association Name Conflict#



- `Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict`. See Section 13.4.2, “`Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict`”#
- `Change Names or Signatures in <artifact>`. See Section 13.4.3, “`Change Names or Signatures in <artifact>`”#
- `Circular Association`. See Section 13.9.1, “`Circular Association`”#
- `Remove <artifact>'s Circular Inheritance`. See Section 13.16.2, “`Remove <class>'s Circular Inheritance`”#
- `Remove Circular Composition`. See Section 13.17.1, “`Remove Circular Composition`”#
- `Class Must be Abstract`. See Section 13.13.2, “`Class Must be Abstract`”#
- `Classifier not in Namespace of its Association`. See Section 13.11.1, “`Classifier not in Namespace of its Association`”#
- `Duplicate Parameter Name`. See Section 13.17.2, “`Duplicate Parameter Name`”#
- `Duplicate end (role) names for <Association>`. See Section 13.4.4, “`Duplicate End (Role) Names for <Association>`”#
- `Remove final keyword or remove subclasses`. See Section 13.16.4, “`Remove final keyword or remove subclasses`”#
- `Illegal Generalization` . See Section 13.16.5, “`Illegal Generalization`”#
- `Remove Unneeded Realizes from <class>`. See Section 13.16.6, “`Remove Unneeded Realizes from <class>`”#
- `Operations in Interfaces must be public`. See Section 13.6.1, “`Operations in Interfaces must be public`”#
- `Interfaces may only have operations`. See Section 13.6.2, “`Interfaces may only have operations`”#
- `Two aggregate ends (roles) in binary association`. See Section 13.17.3, “`Two Aggregate Ends (Roles) in Binary Association`”#
- `Make <association> Navigable`. See Section 13.9.2, “`Make <association> Navigable`”#
- `Aggregate end (role) in 3-way (or more) Association`. See Section 13.17.4, “`Aggregate End (Role) in 3-way (or More) Association`”#
- `Remove Navigation from Interface <association>`. See Section 13.9.3, “`Remove Navigation from Interface via <association>`”#
- `Role name conflicts with member`. See Section 13.4.5, “`Role name conflicts with member`”#
- `Choose a Name (classes and interfaces)`. See Section 13.4.6, “`Choose a Name (Classes and Interfaces)`”#
- `Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (classes and interfaces)`. See Section 13.4.7, “`Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (Classes and Interfaces)`”#
- `Choose a name (attributes)`. See Section 13.4.8, “`Choose a Name (Attributes)`”#
- `Choose a name (operations)`. See Section 13.4.9, “`Choose a Name (Operations)`”#
- `Choose a Name (states)`. See Section 13.4.10, “`Choose a Name (States)`”#

- Add Instance Variables to <class>. See Section 13.5.2, “Add Instance Variables to <class>#
- Add Associations to <artifact>. See Section 13.9.4, “Add Associations to <artifact>#
- Add Operations to <artifact>. See Section 13.13.3, “Add Operations to <class>#
- Add Constructor to <class>. See Section 13.5.3, “Add Constructor to <class>#
- Add Elements to Package <package>. See Section 13.11.2, “Add Elements to Package <package>#
- Wrap DataType. See Section 13.3.1, “Wrap DataType#
- Import Parameter Type into Class. See Section 13.17.6, “Import Parameter Type into Class#
- Define Concrete (Sub)Class. See Section 13.16.7, “Define Concrete (Sub)Class#
- Define Class to Implement <interface>. See Section 13.16.8, “Define Class to Implement <interface>#
- Choose a Unique Name for <state> (states). See Section 13.4.11, “Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (States)#
- Revise Name to Avoid Confusion. See Section 13.4.12, “Revise Name to Avoid Confusion#
- Remove Reference to Specific Subclass. See Section 13.6.3, “Remove Reference to Specific Subclass#
- Choose a Legal Name. See Section 13.4.13, “Choose a Legal Name#
- Change <artifact> to a Non-Reserved Word. See Section 13.4.14, “Change <artifact> to a Non-Reserved Word#
- Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces. See Section 13.14.1, “Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces#
- Reduce Associations on <artifact>. See Section 13.9.6, “Reduce Associations on <artifact> #
- Reduce Attributes on <class>. See Section 13.5.4, “Reduce Attributes on <class>#
- Reduce Operations on <artifact>. See Section 13.13.4, “Reduce Operations on <artifact>#
- Reduce Transitions on <state>. See Section 13.7.1, “Reduce Transitions on <state>#
- Reduce States in machine <diagram>. See Section 13.7.2, “Reduce States in machine <machine>#
- Reduce Classes in diagram <diagram>. See Section 13.3.2, “Reduce Classes in diagram <diagram>#
- Add Transitions to <state>. See Section 13.7.3, “Add Transitions to <state>#
- Add Incoming Transitions to <state>. See Section 13.7.4, “Add Incoming Transitions to <artifact>#
- Add Outgoing Transitions from <state>. See Section 13.7.5, “Add Outgoing Transitions from <artifact>#
- Remove Extra Initial States. See Section 13.7.6, “Remove Extra Initial States#
- Place an Initial State. See Section 13.7.7, “Place an Initial State#
- Add Trigger or Guard to Transition. See Section 13.7.8, “Add Trigger or Guard to Transition#

- Change Join Transitions. See Section 13.7.9, “Change Join Transitions#
- Change Fork Transitions. See Section 13.7.10, “Change Fork Transitions#
- Change Branch Transitions. See Section 13.7.11, “Change Branch Transitions#
- Add Guard to Transition. See Section 13.7.12, “Add Guard to Transition#
- Choose a Better Operation Name. See Section 13.4.15, “Choose a Better Operation Name#
- Choose a Better Attribute Name. See Section 13.4.16, “Choose a Better Attribute Name#
- Capitalise Class Name <class>. See Section 13.4.17, “Capitalize Class Name <class>#
- Revise Package Name <package>. See Section 13.4.18, “Revise Package Name <artifact>#
- Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class>. See Section 13.8.1, “Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class>#
- Singleton Stereotype Violated in <class>. See Section 13.8.2, “Singleton Stereotype Violated in <class>#
- Nodes normally have no enclosers. See Section 13.8.3, “Nodes normally have no enclosers#
- NodeInstances normally have no enclosers. See Section 13.8.4, “NodeInstances normally have no enclosers#
- Components normally are inside nodes. See Section 13.8.5, “Components normally are inside nodes#
- ComponentInstances normally are inside nodes. See Section 13.8.6, “ComponentInstances normally are inside nodes#
- Classes normally are inside components. See Section 13.8.7, “Classes normally are inside components#
- Interfaces normally are inside components. See Section 13.8.8, “Interfaces normally are inside components#
- Objects normally are inside components. See Section 13.8.9, “Objects normally are inside components#
- LinkEnds have not the same locations. See Section 13.8.10, “LinkEnds have not the same locations#
- Set classifier (deployment diagram). See Section 13.8.11, “Set classifier (Deployment Diagram)#
- Missing return-actions. See Section 13.8.12, “Missing return-actions#
- Missing call(send)-action. See Section 13.8.13, “Missing call(send)-action#
- No Stimuli on these links. See Section 13.8.14, “No Stimuli on these links#
- Set classifier (sequence diagram). See Section 13.8.15, “Set Classifier (Sequence Diagram)#
- Wrong position of these stimuli. See Section 13.8.16, “Wrong position of these stimuli#
- Clean Up Diagram. See Section 13.3.3, “Clean Up Diagram#
- Make Edge More Visible. See Section 13.7.14, “Make Edge More Visible#

To the right of the list are a series of fields giving detailed control over individual critics. Selecting a critic in the list on the left will populate the fields for that critic.



## Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML there is a known problem with the user interface. When moving down the list (i.e. selecting a critic below the previously selected one) the fields are populated for the previously selected critic. To get the fields for the desired critic, another critic further down must be selected, making the desired critic the “previous critic#” whose details will then populate the fields on the right.

Selecting items further up the list (i.e. selecting a critic *above* the previously selected on) does not have this problem.

A consequence of the different behavior when selecting up or down is that the last critic on the list (Make Edge More Visible) can never populate the fields on the right.

The fields on the right are titled `Critic Class:` and then the full name of the class in ArgoUML that implements the critic.

The first field below this title is a text box labeled `Headline:` giving the complete headline of the critic (which may be truncated in the list on the left).



## Note

In the headline you may see the text `<ocl>self</ocl>`, which will be replaced by the name of the artifact in question when the critic is triggered.

The next field is a drop-down selector, labeled `Priority:`. The three options available are `High`, `Medium` and `Low` and specify the priority category of any to-do item generated by this critic.

The next field is labeled `MoreInfo:` and contains a URL pointing to further information with a button to the right labeled `Go` to navigate to that URL.



## Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML there is no further information available, and the `Go` button is always grayed out and disabled.

The next field is labeled `Description:` and is a text area with a detailed explanation of what this critic means. If the text is too large for the area a scroll bar is provided to the right.



## Note

In this text area you may see the text `<ocl>self</ocl>`, which will be replaced by the name of the artifact in question when the critic is triggered.

The last field is a drop-down selector labeled `Use Clarifier`, with three options, `Always`, `If Only One` and `Never`.

Clarifiers are the icons and wavy red underlines drawn on the actual diagrams to indicate the artefact to which the critic refers. The original intention was to make the mapping from critics to clarifiers to somewhat customizable.

For example one user might make a `Missing Name` critic show a red underline, another user might turn off the

clarifier, or have it draw a wavy green underline or a blue questionmark. Critics with their clarifier's disabled would still produce feedback that is listed in the to-do pane.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this selector has no function, beyond printing a message on the console. It is for future development.

Underneath the fields are three buttons in a horizontal row.

- **wake.** It is possible to snooze a critic from the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*), which makes the critic inactive for a period. If the critic has been snoozed, this button is enabled and will wake the critic back up again. Otherwise it is grayed out.



### Tip

You can tell a snoozed critic, because in the list on the left it will have the box in the first column checked, but will be shown as inactive in the third column.

- **Configure.** This button is for configuring the critic.



### Caution

In the current version of ArgoUML this function is not implemented, and this button is always grayed out. It is for future development.

- **Edit Network.** Right now critics are implemented in java code. That means end-users cannot add new critics.

The idea of a critic network is that they would be a state machine like diagram with several steps. Each step would express a condition which, collectively with the other steps associated with that critic, articulates the “rule# that the critic is providing. If the rule fires, then remaining steps would define the steps of the wizard to help the user fix the problem.

The ideas behind this are discussed in Chapter 4 of Jason Robbins PhD dissertation ([http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/diss4.html](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/diss4.html) [[http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/diss4.html](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/diss4.html)]). In particular look at Figure 1-6 in this chapter and the related discussion.

A suggested implementation is that the conditions could be written in OCL against the UML meta-model. A library of predefined conditions and steps would allow end-users to build new critics by combining those in novel ways.



### Caution

In the current version of ArgoUML this function is not implemented, and this button is always grayed out. It is for future development.

Finally the bottom right of the dialog contains a button labeled OK. Button 1 click here dismisses the dialog.

## 12.10. The Tools Menu

This menu provides a generic menu attachment point for any plug-ins provided with ArgoUML. The standard sys-

tem has no plug-ins, so this menu entry is grayed out by default.

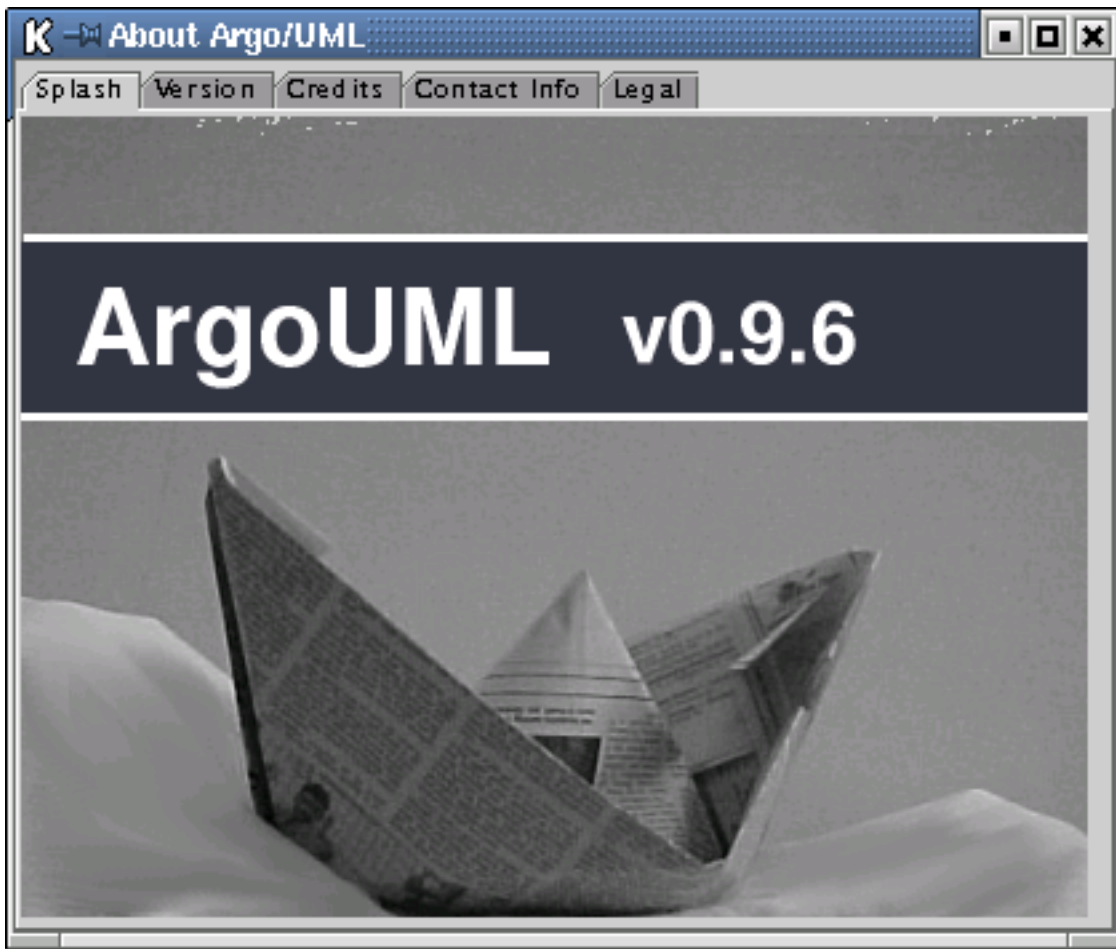
## 12.11. The Help Menu

This menu provides help on the use of ArgoUML. At present it has a single entry.

### 12.11.1. About Argo/UML

This menu entry brings up the help window for ArgoUML (see Figure 12.10).

**Figure 12.10. The help window for ArgoUML**



The window has five tabs, which are selected by button 1 click. By default the first tab (*Splash*) is shown.

- *Splash*. This displays the picture shown when ArgoUML starts up.
- *Version*. This provides version information on the various packages that make up ArgoUML.
- *Credits*. This details all those who have created ArgoUML, including contact details for the various module owners.

- `Contact Info`. This gives the major contact points for the ArgoUML project—the web site, Jason Robbins, the developers mailing list.
- `Legal`. A statement of the FreeBSD license which covers all the ArgoUML software.



### **Caution**

The various documentation of the project are not all covered by FreeBSD (which is really meant for software). In particular this manual is covered by the OpenPub license (see Appendix G, *Open Publication Licence*).

---

# Chapter 13. The Critics



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 13.1. Introduction

The key feature that distinguishes ArgoUML from other UML CASE tools is its use of concepts from cognitive psychology. The theory behind this is well described in Jason Robbins' PhD dissertation [http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/) [[http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins\\_dissertation/](http://argouml.tigris.org/docs/robbins_dissertation/)].

Critics are one of the main ways in which these ideas are implemented. Running in the background they offer advice to the designer which may be accepted or ignored. A key point is that they do not *impose* a decision on the designer.



## Note

The critics are asynchronous processes that run in parallel with the main ArgoUML tool. Changes typically take a second or two to propagate as the critics wake up.

### 13.1.1. Terminology

The *critics* are background processes, which evaluate the current model according to various “good# design criteria. There is one critic for every design criterion.

The output of a critic is a *critique*—a statement about some aspect of the model that does not appear to follow good design practice.

Finally a critique will generally suggest how the bad design issue it has identified can be rectified, by raising a *to-do item*.

### 13.1.2. Design Issues

ArgoUML categorizes critics according the the design issue they address (some critics may be in more than one category). At present there are 16 such categories.

Within this manual the descriptions of critics are grouped in sections by design issue.

## 13.2. Uncategorized

These are critics that do not fit into any other category.

The current version of ArgoUML has no critics in this category.

## 13.3. Class Selection

These are critics concerning how classes are chosen and used.



The current version of ArgoUML has three critics in this category.

### 13.3.1. Wrap DataType

DataTypes are not full classes within UML 1.3. They can only have enumeration literals as values, and only support query operations (that is operations that do not change the DataType's state).

DataTypes cannot be associated with classes, unless the DataType is part of a composite (black diamond) aggregation. Such an association reflects the tight binding of a collection of DataType instances to a class instance. In effect such a DataType is an attribute of the class with multiplicity.

Good OOA&D depends on careful choices about which entities to represent as full objects and which to represent as attributes of objects.

There are two options to fix this problem.

- Replace the DataType with a full class.
- or change the association aggregation to composite relationship at the DataType end.

### 13.3.2. Reduce Classes in diagram <diagram>

Suggestion to improve readability by having fewer classes on a diagram.

### 13.3.3. Clean Up Diagram

Suggestion that the diagram could be improved by moving artifacts that are overlapping.

## 13.4. Naming

These are critics concerning the naming of artifacts. The current version of ArgoUML has 18 critics in this category.

### 13.4.1. Resolve Association Name Conflict

Suggestion that two association names in the same namespace have the same name. This is not permitted in UML.

### 13.4.2. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict

Suggestion that two attribute names of a class have the same name. This is not permitted in UML.



#### Note

This may be caused by inheritance of an attribute through a generalization relationship.

### 13.4.3. Change Names or Signatures in <artifact>

Two operations in <artifact> have the same signature. This means their name is the same, and the list of parameters has the same type.

Where there are conflicting signatures, correct code cannot be generated for mainstream OO languages. It also leads to very unclear semantics of the design.

In comparing signatures, this critic considers:

1. the name;
2. the list of in, out and in-out parameter types *in order*; and

Only if these all match in both type and order, will the signatures be considered as the same.

This follows the line of Java/C++ in ignoring the return parameters for the signature. This *may* be unsatisfactory for some functional OO languages.



### Note

Some purists would argue that the comparison should really differentiate between in, out and in-out parameters. However no practical programming language can do this when resolving an overloaded method invocation, so this critics lumps them all together.

## 13.4.4. Duplicate End (Role) Names for <Association:>

The specified association has two (or more) ends (roles) with the same name. One of the well-formedness rules in UML 1.3 for associations, is that all end (role) names must be unique.

This ensures that there can be unambiguous reference to the ends of the association.

To fix this, manually select the association and change the names of one or more of the offending ends (roles) using the button 2 pop-up menu or the property sheet.

## 13.4.5. Role name conflicts with member

A suggestions that good design avoids role names for associations that clash with attributes or operations of the source class. Roles may be realized in the code as attributes or operations, causing code generation problems.

## 13.4.6. Choose a Name (Classes and Interfaces)

The class or interface concerned has been given no name (it will appear in the model as anon). Suggestion that good design requires that all interfaces and classes are named.

## 13.4.7. Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (Classes and Interfaces)

Suggestion that the class or interface specified has the same name as another (in the namespace), which is bad design and will prevent valid code generation.

## 13.4.8. Choose a Name (Attributes)

The attribute concerned has been given no name (it will appear in the model as anon). Suggestion that good design requires that all attributes are named.

## 13.4.9. Choose a Name (Operations)

The operation concerned has been given no name (it will appear in the model as anon). Suggestion that good design

requires that all operations are named.

### 13.4.10. Choose a Name (States)

The state concerned has been given no name (it will appear in the model as anon). Suggestion that good design requires that all states are named.

### 13.4.11. Choose a Unique Name for <artifact> (States)

Suggestion that the state specified has the same name as another (in the current state diagram), which is bad design and will prevent valid code generation.

### 13.4.12. Revise Name to Avoid Confusion

Two names in the same namespace have very similar names (differing only by one character). Suggestion this could potentially lead to confusion.



#### Caution

This critic can be particularly annoying, since at times it is useful and good design to have a series of artifacts `var1`, `var2` etc.

It is important to remember that critics offer guidance, and are not always correct. ArgoUML lets you dismiss the resulting to-do items through the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*).

### 13.4.13. Choose a Legal Name

All artifact names in ArgoUML must use only letters, digits and underscore characters. This critic suggests an entity has not met this requirement.

### 13.4.14. Change <artifact> to a Non-Reserved Word

Suggestion that this artifact's name is the same as a reserved word in UML (or within one character of one), which is not permitted.

### 13.4.15. Choose a Better Operation Name

Suggestion that an operation has not followed the naming convention that operation names begin with lower case letters.



#### Caution

Following the Java and C++ convention most designers give their constructors the same name as the class, which begins with an upper case character. In the current release of ArgoUML, this will trigger this critic, unless the constructor is stereotyped «create».

It is important to remember that critics offer guidance, and are not always correct. ArgoUML lets you dismiss the resulting to-do items through the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*).

### 13.4.16. Choose a Better Attribute Name

Suggestion that an attribute has not followed the naming convention that attribute names begin with lower case let-

ters.

### 13.4.17. Capitalize Class Name <class>

Suggestion that a class has not followed the naming convention that classes begin with upper case letters.



#### Note

Although not triggering this critic, the same convention should apply to interfaces.

### 13.4.18. Revise Package Name <artifact>

Suggestion that a package has not followed the naming convention of using lower case letters with periods used to indicated sub-packages.

## 13.5. Storage

Critics concerning attributes of classes.

The current version of ArgoUML has four critics in this category.

### 13.5.1. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.4.2, “Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict#”).

### 13.5.2. Add Instance Variables to <class>

Suggestion that no instance variables have been specified for the given class. Such classes may be created to specify static attributes and methods, but by convention should be given the stereotype «utility».



#### Warning

In the current version of ArgoUML this critic triggers for all classes whether or not they have attributes, so should be treated with caution.

It is important to remember that critics offer guidance, and are not always correct. ArgoUML lets you dismiss the resulting to-do items through the to-do pane (see Chapter 11, *The To-Do Pane*).

### 13.5.3. Add Constructor to <class>

You have not yet defined a constructor for class *class*. Constructors initialize new instances such that their attributes have valid values. This class probably needs a constructor because not all of its attributes have initial values.

Defining good constructors is key to establishing class invariants, and class invariants are a powerful aid in writing solid code.

To fix this, add a constructor manually by clicking on *class* in the explorer and adding an operation using the context sensitive pop-up menu in the property tab, or select *class* where it appears on a class diagram and use the Add Operation tool.

In the UML 1.3 standard, a constructor is an operation with the stereotype «create». Although not strictly standard,

ArgoUML will also accept «Create» as a stereotype for constructors.

By convention in Java and C++ a constructor has the same name as the class, is not static, and returns no value. ArgoUML will also accept any operation that follows these conventions as a constructor even if it is not stereotyped «create».



### Caution

Operators are created in ArgoUML with a default return parameter (named `return`). You will need to remove this parameter to meet the Java/C++ convention.

## 13.5.4. Reduce Attributes on <class>

Suggestion that the class has too many attributes for a good design, and is at risk of becoming a design bottleneck.

## 13.6. Planned Extensions

Critics concerning interfaces and subclasses.



### Note

It is not clear why this category has the name “Planned Extensions#.

The current version of ArgoUML has three critics in this category.

### 13.6.1. Operations in Interfaces must be public

Suggestion that there is no point in having non-public operations in Interfaces, since they must be visible to be realized by a class.

### 13.6.2. Interfaces may only have operations

Suggestion that an interfaces has attributes defined. The UML standard defines interfaces to have operations.



### Caution

The current version of ArgoUML no longer allows you to add attributes to interfaces, so this should never occur in ArgoUML model. It might trigger if a project has been loaded with XMI created by another tool.

### 13.6.3. Remove Reference to Specific Subclass

Suggestion that in a good design, a class should not reference its subclasses directly through attributes, operations or associations.

## 13.7. MState Machines

Critics concerning state machines.



## Note

The correct title for this category should be `State Machines`. This is raised as an issue to be fixed in a future version of ArgoUML

The current version of ArgoUML has 14 critics in this category.

### 13.7.1. Reduce Transitions on `<state>`

Suggestion given state is involved in so many transitions it may be a maintenance bottleneck.

### 13.7.2. Reduce States in machine `<machine>`

Suggestion that the given state machine has so many states as to be confusing and should be simplified (perhaps by breaking into several machines, or using a hierarchy).

### 13.7.3. Add Transitions to `<state>`

Suggestion that the given state requires both incoming and outgoing transitions.

### 13.7.4. Add Incoming Transitions to `<artifact>`

Suggestion that the given state requires incoming transitions.

### 13.7.5. Add Outgoing Transitions from `<artifact>`

Suggestion that the given state requires outgoing transitions.

### 13.7.6. Remove Extra Initial States

Suggestion that there is more than one initial state in the state machine or composite state, which is not permitted in UML.

### 13.7.7. Place an Initial State

Suggestion that there is no initial state in the state machine or composite state.

### 13.7.8. Add Trigger or Guard to Transition

Suggestion that a transition is missing either a trigger or guard, one at least of which is required for it to be taken.

### 13.7.9. Change Join Transitions

Suggestion that the join pseudostate has an invalid number of transitions. Normally there should be one outgoing and two or more incoming.

### 13.7.10. Change Fork Transitions

Suggestion that the fork pseudostate has an invalid number of transitions. Normally there should be one incoming and two or more outgoing.

## 13.7.11. Change Branch Transitions

Suggestion that the branch pseudostate has an invalid number of transitions. Normally there should be one incoming and two or more outgoing.

## 13.7.12. Add Guard to Transition

Suggestion that the transition requires a guard.



### Caution

It is not clear that this is a valid critic. It is perfectly acceptable to have a transition without a guard—the transition is always taken when the trigger is invoked.

## 13.7.13. Clean Up Diagram

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.3.3, “Clean Up Diagram#).

## 13.7.14. Make Edge More Visible

Suggestion that an edge artifact such as an association or abstraction is so short it may be missed. Move the connected artifacts apart to make the edge more visible.

# 13.8. Design Patterns

Critics concerning design pattern usage in ArgoUML.

These relate to the use of patterns as described by the so called “Gang of Four#. ArgoUML also uses this category for critics associated with deployment and sequence diagrams. The current version of ArgoUML has 16 critics in this category.

## 13.8.1. Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class>

*class* has no non-static attributes nor any associations that are navigable away from instances of this class. This means that every instance of this class will be identical to every other instance, since there will be nothing about the instances that can differentiate them.

Under these circumstances you should consider making explicit that you have exactly one instance of this class, by using the singleton Pattern. Using the singleton pattern can save time and memory space. Within ArgoUML this can be done by using the «singleton» stereotype on this class.

If it is not your intent to have a single instance, you should define instance variables (i.e. non-static attributes) and/or outgoing associations that will represent differences between instances.

Having specified *class* as a singleton, you need to define the class so there can only be a single instance. This will complete the information representation part of your design. To achieve this you need to do the following.

1. You must define a static attribute (a class variable) holding the instance. This must therefore have *class* as its type.
2. You must have only private constructors so that new instances cannot be made by other code. The creation of the single instance could be through a suitable helper operation, which invokes this private constructor just once.

3. You must have at least one constructor to override the default constructor, so that the default constructor is not used to create multiple instances.

For the definition of a constructor under the UML 1.3 standard, and extensions to that definition accepted by ArgoUML see Section 13.5.3, “Add Constructor to <class>#”.

### 13.8.2. Singleton Stereotype Violated in <class>

This class is marked with the «singleton» stereotype, but it does not satisfy the constraints imposed on singletons (ArgoUML will also accept «Singleton» stereotype as defining a singleton). A singleton class can have at most one instance. This means that the class must meet the design criteria for a singleton (see Section 13.8.1, “Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class>#”).

Whenever you mark a class with a stereotype, the class should satisfy all constraints of the stereotype. This is an important part of making a self-consistent and understangle design. Using the singleton pattern can save time and memory space.

If you no longer want this class to be a singleton, remove the «singleton» stereotype by clicking on the class and selecting the blank selection on the stereotype drop-down within the properties tab.

To apply the singleton pattern you should follow the directions in Section 13.8.1, “Consider using Singleton Pattern for <class>#”.

### 13.8.3. Nodes normally have no enclosers

A suggestion that nodes should not be drawn inside other artifacts on the deployment diagram, since they represent an autonomous physical object.

### 13.8.4. NodeInstances normally have no enclosers

A suggestion that node instances should not be drawn inside other artifacts on the deployment diagram, since they represent an autonomous physical object.

### 13.8.5. Components normally are inside nodes

A suggestion that components represent the logical entities within physical nodes, and so should be drawn within a node, where nodes are shown on the deployment diagram.

### 13.8.6. ComponentInstances normally are inside nodes

A suggestion that component instances represent the logical entities within physical nodes, and so should be drawn within a node instance, where node instances are shown on the deployment diagram.

### 13.8.7. Classes normally are inside components

A suggestion that classes, as artifacts making up components, should be drawn within components on the deployment diagram.

### 13.8.8. Interfaces normally are inside components

A suggestion that interfaces, as artifacts making up components, should be drawn within components on the deployment diagram.



### 13.8.9. Objects normally are inside components

A suggestion that objects, as instances of artifacts making up components, should be drawn within components or component instances on the deployment diagram.

### 13.8.10. LinkEnds have not the same locations

A suggestion that a link (e.g. association) connecting objects on a deployment diagram has one end in a component and the other in a component instance (since objects can be in either). This makes no sense.

### 13.8.11. Set classifier (Deployment Diagram)

Suggestion that there is an instance (object) without an associated classifier (class, datatype) on a deployment diagram.

### 13.8.12. Missing return-actions

Suggestion that a sequence diagram has a send or call action without a corresponding return action.

### 13.8.13. Missing call(send)-action

Suggestion that a sequence diagram has a return action, but no preceding call or send action.

### 13.8.14. No Stimuli on these links

Suggestion that a sequence diagram has a link connecting objects without an associated stimulus (without which the link is meaningless).



#### Warning

Triggering this critic indicates a serious problem, since ArgoUML provides no mechanism for creating a link without a stimulus. It probably indicates that the diagram was created by loading a corrupt project, with an XMI file describing a link without a stimulus, possibly created by a tool other than ArgoUML.

### 13.8.15. Set Classifier (Sequence Diagram)

Suggestion that there is an object without an associated classifier (class, datatype) on a sequence diagram.

### 13.8.16. Wrong position of these stimuli

Suggestion that the initiation of send/call-return message exchanges in a sequence diagram does not properly initiate from left to right.

## 13.9. Relationships

Critics concerning associations in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has seven critics in this category.

### 13.9.1. Circular Association

Suggestion that an association class has roles that refer back directly to itself, which is not permitted.



### Warning

This critic is meaningless in the current version of ArgoUML which does not support association classes. In addition the current code would never trigger, even if an association class were created.

## 13.9.2. Make <association> Navigable

Suggestion that the association referred to is not navigable in either direction. This is permitted in the UML standard, but has no obvious meaning in any practical design.

## 13.9.3. Remove Navigation from Interface via <association>

Associations involving an interface can be not be navigable in the direction from the interface. This is because interfaces contain only operation declarations and cannot hold pointers to other objects.

This part of the design should be changed before you can generate code from this design. If you do generate code before fixing this problem, the code will not match the design.

To fix this, select the association and use the `Properties` tab to select in turn each association end that is *not* connected to the interface. Uncheck `Navigable` for each of these ends.

The association should then appear with a stick arrowhead pointed towards the interface



### Note

In an ideal world, ArgoUML would not permit associations to be created that were navigable from interfaces.



### Warning

The current version of ArgoUML has a known defect where it creates an association between a class and interface that is either navigable in both directions, or navigable only from the interface to the class. The fix is to remove the navigation from the class end of the association and if necessary add navigation to the interface end (navigation refers to navigability *towards* the end) if this critic is triggered.

## 13.9.4. Add Associations to <artifact>

Suggestion that the specified artifact (actor, use case or class) has no associations connecting it to other artifacts. This is required for the artifact to be useful in a design.

## 13.9.5. Remove Reference to Specific Subclass

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.6.3, “Remove Reference to Specific Subclass#”).

## 13.9.6. Reduce Associations on <artifact>

Suggestion that the given artifact (actor, use case, class or interface) has so many associations it may be a mainte-

nance bottleneck.

### 13.9.7. Make Edge More Visible

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.7.14, “Make Edge More Visible#).

## 13.10. Instantiation

Critics concerning instantiation of classifiers in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has no critics in this category.

## 13.11. Modularity

Critics concerning modular development in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has two critics in this category.

### 13.11.1. Classifier not in Namespace of its Association

One of the well-formedness rules in UML 1.3 for associations, is that all the classifiers attached to the ends of the association should belong to the same namespace as the association.

If this were not the case, there would be no naming, by which each end could refer to all the others.

This critic is triggered when an association does not meet this criterion. The solution is to delete the association, and recreate it on a diagram, whose namespace includes those of all the attached classifiers.



#### Caution

In the current implementation of ArgoUML this critic does not handle hierarchical namespaces. As a consequence it will trigger for associations where the immediate namespaces of the attached classifiers is different, even though they are part of the same namespace hierarchy.

### 13.11.2. Add Elements to Package <package>

Suggestion that the specified package has no content. Good design suggests packages are created to put things in.



#### Note

This will always trigger when you first create a package, since you cannot create one that is not empty!

## 13.12. Expected Usage

Critics concerning generally accepted good practice in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has one critic in this category.

### 13.12.1. Clean Up Diagram

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.3.3, “Clean Up Diagram#).

## 13.13. Methods

Critics concerning operations in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has four critics in this category.

### 13.13.1. Change Names or Signatures in <artifact>

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.4.3, “Change Names or Signatures in <artifact>#”).

### 13.13.2. Class Must be Abstract

Suggestion that a class that inherits or defines abstract operations must be marked abstract.

### 13.13.3. Add Operations to <class>

Suggestion that the specified class has no operations defined. This is required for the class to be useful in a design.

### 13.13.4. Reduce Operations on <artifact>

Suggestion that the artifact (class or interface) has too many operations for a good design, and is at risk of becoming a design bottleneck.

## 13.14. Code Generation

Critics concerning code generation in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has one critic in this category.

### 13.14.1. Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces

Suggestion that a class has multiple generalizations, which is permitted by UML, but cannot be generated into Java code, because Java does not support multiple inheritance.

## 13.15. Stereotypes

Critics concerning stereotypes in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has no critics in this category.

## 13.16. Inheritance

Critics concerning generalization and specialization in ArgoUML.

The current version of ArgoUML has ten critics in this category.

### 13.16.1. Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.4.2, “Revise Attribute Names to Avoid Conflict#”).

## 13.16.2. Remove <class>'s Circular Inheritance

Suggestion that a class inherits from itself, through a chain of generalizations, which is not permitted.



### Caution

This critic is marked inactive by default in the current release of ArgoUML (the only one so marked). It will not trigger unless made active.

## 13.16.3. Class Must be Abstract

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.13.2, “Class Must be Abstract#”).

## 13.16.4. Remove final keyword or remove subclasses

Suggestion that a class that is final has specializations, which is not permitted in UML.

## 13.16.5. Illegal Generalization

Suggestion that there is a generalization between artifacts of different UML metaclasses, which is not permitted.



### Caution

It is not clear that such a generalization can be created within ArgoUML. It probably indicates that the diagram was created by loading a corrupt project, with an XMI file describing such a generalization, possibly created by a tool other than ArgoUML.

## 13.16.6. Remove Unneeded Realizes from <class>

Suggestion that the specified class has a realization relationship both directly and indirectly to the same interface (by realization from two interfaces, one of which is a generalization of the other for example). Good design deprecates such duplication.

## 13.16.7. Define Concrete (Sub)Class

Suggestion that a class is abstract with no concrete subclasses, and so can never be realized.

## 13.16.8. Define Class to Implement <interface>

Suggestion that the interface referred to has no influence on the running system, since it is never implemented by a class.

## 13.16.9. Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.14.1, “Change Multiple Inheritance to interfaces#”).

## 13.16.10. Make Edge More Visible

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.7.14, “Make Edge More Visible#”).

## 13.17. Containment

Critics concerning containment in ArgoUML, that is where one artifact forms a component part of another.

The current version of ArgoUML has six critics in this category.

### 13.17.1. Remove Circular Composition

Suggestion that there is a series of composition relationships (associations with black diamonds) that form a cycle, which is not permitted.

### 13.17.2. Duplicate Parameter Name

Suggestion that a parameter list to an operation or event has two or more parameters with the same name, which is not permitted.

### 13.17.3. Two Aggregate Ends (Roles) in Binary Association

Only one end (role) of a binary association can be aggregate or composite. This a well-formedness rule of the UML 1.3 standard.

Aggregation and composition are used to indicate whole-part relationships, and by definition, the “part# end cannot be aggregate.

To fix this, identify the “part# end of the association, and use the critic wizard (the `Next>` button, or manually set its aggregation to `none` using the button 2 pop-up menu or the property sheet.

Composition (more correctly called composite aggregation) is used where there is a whole-part relationship that is one-to-one or one-to-many, and the lifetime of the part is inextricably tied to the lifetime of the whole. Instances of the whole will have responsibility for creating and destroying instances of the associated part. This also means that a class can only be a part in one composite aggregation.

An example of a composite aggregation might be a database of cars and their wheels. This is a one-to-four relationship, and the database entry for a wheel is associated with its car. When the car ceases to exist in the database, so do its wheels.

Aggregation (more correctly called shared aggregation) is used where there is a whole-part relationship, that does not meet the criteria for a composite aggregation. An example might be a database of university courses and the students that attend them. There is a whole-part relationship between courses and students. However there is no lifetime relationship between students and course (a student continues to exist even after a course is finished) and the relationship is many-to-many.

### 13.17.4. Aggregate End (Role) in 3-way (or More) Association

Three-way (or more) associations can not have aggregate ends (roles). This a well-formedness rule of the UML 1.3 standard.

Aggregation and composition are used to indicate whole-part relationships, and by definition can only apply to binary associations between artifacts.

To fix this, manually select the association, and set the aggregation of each of its ends (roles) to `none` using the button 2 pop-up menu or the property sheet.

### 13.17.5. Wrap DataType

This critic is discussed under an earlier design issues category (see Section 13.3.1, “Wrap DataType#”).

## 13.17.6. Import Parameter Type into Class

Suggestion that the type of a parameter used within an operation of a class is not visible.



### **Warning**

It is not clear how this can ever be caused within ArgoUML. In any case this critic can never trigger in the current implementation of ArgoUML.

---

# Chapter 14. ArgoUML Top Level Artifact Reference

## 14.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within ArgoUML. The chapter covers top-level “general# artifacts. The following chapters (see Chapter 15, *ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference* through Chapter 21, *ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference*) cover each of the ArgoUML diagrams.

There is a close relationship between this material and the properties tab of the details pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

## 14.2. The Model

The model is the top level artifact within ArgoUML. In the UML meta-model it is a sub-class of package. In many respects within ArgoUML it behaves similarly to a package (see Section 16.2, “Package#).



### Note

ArgoUML is restricted to one model within the tool.

Where standard data types, classes and packages are loaded (the default, see Chapter 22, *ArgoUML Built In DataTypes, Classes, Interfaces and Stereotypes*), these are sub-packages of the model. These sub-packages are not initially present in the model but are added to the model when used.

### 14.2.1. Model Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for the model are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 14.2.2, “Model Property Toolbar# and Section 14.2.3, “Property Fields For The Model# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Source	Standard tab. This contains a template package declaration appropriate to the entire model. In the future this would be part of the code generation activity.
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for Model within the UML meta-model.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML meta-model, Model has the following standard tagged values defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• derived (from the superclass, ModelElement). Values true, meaning the class is redundant — it can be formally derived from other elements, or false meaning it cannot.</li></ul>



Derived models have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.

## 14.2.2. Model Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model.

Since the model is the top package nothing will happen.



Add Package

This creates a new Package (see Section 16.2, “Package#”) within the model (which appears on no diagram), navigating immediately to the properties tab for that package.



### Tip

While it can make sense to create Packages of the model this way, it is usually a lot clearer to create them within diagrams where you want them.



Delete

This has no effect. It is meaningless to delete the model!

## 14.2.3. Property Fields For The Model

Name

Text box. The name of the model. The name of a model, like all packages, is by convention all lower case.



### Note

The default name supplied to a new model by ArgoUML, `untitled-Model`, is thus erroneous and guarantees that ArgoUML always starts up with at least one problem being reported by the design critics.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Model is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for model (`systemModel` and `metamodel`) and package (`facade`, `framework`, `stub`).

Stereotyping models is a useful thing, although it is of limited value in ArgoUML where you have only a single model.

Navigate Stereotype



icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the model. This is the package hierarchy. However since the model is at the top of the hierarchy in ArgoUML, this box is always empty.

**Visibility**

Radio box, with entries `public`, `protected`, and `private`.

Records the visibility for the model. Ince ArgoUML only permits one model, this has no meaningful use.

**Modifiers**

Check box, with entries `Abstract`, `Leaf` and `Root`.

- `abstract` is used to declare that this model cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.

The meaning of `abstract` applied to a model is not that clear. It might mean that the model contains interfaces or abstract classes without realizations. Since ArgoUML only permits one model, this is not a meaningful box to check.

- `Leaf` indicates that this model can have no further subpackages, while `root` indicates it is the top level model.

Within ArgoUML `root` only meaningfully applies to the Model, since all packages sit within the model. In the absence of the `topLevel` stereotype, this could be used to emphasize that the Model is at the top level.

**Generalizations**

Text area. Lists any model that *generalizes* this model.

**Caution**

Since there is only one model in ArgoUML there is no sensible specialization or generalization that could be created.

**Specializations**

Text box. Lists any specialized model (i.e. for which this model is a generalization).

**Caution**

Since there is only one model in ArgoUML there is no sensible specialization or generalization that could be created.

**Owned Elements**

Text area. A listing of the top level packages, classes, interfaces, datatypes, actors, use cases, associations, generalizations, and stereotypes within the model.

Button 1 click on any of the artifacts yields navigates to that artifact.

## 14.3. Datatype

Datatypes can be thought of as simple classes. They have no attributes, and any operations on them must have no side-effects. A useful analogy is primitive datatypes in a language like Java. The integer “3#” stands on its own—it has no inner structure. There are operations (for example addition) on the integers, but when I perform  $3 + 4$  the result is a new number, “4#” and “3#” are unchanged by the exercise.

Within UML 1.3, `DataType` is a sub-class of the `Classifier` metaclass. It embraces the predefined primitive types (`byte`, `char`, `double`, `float`, `int`, `long` and `short`), the predefined enumeration, `boolean` and user defined *enumeration types*.

**Note**

`void` is implemented as a class rather than a datatype within ArgoUML

**Note**

UML 1.3 allows user defined datatypes to be placed on class diagrams. This is not permitted in ArgoUML.

## 14.3.1. Datatype Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for datatypes are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 14.3.2, “Datatype Property Toolbar# and Section 14.3.3, “Property Fields For Datatype# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab, but with no effect. In a future version of ArgoUML the <code>Attributes</code> and <code>Operations</code> tick boxes will control the display of literals and operations defined for the datatype.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab. Unused. One would expect a class declaration for the new datatype to support code generation.
<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Datatype</code> (or <code>Enumeration</code> within the UML metamodel.
<code>Tagged Values</code>	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Datatype</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.

**Tip**

Since user defined datatypes are enumerations, they have no state to preserve, and the value of this tagged value is irrelevant.

- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of the semantics of the datatype.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the class is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.

**Tip**


While formally available, a derived datatype does not have an obvi-

ous value, and so datatypes should always be marked with `derived=false`.

## 14.3.2. Datatype Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.

 New datatype

This creates a new datatype (see Section 16.5, “Class#”) within the same package as the current datatype.



### Tip

While it can make sense to create datatypes this way, it can be clearer to create them within the package or model where you want them.



Add enumeration literal

This creates a new enumeration literal within the datatype, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that literal.



### Caution

ArgoUML does not actually have a separate concept of a literal. The navigation will navigate to the property sheet for an attribute of a class (see Section 16.6, “Attribute#”). When defining a literal, all that matters is its name. Other parts of the attribute property sheet should be ignored. Also the name of the literal must obey the rules for an Attribute or a critic will fire.



Delete

This deletes the datatype from the model.

## 14.3.3. Property Fields For Datatype

Name

Text box. The name of the datatype. The primitive datatypes all have lower case names, but there is no formal convention.



### Note

The default name supplied for a newly created datatype is the empty string “#”. Datatypes with empty string names will appear with the name (anon Datatype) in the explorer.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Package is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for classifier (metaclass, powertype, process, thread and utility).

**Tip**

`enumeration` should always be used as the stereotype of any created datatypes.

**Caution**

In version 0.14 the `enumeration` must be created the first time it is used.

**Navigate Stereotype**  icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

**Namespace** Drop down selector. Records the namespace for the datatype. This is the package hierarchy.

**Modifiers** Check box, with entries `Abstract`, `Leaf` and `Root`.

- `Abstract` is used to declare that this datatype cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.

**Note**

ArgoUML provides no mechanism for specializing datatypes, so this check box is of little use.

- `Leaf` indicates that this datatype can have no further sub-types, while `Root` indicates it is a top level datatype.

**Tip**

In the absence of specialization of datatypes within ArgoUML these have little value. In effect all datatypes are both `Root` and `Final`

**Generalizations** Text area. Lists any datatype that *generalizes* this datatype.

**Caution**

It is not clear that generalizing datatypes makes much sense.

**Specializations** Text box. Lists any specialized datatype (i.e. for which this datatype is a generalization).

**Caution**

It is not clear that specializing datatypes makes much sense.

**Dependency** Text box. Lists any abstract classes or interfaces realized by this datatype. By default

this is empty.



### Caution

It is not clear that Dependency datatypes makes much sense.

#### Operations

Text area. Lists all the operations defined on this datatype. Button 1 click navigates to the selected operation.

See Section 16.7, “Operation# for details of operations.



### Caution

ArgoUML treats all operations as equivalent. Any operations created here will use the same mechanism as operations for classes. Remember that operations on datatypes must have no side effects (they are read-only). This means the `query` modifier *must* be checked for all operations.

#### Literals

Text area. Lists all the literals defined for this datatype. Button 1 click navigates to the selected literal, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected literal.
- New. Add a new literal and navigate to it.
- Delete. Removes the selected literal from the model.




### Caution

ArgoUML does not actually have a separate concept of a literal. The navigations listed above will all navigate to the property sheet for an attribute of a class (see Section 16.6, “Attribute#). When defining a literal, all that matters is its name. Other parts of the attribute property sheet should be ignored.

## 14.4. Stereotypes

Stereotypes are the main extension mechanism of UML, providing a way to derive specializations of the standard metaclasses. `Stereotype` is a sub-class of `GeneralizableElement` in the UML metamodel. Stereotypes are supplemented by *constraints* and *tagged values*.

New stereotypes are added from the stereotype property tab itself (see below). Properties of existing stereotypes can be reached by selecting the property tab for any artifact with that stereotype and using the navstereo button () within the property tab.

### 14.4.1. Stereotype Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for stereotypes are as follows.



## Note

The *Style* tab is grayed out, since a stereotype has no representation on a diagram.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 14.4.2, “Stereotype Property Toolbar# and Section 14.4.3, “Property Fields For Stereotype# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Source	Standard tab. This contains the representation of the stereotype on diagrams (its name between « and »).



## Warning

You can edit this entry, but it has no effect and when you return to the entry it will be restored to its original value.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for Stereotypes within the UML metamodel.
-------------	---



## Caution

It is currently not possible to create constraints for Stereotypes so the Constraints tab is not active.

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, Stereotype has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the class is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



## Note

This indicates any element with this stereotype has the `derived` tag set accordingly.




## Caution

Tagged values for a stereotype are rather different to those for elements in the UML core architecture, in that they apply to all artifacts to which the stereotype is applied, *not* just the stereotype itself.


## 14.4.2. Stereotype Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model.

 Add stereotype

This creates a new stereotype (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”) within the model (which appears on no diagram), navigating immediately to the properties tab for that stereotype.

 Delete

This deletes the stereotype from the model.

### 14.4.3. Property Fields For Stereotype

Name

Text box. The name of the stereotype. There is no convention for naming stereotypes, beyond starting them with a lower case letter. Even the standard UML stereotypes vary between all lower case (e.g. `metamodel`), bumpy caps (e.g. `systemModel`) and space separated (e.g. `object model`).



#### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for stereotypes

Base Class

Drop down selector. Any stereotype must be derived from one of the metaclasses in the UML metamodel (`Abstraction`, `Association`, `AssociationEnd`, `BehavioralFeature`, `CallEvent`, `Class`, `Classifier`, `Collaboration`, `Comment`, `Component`, `Constraint`, `DataType`, `Dependency`, `Flow`, `Generalization`, `Model`, `ModelElement`, `ObjectFlowState`, `Package`, `Permission`, `Subsystem` and `Usage`) or the artifact classes that derive from them. The stereotype will then be available to artifacts that derive from that same metaclass or that artifact.

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the stereotype. This is the package hierarchy.

Modifiers

Check box, with entries `abstract`, `final` and `root`.

- `abstract` is used to declare that artifacts that use this stereotype cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.
- `final` indicates that artifacts that use this stereotype can have no further subtypes, while `root` indicates it is a top level artifact.



#### Caution

Remember that these modifiers apply to the artifacts using the stereotype, not just the stereotype.



#### Warning

ArgoUML neither imposes, nor checks that artifacts using a stereotype adopt the stereotype's modifiers.

Generalizations

Text area. Lists any stereotype that *generalizes* this stereotype.





## Caution

It is not clear that generalizing stereotypes makes much sense.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram. You will need to find it in the explorer and add it from there.



## Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- Delete. The link from the generalization to the stereotype (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.



## Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

### Specializations

Text box. Lists any specialized stereotype (i.e. for which this stereotype is a generalization).



## Caution

It is not clear that specializing stereotypes makes much sense.

button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram.



## Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- Delete. The link from the generalization to the stereotype (*but not the generaliza-*

tion itself) is removed.



### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

## 14.5. ArgoUML Diagrams

ArgoUML supports all eight primary types of diagrams defined by UML 1.3: i) use case; ii) class; iii) sequence; iv) state; v) collaboration; vi) activity; vii) component and viii) deployment. They are created using the `Create Diagram` drop down menu (see Section 12.6, “The Create Diagram Menu#”).



### Note

ArgoUML uses its deployment diagram to create both UML 1.3 component and deployment diagrams.



### Caution

State and activity diagrams are associated with a particular class, and can only be created when a class has been selected. In the current version of ArgoUML they are not grayed out even when a class is not selected. However under these circumstances they will have no effect.



### Warning

There is currently no support for the UML 1.3 object diagram as a variant of the class diagram. It is possible to create simple object diagrams within the ArgoUML deployment diagram.



### Caution

Up until the version 0.14 the sequence diagrams were implemented incorrectly w.r.t. the UML model. For this reason it is in 0.14 no longer possible to create sequence diagrams. In an upcoming release correctly implemented sequence diagrams will be available.

### 14.5.1. Diagram Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for diagrams are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 14.5.2, “Property Fields For Diagram# below.

### 14.5.2. Property Fields For Diagram

Name

The name of the diagram. There are no conventions for naming diagrams. By default, ArgoUML uses the (space separated) diagram name and a sequence number, thus use `case diagram 1`.

---

# Chapter 15. ArgoUML Use Case Diagram Artifact Reference

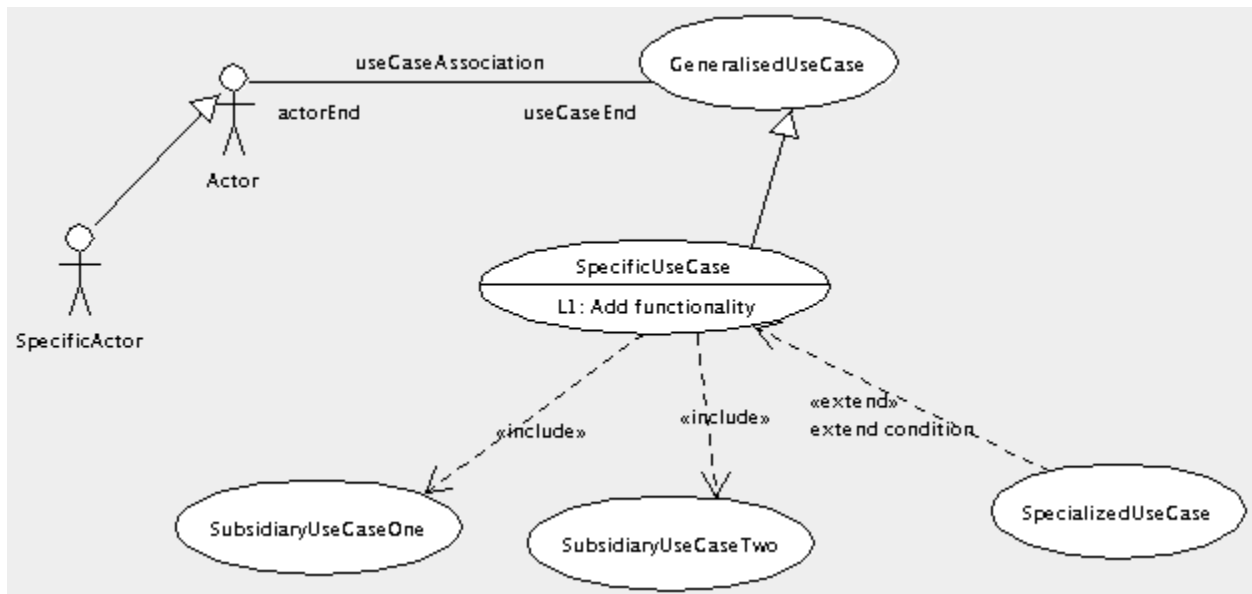
## 15.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within a use case diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

There is a close relationship between this material and the properties tab of the details pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

Figure 15.1 shows a use case diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 15.1. Possible artifacts on a use case diagram.**



### 15.1.1. ArgoUML Limitations Concerning Use Case Diagrams

Use case diagrams are now well supported within ArgoUML. The only limitation is that extension points cannot be shown in a separate compartment on the use case.



#### Note

Earlier versions of ArgoUML (0.9 and earlier) implemented extend and include relationships by using a stereotyped dependency relationship. Although such diagrams will show correctly on the diagram, they will not link correctly to the use cases, and should be replaced by proper extend and include relationships using the current system.

## 15.2. Actor

An actor represents any external entity (human or machine) that interacts with the system, providing input, receiving output, or both.

Within the UML metamodel, actor is a sub-class of `classifier`.

The actor icon is a stick man (see Figure 15.1).

## 15.2.1. Actor Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for actors are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 15.2.2, “Actor Property Toolbar# and Section 15.2.3, “Property Fields For Actor# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab. Fill color is used for the stick man's head.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab. It would not be usual to provide any code for an actor, since it is external to the system.



### Note

The source tab content can be changed, but this has no effect.

<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Actor</code> within the UML metamodel so this is greyed out.
<code>Tagged Values</code>	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Actor</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.



### Tip

Actors sit outside the system, and so their internal behavior is of little concern, and this tagged value is best ignored.

- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of the semantics of the actor.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the actor is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived actors have limited value, since they sit outside the system being designed. They may have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts.

## 15.2.2. Actor Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model.



Add Actor

This creates a new actor within the model, (but not within the diagram), navigating immediately to the properties tab for that actor.



### Tip

This method of creating new actors can be confusing. Much better to create them within diagrams where you want them.



Delete

This deletes the selected actor from the model.



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an actor from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete).

## 15.2.3. Property Fields For Actor

Name

Text box. The name of the actor. Since an actor is a classifier, it would be conventional to Capitalize the first letter (and initial letters of any component words), e.g. RemoteSensor.




### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for actors

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Actor is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes (metaclass, powertype, process, thread, utility) for classifiers. Stereotypes are of limited value with actors. The stereotypes machine, organization, person and singleton are probably of most use. However, they are not provided by default with ArgoUML.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the actor. This is the package hierarchy.

Modifiers

Check box, with entries Abstract, Leaf and Root.

- Abstract is used to declare that this actor cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.



## Caution

While actors can be specialized and generalized, it is not clear that an abstract actor has any meaning. Perhaps it might be used to indicate an actor that does not itself interact with a use case, but whose children do.

- `leaf` indicates that this actor can have no further children, while `Root` indicates it is a top level actor with no parent.

### Generalizations

Text area. Lists any actor that *generalizes* this actor.

Button 1 Double Click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

### Specializations

Text box. Lists any specialized actor (i.e. for which this actor is a generalization. The specialized actors can communicate with the same use case instances as this actor.

button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

### Associations

Text area. Lists any associations connected to the actor. Button 1 Double Click on an association will navigate to that association.

## 15.3. Use Case

A use case represents a complete meaningful “chunk# of activity by the system in relation to its external users (actors), human or machine. It represents the primary route through which requirements are captured for the system under construction

Within the UML metamodel, use case is a sub-class of `classifier`.

The use case icon is an oval (see Figure 15.1). It may be split in two, with the lower compartment showing extension points



## Caution

By default ArgoUML does not show the extension point compartment. It may be revealed by the context sensitive Show menu (using button 2 click), or from the Style tab.



## Warning

The current release of ArgoUML does not preserve information about whether the extension point compartment is showing on save. On reload, no compartments will be visible.

### 15.3.1. Use Case Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for use cases are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 15.3.2, “Use Case Property Toolbar# and Section 15.3.3, “Property Fields For Use Case# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Style	Standard tab. Fill color is used for the use case oval.  The <code>Display: Extension Points</code> check box is used to control whether an extension point compartment is displayed.



### Caution

The `Shadow` field has no effect on use cases.

Source	Standard tab. It would not be usual to provide any code for a use case, since it is primarily a vehicle for capturing requirements about the system under construction, not creating the solution.
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>UseCase</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>UseCase</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.



### Tip

In general the instantiation of use cases is not a major aspect of any design method (they are mostly concerned with requirements capture. For most OOA&D methodologies, this tag can safely be ignored.

- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of the semantics of the use case.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the use case is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note


Derived use cases still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts.

## 15.3.2. Use Case Property Toolbar



Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model.


 Add use case

This creates a new use case within the model, (but not within the diagram), navigating immediately to the properties tab for that use case.



### Tip

This method of creating new use cases can be confusing. Much better to create them within diagrams where you want them.

 Add extension point

This creates a new use extension point within the namespace of the current use case, with the current use case as its associated use case, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that extension point.

 Delete

This deletes the selected use case from the model.



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a use case from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete).

## 15.3.3. Property Fields For Use Case

Name

Text box. The name of the use case. Since a use case is a classifier, it would be conventional to Capitalize the first letter (and initial letters of any component words), e.g. RemoteSensor.




### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for use cases

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Use case is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes (metaclass, powertype, process, thread, utility) for classifiers. Stereotyping can be useful when creating use cases in the problem domain (requirements capture) and solution domain (analysis), but none of the pre-defined stereotypes are well suited to this.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the use case. This is the package hierarchy.

Modifiers

Check box, with entries leaf and root.

- `leaf` indicates that this use case can have no further children, while `root` indicates it is a top level use case with no parent.

#### Extension Points

Text box. If this use case is, or can be extended, this field lists the extension points for the use case.



#### Note

Extension points are listed by their location point rather than their name.

Where an extension point has been created (see below), button 1 Double Click will navigate to that relationship. Button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- New. Add a new extension point and navigate to it, making this use case the owning use case of the extension point.

#### Generalizations

Text area. Lists use cases which are generalizations of this one. Will be set whenever a generalization is created on the from this Use Case. Button 1 Double Click on a generalization will navigate to that generalization.

#### Specializations

Text box. Lists any specialized use case (i.e. for which this use case is a generalization).

button 1 Double Click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

#### Extends

Text box. Lists any class that is extended by this use case.

Where an extends relationship has been created, button 1 Double Click will navigate to that relationship.

#### Includes

Text box. Lists any use case that this use case includes.

Where an include relationship has been created, button 1 Double Click will navigate to that relationship.

## 15.4. Extension Point

An extension point describes a point in a use case where an extending use case may provide additional behavior.

Examples for a travel agent sales system might be the use case for paying for a ticket, which has an extension point in the specification of the payment. Extending use cases may then extend at this point to pay by cash, credit card etc.

Within the UML metamodel, `Extension Point` is a sub-class of `ModelElement`. A use case may display an extension point compartment (see Section 15.3, “Use Case# for details), in which extension points are shown with the following syntax.

*name : location.*

## 15.4.1. Extension Point Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for extension points are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 15.4.2, “Extension Point Property Toolbar# and Section 15.4.3, “Property Fields For Extension Point# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Style	Standard tab



### Note

The `Style` tab is grayed out, since the extension points has no style of their own in the diagram.

Source	Standard tab. It would not be usual to provide any code for an extension point, since it is external to the system.
--------	---



### Note

The source tab content can be changed, but this has no effect.

Constraints	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>ExtensionPoint</code> has no standard constraints defined.
-------------	--



### Note

In the current implementation of ArgoUML it is not possible to set constraints on extension points. For this reason this tab is greyed out.

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>ExtensionPoint</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	---

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the extension point is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.

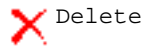


### Note

It is not clear how derived extension points could have any value in analysis.

## 15.4.2. Extension Point Property Toolbar

Go up	Navigate up to the use case which owns this extension point.
-------	--



This deletes the selected extension point from the model.

## 15.4.3. Property Fields For Extension Point

Name

Text box. The name of the extension point.



### Tip

It is quite common to leave extension points unnamed in use case analysis, since they are always listed (within use cases and extend relationships) by their location.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for extension points.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. ArgoUML does not provide any stereotypes for extension points.



### Tip

Stereotyping does not have great value on an extension point.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

Location

Text box. A description of the location of this extension point within the owning use case.



### Tip

Extension points are always listed (within use cases and extend relationships) by their location. Typically this will be the number/name of the paragraph in the specification.

Base Use Case

Text box. Shows the base use case within which this extension point is defined. Button 1 Double Click will navigate to the use case.

Extend

Text box. Lists all use cases which extend the base use case through this extension point.

Where an extending use case exists, button 1 Double Click will navigate to that relationship.

## 15.5. Association

An association on a use case diagram represents a relationship between an actor and a use case showing that actor's involvement in the use case. The invocation of the use case will involve some (significant) change perceived by the actor.

Associations are described fully under class diagrams (see Section 16.10, “Association#”).

## 15.6. Association End

Association ends are described under class diagrams (see Section 16.11, “Association End#”).

## 15.7. Dependency

Dependency is a relationship between two artifacts showing that one depends on the other.



### Caution

Dependency has little use in use case diagrams. It is provided, because earlier versions of ArgoUML used it (incorrectly) to implement include and extends relationships

Within the UML metamodel, `Dependency` is a sub-class of `Relationship`.

Dependency is represented as a dotted line with an open arrow head from the depending artifact to that which it is dependent upon (see Figure 15.1).

### 15.7.1. Dependency Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for dependencies are as follows.



### Note

There is no source tab, since there is no source code that could be generated for a dependency relationship.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 15.7.2, “Dependency Property Toolbar#” and Section 15.7.3, “Property Fields For Dependency#” below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#”.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab



### Note

The values for the bounds of the dependency appear to have no meaning. Changing them has no effect on the diagram. This is sensible behavior, given the dependency is tied to a particular use case.

<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Dependency</code> within the UML metamodel so this is greyed out.
<code>Tagged Values</code>	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Dependency</code> has no tagged values of its own,

but through superclasses has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the dependency relationship is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived dependencies still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts.

## 15.7.2. Dependency Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model. For a dependency this will be the package containing the dependency.

 Delete

This deletes the selected dependency from the model.



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a dependency from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete)`.

## 15.7.3. Property Fields For Dependency

Name

Text box. The name of the dependency.



### Tip

It is quite common to leave dependencies unnamed.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for associations.




### Note

There is no representation of the name of a dependency on the diagram.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Dependency has no standard stereotypes of its own under UML 1.3.n so ArgoUML does not provide any. The stereotype is shown between « and » above or across the generalization.

Navigate Stereotype	 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).
Namespace	Text box. Records the namespace for the dependency. This is the package hierarchy.
Suppliers	<p>Text area. Lists the “depending# ends of the relationship, i.e. the end supplying what is needed by the other end.</p> <p>Button 1 Double Click on a client will navigate to that use case.</p>
Clients	<p>Text area. Lists the “depending# ends of the relationship, i.e. the end supplying what is needed by the other end.</p> <p>Button 1 Double Click on a client will navigate to that use case.</p>

## 15.8. Generalization

Generalization is a relationship between two use cases or two actors. Where A is a generalization of B, it means A describes more general behavior and B a more specific version of that behavior.

Examples for a travel agent sales system might be the use case for making a booking as a generalization of the use case for making a flight booking and a salesman actor being a generalization of a supervisor actor (since supervisors can also act as salesmen, but not vice versa).

Generalization is analogous to class inheritance within OO programming.



### Note

It is easy to confuse *extends* relationships between use cases with generalization. However extends is about augmenting a use case's behavior at a specific point. Generalization is about specializing the behavior throughout the use case.

Within the UML metamodel, Generalization is a sub-class of Relationship.

Generalization is represented as an arrow with white filled head from the specialized use case or actor to the generalized use case or actor (see Figure 15.1).

### 15.8.1. Generalization Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for associations are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 15.8.2, “Generalization Property Toolbar# and Section 15.8.3, “Property Fields For Generalization# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Style	Standard tab



## Note

The values for the bounds of the generalization appear to have no meaning. Changing them has no effect on the diagram. This is sensible behavior, given the generalization is tied to a particular actor and use case.

**Source** Standard tab. You would not expect to generate any code for an association end so this is empty.

**Constraints** Standard tab. ArgoUML does not support constraints on Generalizations so this is greyed out.

In the UML metamodel, *Generalization* has the following standard constraints defined.

- **complete.** Applied to a set of generalizations with the same discriminator (described in Section 15.8.3, “Property Fields For Generalization#) and same parent, indicating that an instance of the parent must be an instance of one of those children.

Where there is only one discriminator, this implies the parent must be abstract.



## Tip

The point of this constraint is to indicate that within the design, no more children are expected to be created for this parent. If more are created, the implication is that there will be significant rework required within the design.

- **disjoint.** Applied to a set of generalizations indicates an instance of the parent must be an instance of no more than one of the children within the set.



## Note

This is the default semantics of generalization

- **incomplete.** The converse of **complete** indicating that within a set of generalizations of the same parent sharing the same discriminator, an instance of the parent need not be an instance of a child within the set (there is no guarantee such an instance exists)

This implies the parent must be concrete.



## Tip

The point of this constraint is to indicate that within the design, more children may be created for this parent. If more are created, the implication is that there should be no significant rework required within the design.

- **overlapping.** The inverse of **disjoint**. Applied to a set of generalizations indicates an instance of one child in the set may simultaneously be an instance of another child within the set (although this is not guaranteed).



Tagged Values

Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, `Generalization` has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the generalization is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.

**Note**

Derived generalizations still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.

## 15.8.2. Generalization Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model. For a generalization this will be the package containing the generalization.



Delete

This deletes the selected generalization from the model.

**Warning**

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a generalization from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete)`.

## 15.8.3. Property Fields For Generalization

Name

Text box. The name of the generalization.

**Tip**

It is quite common to leave generalizations unnamed in use case analysis.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for associations.

**Note**

There is no representation of the name of a generalization on the diagram.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Generalization is provided by default with the UML standard

stereotype implementation. The stereotype is shown between « and » above or across the generalization.



### Tip

Stereotyping generalization does not have great value on a use case diagram. The standard stereotype is about implementation, and suited to the use of generalization on class diagrams.

Navigate Stereotype



icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

Discriminator

Text box. The name of a discriminator for the specialization. UML 1.3 allows grouping of specializations into a number of sets, on the basis of this value.



### Tip

The empty string “# is a valid entry (and the default) for this field. The discriminator is only of practical use in cases of multiple inheritance. A (class diagram) example is shown in Figure 15.2. Here each type of user should inherit from two sorts of user. One distinguishing between local or remote user (which can be identified by one discriminator) and one indicating their function as a user (identified by a different discriminator).

There is little point in using this within a use case diagram.

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the generalization. This is the package hierarchy.

Parent

Text box. Shows the use case or actor that is the *parent* in this relationship, i.e. the more general end of the relationship. Button 1 Double Click on this entry will navigate to that use case or actor. Button 2 click will give a pop up menu, with a single entry, Open which will also navigate to that use case or actor.

Child

Text box. Shows the use case or actor that is the *child* in this relationship, i.e. the more specific end of the relationship. Button 1 Double Click on this entry will navigate to that use case or actor. Button 2 click will give a pop up menu, with a single entry, Open which will also navigate to that use case or actor.

Powertype

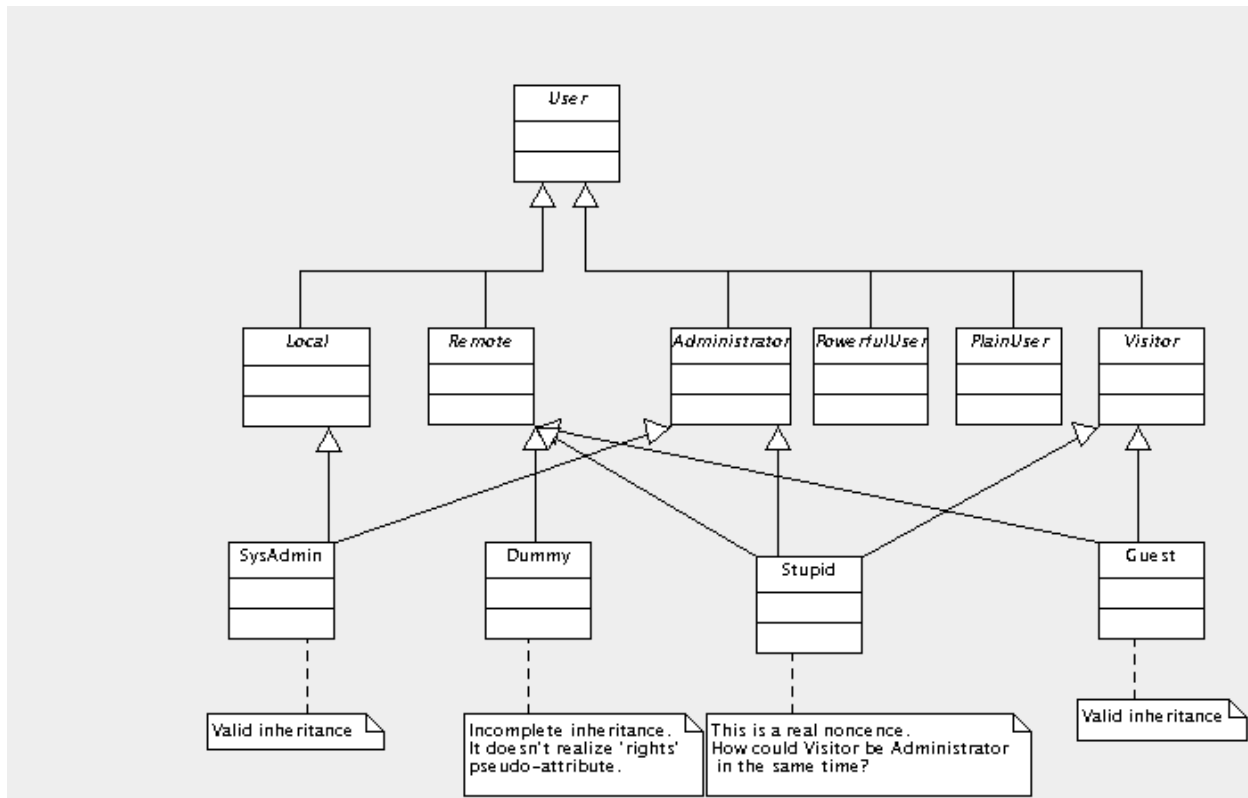
Drop down selector providing access to all standard UML types provided by ArgoUML and all new classes created within the current model.

This is the type of the child entity of the generalization.



### Tip

This can be ignored for use case analysis. The only sensible value to put in would be the child use case type (as a classifier, this appears in the drop down list).

**Figure 15.2. Example use of a discriminator with generalization**

## 15.9. Extend

Extend is a relationship between two use cases. Where A extends B, it means A describes more specific behavior and B the general version of that behavior.

In many respects extend is like generalization. However the key difference is that the extended use case defines *extension points* (see Section 15.4, “Extension Point#”), which are the only places where its behavior may be extended. The extending use case must define at which of these extension points it adds behavior.

This makes the use of extend more tightly controlled than general extension, and it is thus preferred wherever possible.

Examples for a travel agent sales system might be the use case for paying for a ticket, which has an extension point in the specification of the payment. Extending use cases may then extend at this point to pay by cash, credit card etc.

Within the UML metamodel, Extend is a sub-class of Relationship.

An extend relationship is represented as a dotted link with an open arrow head and a label «extend». If a condition is defined, it is shown under the «extend» label (see Figure 15.1).

### 15.9.1. Extend Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for extend relationships are as follows.

**Note**

There is no source tab, since there is no source code that could be generated for an extend relationship.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 15.9.2, “Extend Property Toolbar# and Section 15.9.3, “Property Fields For Extend# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Style	Standard tab

**Note**

The values for the bounds of the extend relationships appear to have no meaning. Changing them has no effect on the diagram. This is sensible behavior, given the extend is tied to a particular pair of use cases.

Constraints	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Extend</code> has no standard constraints defined so this is greyed out.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Extend</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the extend relationship is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.

**Note**

Derived extend relationships could have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts.

## 15.9.2. Extend Property Toolbar

Go up	Navigate up through the package structure of the model. For a extend this will be the package containing the extend.
-------	--



Add extension point

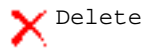
This creates a new use case extension point within the namespace of the current extend relationship, with the current extend relationship as its first extending relationship.

**Tip**

While it is perfectly valid to create extension points from an extend relationship, the created extension point will have no associated use case (it can subsequently be set up).

It would be more usual to instead create the extension point within a use

case and subsequently link to it from an extend relationship (see Section 15.9.3, “Property Fields For Extend# below).



This deletes the selected extend relationship from the model.



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a extend from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete).

## 15.9.3. Property Fields For Extend

Name

Text box. The name of the extend relationship.



### Tip

It is quite common to leave extends unnamed in use case analysis.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for extend relationships.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. ArgoUML does not provide any stereotypes by default.



### Tip


Stereotyping does not have great value on an extend relationship.



### Note

There is no representation of the stereotype of an extend relationship on the diagram.

Navigate Stereotype


 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the extend relationship. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 Double Click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

Base Usecase

	Drop down selector. Shows the use case that is being extended by this extend relationship. Button 1 click on this entry will give a drop down menu of all available use cases (and an empty entry) which may be selected by button 1 click.
Extension	Drop down selector. Show the use case that is doing the extending through this extend relationship. Button 1 click on this entry will give a drop down menu of all available use cases (and an empty entry) which may be selected by button 1 click.
Extension Points	<p>Text box. If this use case is, or can be extended, this field lists the extension points for the use case.</p> <div><b>Note</b><p>Extension points are listed by their location point rather than their name.</p><p>Where an extension point has been created, button 1 Double Click will navigate to that relationship. Button 2 gives a pop up menu with two entries.</p><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Add.</b> The selected extension points window opens. In this window it is possible to select extension points.</li><li>• <b>New.</b> Add a new extension point before the current extension point in the list and navigate to it. The current extend relationship is added as the first in list of extending relationships of the new extension point.</li></ul></div>
Condition	Text area. Multi-line textual description of any condition attached to the extend relationship.

## 15.10. Include

Include is a relationship between two use cases. Where A includes B, it means B described behavior that is to be included in the description of the behavior of A at some point (defined internally by A).

Examples for a travel agent sales system might be the use case for booking travel, which includes use cases for booking flights and taking payment.

Within the UML metamodel, *Include* is a sub-class of *Relationship*.

An include relationship is represented as a dotted link with an open arrow head and a label «include» (see Figure 15.1).

### 15.10.1. Include Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for include relationships are as follows.



#### Note

There is no source tab, since there is no source code that could be generated for an include relationship.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 15.10.2, “Include Property Toolbar# and Section 15.10.3, “Property Fields For Include# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Style	Standard tab



### Note

The values for the bounds of the include relationships appear to have no meaning. Changing them has no effect on the diagram. This is sensible behavior, given the include is tied to a particular pair of use cases.

Constraints	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Include</code> has no standard constraints defined.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Include</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the include relationship is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived include relationships could have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts.

## 15.10.2. Include Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure of the model. For a include this will be the package containing the include.



Delete

This deletes the selected include relationship from the model.



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a include from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete)`.

## 15.10.3. Property Fields For Include

Name

Text box. The name of the include relationship.

**Tip**

It is quite common to leave include relationships unnamed in use case analysis.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for include relationships.

**Stereotype**

Drop down selector. ArgoUML does not provide any stereotypes for include relationships.


**Tip**

Stereotyping does not have great value on an include relationship.

**Note**

There is no representation of the stereotype of an include relationship on the diagram.

**Navigate Stereotype**

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

**Namespace**

Text box. Records the namespace for the include. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

**Base**

Drop down selector. Records the use case that is doing the including in this include relationship. Button 1 click on this entry will give a drop down menu of all available use cases (and an empty entry) which may be selected by button 1 click.

**Caution**

In the current version of ArgoUML if you change the base use case on an include relationship that is already shown on a diagram, then it will NOT be redrawn. Currently the only way to effect a redraw is to remove the use cases at each end from the diagram and then add them back from the explorer.

**Included Usecase**

Drop down selector. Records the use case that is being included by this include relationship. Button 1 click on this entry will give a drop down menu of all available use cases (and an empty entry) which may be selected by button 1 click.

**Caution**



In the current version of ArgoUML if you change the addition use case on an include relationship that is already shown on a diagram, then it will NOT be redrawn. Currently the only way to effect a redraw is to remove the use cases at each end from the diagram and then add them back from the explorer.

---

# Chapter 16. ArgoUML Class Diagram Artifact Reference



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 16.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within a class diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

Class diagrams are used for only one of the UML static structure diagrams, the class diagram itself. Object diagrams are represented on the ArgoUML deployment diagram.

In addition, ArgoUML uses the class diagram to show model structure through the use of packages.

There is a close relationship between this material and the Properties Tab of the Details Pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers Properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

Figure 16.1 shows a class diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 16.1. Possible artifacts on a class diagram.**

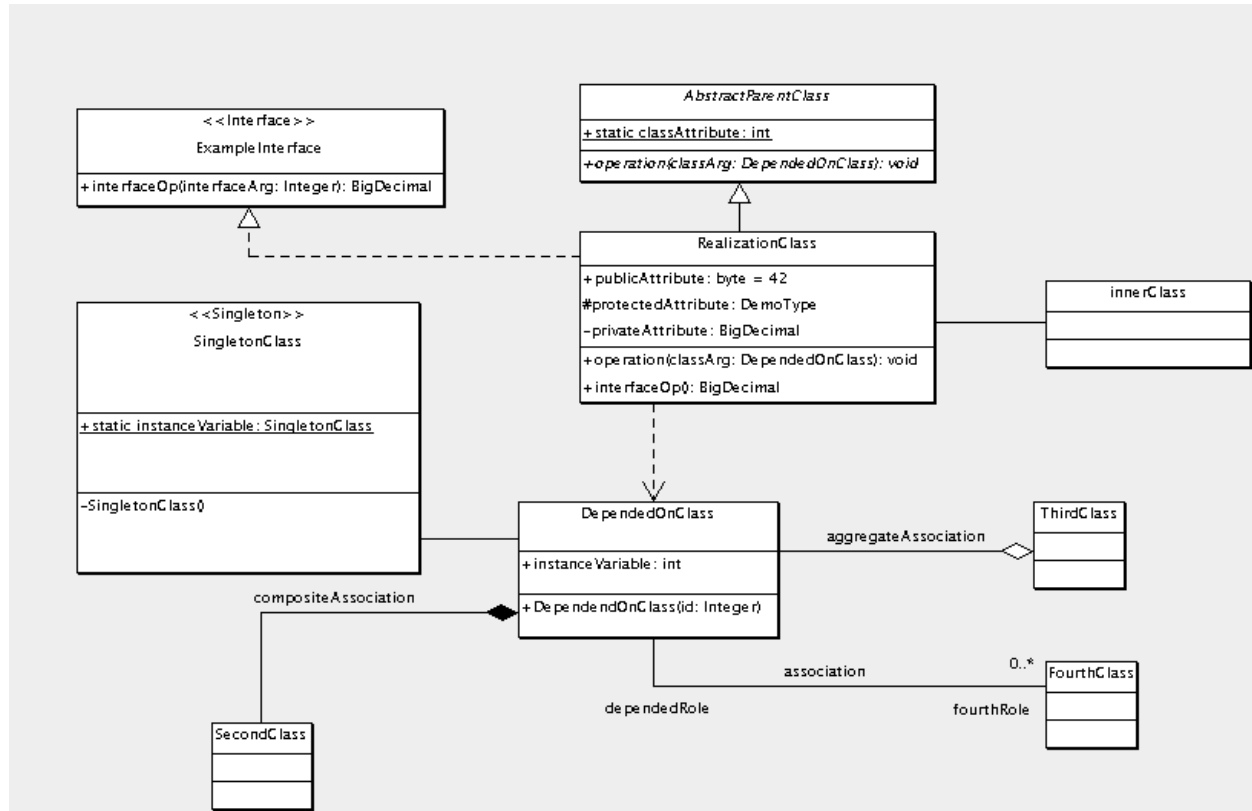
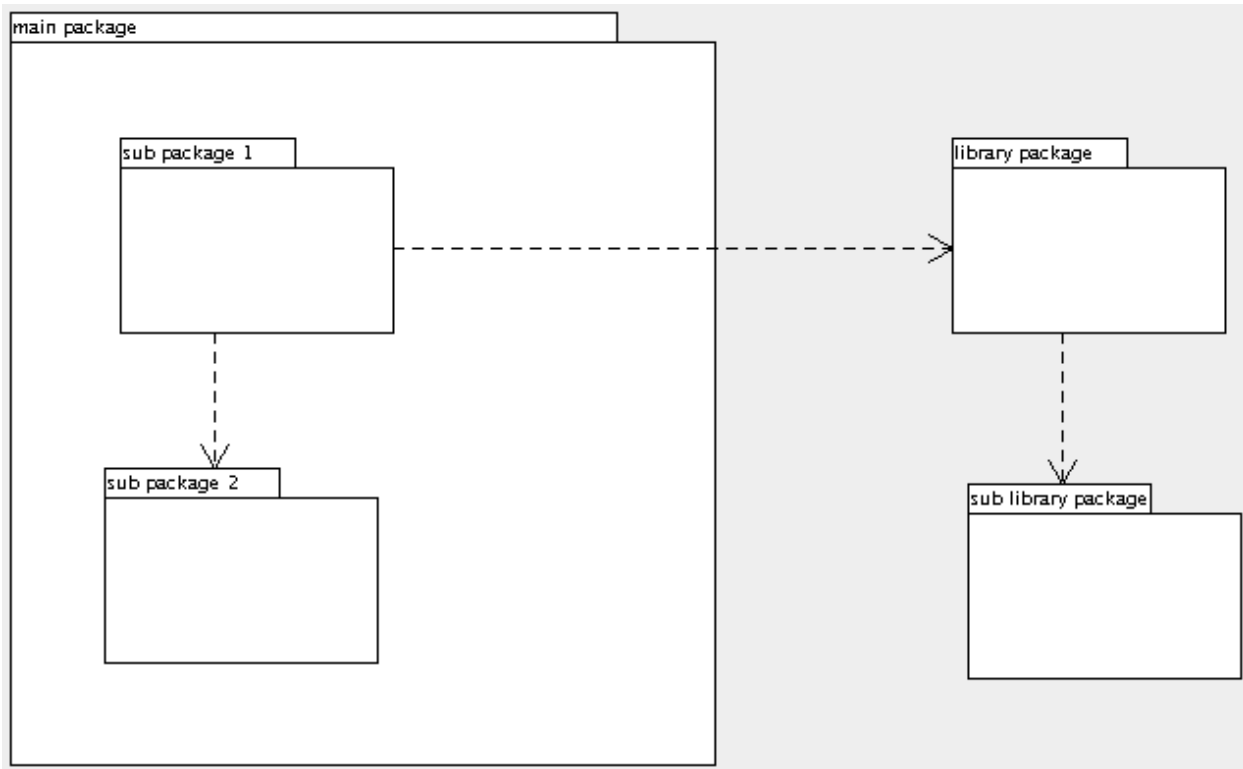


Figure 16.2 shows a package diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 16.2. Possible artifacts on a package diagram.**



### 16.1.1. Limitations Concerning Class Diagrams in ArgoUML

The current implementation does not allow datatypes to be shown on class diagrams.

A variant of the class diagram within the UML standard is the *object diagram*. There is currently no support for objects or links within ArgoUML Class diagrams;. Instead the ArgoUML deployment diagram does have both objects and links, and can be used to draw object diagrams.

## 16.2. Package

The package is the main organizational artifact within ArgoUML. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of both `Namespace` and `GeneralizableElement`.



### Note

ArgoUML also implements the UML `Model` artifact as a sub-class of package (see Section 16.2, “Package#”), but *not* the `Subsystem` artifact.



### Caution

ArgoUML does not fully implement all aspects of UML model management. In particular the only relationship that can be shown between packages is `Dependency`, although UML 1.3 defines `Generalization` and the sub-class dependency `Permission` for use between packages.

### 16.2.1. Package Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for packages are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 16.2.2, “Package Property Toolbar# and Section 16.2.3, “Property Fields For Package# below.
Documentation	Standard tab. See Section 10.5, “Documentation Tab#.
Style	Standard tab. The <code>Bounds</code> : field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
Source	Standard tab. This contains a template package declaration appropriate to the entire package. In the future this would be part of the code generation activity.
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Package</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Package</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.




- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the package is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived packages still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.

## 16.2.2. Package Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 Add Package	This creates a new package (see Section 16.2, “Package#) within the package (which appears on no diagram), navigating immediately to the properties tab for that package.
 Delete Package	Deletes the package from the model.



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a package from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete)`.

## 16.2.3. Property Fields For Package

Name	Text box. The name of the package. The name of a package, like all packages, is by
------	--

convention all lower case, with periods separating the components of the package hierarchy.



### Note

The default name supplied to a new package by ArgoUML is the empty string “#”. The package will appear with the name anon in the explorer.

## Stereotype


Drop down selector. Package is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for package (*facade*, *framework*, *stub*).



### Note

A number of standard stereotypes are currently missing from ArgoUML: *topLevel* (from package), *use case system*, *analysis system*, *analysis package* (all three from the *software development process* profile).

## Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

## Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the package. This is the package hierarchy.

## Modifiers

Check box, with entries *abstract*, *leaf* and *root*.

- *abstract* is used to declare that this package cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.



### Tip

The meaning of *abstract* applied to a package is not that clear. It might mean that the package contains interfaces or abstract classes without realizations. This is probably better handled through stereotyping of the package (for example «*facade*»).

- *leaf* indicates that this package can have no further subpackages, while *root* indicates it is the top level package.



### Tip

Within ArgoUML *root* only meaningfully applies to the Model, since all packages sit within the model. In the absence of the *topLevel* stereotype, this could be used to emphasize that the Model is at the top level.

## Specializations

Text box. Lists any specialized package (i.e. for which this package is a generalization).

button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected generalization.
- **Add.** Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram.



### Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the package (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.



### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## Generalizations

Text area. Lists any package that *generalizes* this package.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected generalization.
- **Add.** Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram. You will need to find it in the explorer and add it from there.



### Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the package (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.




### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

#### Owned Elements

**Text area.** A hierarchical listing of the packages, classes, interfaces, datatypes, actors, use cases, associations, generalizations and stereotypes within the package. For each of these types of artifact, where there is at least one example in the package, a folder icon is shown.

Button 1 double click on the folder icon () opens the folder to reveal the artifacts owned under that category.

Button 1 click on any of the revealed artifacts yields navigates to that artifact.

Button 1 double click on an open folder (with artifacts displayed) will close the folder and hide the artifacts.

Alternatively, Button 2 double click on any item gives a pop up menu.

- **Add.** This option creates a new artifact of the specified type within the package, and navigates to that item.



#### Note

The item is placed under its relevant folder, irrespective of where the pop up menu is revealed. So button 2 click on `Actor` folder and selection of `Add/Package` will place the new package under the `Package` folder, not the `Actor` folder.

This is the only menu option actually available to the package (the others apply to packages within the package, see Section 16.2, “Package#”).



#### Tip

It is often far easier to add artifacts by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** This is always grayed out for a package.
- **Go.** This is always grayed out for a package.
- **Open.** This is always grayed out for a package.



## 16.3. Datatype

Datatypes are not specific to packages or class diagrams, and are discussed within the chapter on top level artifacts (see Section 14.3, “Datatype#”).

## 16.4. Stereotype

Stereotypes are not specific to packages or class diagrams, and are discussed within the chapter on top level artifacts (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

## 16.5. Class

The class is the dominant artifact on a class diagram. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of `Classifier` and `GeneralizableElement`.

A class is represented on a class diagram as a rectangle with three horizontal compartments. The top compartment displays the class name (and stereotype), the second compartment any attributes and the third any operations. The last two compartments may optionally be hidden.

### 16.5.1. Class Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for classes are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 16.5.2, “Class Property Toolbar# and Section 16.5.3, “Property Fields For Class# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab. The tick boxes, <code>Attributes</code> and <code>Operations</code> allow the attributes and operations compartments to be shown (the default) or hidden. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab. This contains a template for the class declaration (with JavaDoc header) and declarations of associated classes.
<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Class</code> within the UML metamodel.
<code>Tagged Values</code>	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Class</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>persistence</code> (from the superclass, <code>Classifier</code>). Values <code>transitory</code>, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or <code>persistent</code>, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.</li><li>• <code>semantics</code> (from the superclass, <code>Classifier</code>). The value is a specification of the semantics of the class.</li><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the class is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul>



## Note

Derived classes still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



## Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.5.2. Class Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.



Add attribute

This creates a new attribute (see Section 16.6, “Attribute#”) within the class, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that attribute.



Add operation

This creates a new operation (see Section 16.7, “Operation#”) within the class, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that operation.



Add interface

This creates a new interface (see Section 16.14, “Interface#”) within the package (which appears on no diagram), navigating immediately to the properties tab for that interface.



## Tip

While it can make sense to create interfaces this way, it can be clearer to create them within diagrams where you want them.



Add inner class

This creates a new inner class (which appears on no diagram) within the class. This belongs to the class and is restricted to the namespace of the class. It exactly models the Java concept of inner class. As an inner class it needs no attributes or operations, since it shares those of its owner.



## Note

Inner class is not a separate concept in UML. This is a convenient shorthand for creating a class that is restricted to the namespace of its owning class.



Delete

This deletes the class from the model



## Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a class from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete).

## 16.5.3. Property Fields For Class

**Name** Text box. The name of the class. The name of a class has a leading capital letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#”.



### Note

The ArgoUML critics will complain about class names that do not have an initial capital.

**Stereotype** Drop down selector. Class is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for Class (implementationClass and type) and for Classifier (metaclass, powerType, process, thread and utility), as well as the stereotypes for classes in the UML standard profiles for *software development process* (boundary, entity and control) and *business modeling* (worker, case worker, internal worker and entity (again)). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization, person and singleton, and rather strangely realize (a stereotype of Abstraction).




### Caution

ArgoUML provides the stereotype *realize* for classes. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the Abstraction metaclass.



### Tip

One stereotype that is not part of the UML standard, but is widely used is *Singleton*, used to distinguish classes which have a single static instance, and no public constructor. Although not part of ArgoUML by default, this stereotype is understood by the critics. You may find it useful to create this stereotype for yourself (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

**Navigate Stereotype**  icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

**Namespace** Text box. Records the namespace for the class. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

**Generalizations** Text area. Lists any class that *generalizes* this class.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram. You will need to find it in the explorer and add it from there.

**Tip**

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the class (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.

**Tip**

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Modifiers**

Check box, with entries `public`, `abstract`, `final`, `root` and `active`.

- `public` has identical meaning to the `public` declaration in Java. It indicated whether this class is restricted to use in its own package (the default) or can be used by anyone.
- `abstract` is used to declare that this class cannot be instantiated, but must always be subclassed. The name of an abstract class is displayed in italics on the diagram.

**Caution**

If a class has any abstract operations, then it should be declared abstract. ArgoUML will not enforce this.

- `final` indicates that this class cannot be further subclassed, while `root` indicates it can have no superclass. It is possible for a class to be both abstract and final, since its static operations may still be referenced.
- `active` indicates that this class exhibits dynamic behavior (and is thus associated with a state or activity diagram).

**Associations**

Text box. Lists any associations (see Section 16.10, “Association#”) connected to this class.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected association.
- **Add.** Add a new association.

**Tip**

New associations can usually more easily be added from the class diagram.

- **Delete.** Removes the link to the selected association.

**Note**

This only removes the link to the association. To remove the association from the model you must navigate to it (or select it on the diagram or explorer) and then delete it.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more associations, and the association selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more associations listed, and the association selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Implements**

Text box. Lists any classes or interfaces (see Section 16.10, “Association#”) which are an abstraction of this class (i.e. which this class realizes).

Button 1 click navigates to the abstraction for the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected abstraction.
- **Add.** Add a new abstraction.

**Tip**

New abstractions can usually more easily be added from the class diagram.

- **Delete.** Removes the link to the selected abstraction.

**Note**

This only removes the link to the abstraction. To remove the abstraction from the model you must navigate to it (or select it on the diagram or explorer) and then delete it.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more abstractions, and the abstraction selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more abstractions listed, and the abstraction selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Specializations**

Text box. Lists any specialized class (i.e. for which this class is a generalization).

button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected generalization.
- **Add.** Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram.



### Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the class (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.



### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## Derived

Text area. Lists any derived classes, i.e those for which this class is a generalization.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization for the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with a single entry, which also navigates to the generalization.



### Caution

You may potentially have a large number of entries here, and the pop up menu makes access very difficult. The work around is to go to the parent classes on the diagram or the explorer.

## Operations

Text area. Lists all the operations (see Section 16.7, “Operation#”) defined on this class. Button 1 click navigates to the selected operation, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected operation.
- **Add.** Add a new operation and navigate to it.
- **Delete.** Removes the selected operation from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more operations, and the operation selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.

- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more operations listed, and the operation selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

#### Attributes

Text area. Lists all the attributes (see Section 16.6, “Attribute#”) defined for this class. Button 1 click navigates to the selected attribute, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected attribute.
- **Add.** Add a new attribute and navigate to it.
- **Delete.** Removes the selected attribute from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more attributes, and the attribute selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more attributes listed, and the attribute selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

#### Owned Elements

Text area. A listing of artifacts contained within the classes' namespace. This is where any inner class (see Section 16.5.2, “Class Property Toolbar#”) will appear

Button 1 click on any of the artifacts navigates to that artifact. button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected artifact.
- **Add.** Point to a sub-menu with seven options: `Add_Menu_Actor`; `Add_Menu_Class`; `Add_Menu_Datatype`; `Add_Menu_Exception`; `Add_Menu_Interface`; `Add_Menu_Signal` and `Add_Menu_UseCase`. Selecting any one will create an artifact of that type within the namespace of the class (but not on any diagram) and navigate to it.



#### Note

`Add_Menu_Exception` is identical to `Add_Menu_Signal`. Both add a signal.



#### Tip

Most namespace hierarchies should be managed through the package mechanism. Namespace hierarchies through classes are best restricted to inner classes. Conceivable datatypes, signals and interfaces could also appear here, but actors and use cases would seem of no value.

- **Delete.** Removes the selected artifact from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more artifacts, and the artifact selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more artifacts listed, and the

artifact selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## 16.6. Attribute

Attribute is a named slot within a class (or other `Classifier` describing a range of values that may be held by instances of the class. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of `StructuralFeature` which is itself a sub-class of `Feature`.

An attribute is represented on a single line within the attribute compartment of the class. Its syntax is as follows:

*visibility* [*static*] [*final*] *attributeName* : *type* [= *initialValue*]

*visibility* is +, # or - corresponding to `public`, `protected` or `private` visibility respectively.

`static` and `final` optionally appear if the attribute has those modifiers

In addition any attribute declared `static` will have its whole entry underlined on the diagram.

*attributeName* is the actual name of the attribute being declared.

*type* is the type (UML datatype, class or interface) declared for the attribute.

*initialValue* is any initial value to be given to the attribute when an instance of the class is created. This may be overridden by any constructor operation.

### 16.6.1. Attribute Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for attributes are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 16.6.2, “Attribute Property Toolbar# and Section 16.6.3, “Property Fields For Attribute# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab, but relating to the owning class, rather than the attribute. The tick boxes, <code>Attributes</code> and <code>Operations</code> allow the attributes and operations compartments of the class to be shown (the default) or hidden. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab. This contains a declaration for the attribute.





#### Warning






The declaration for attributes with multiplicity (see Section 16.6.3, “Property Fields For Attribute#) is not syntactically correct Java at present.

<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Attribute</code> within the UML metamodel.
--------------------------	--










Tagged Values	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Attribute</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>persistence</code>. Values <code>transitory</code>, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or <code>persistent</code>, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.</li><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the attribute is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Derived attributes still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The UML <code>Element</code> metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the <i>documentation tab</i> under ArgoUML</p>
---------------	---

## 16.6.2. Attribute Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 New attribute	<p>This creates a new attribute within the owning class of the current attribute, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that attribute.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This is a very convenient way to add a number of attributes, one after the other, to a class.</p> <p> Delete</p> <p>This deletes the attribute from the model</p> <p> <b>Warning</b></p> <p>This is a deletion from the model <i>not</i> just the diagram. Since attributes have no meaning independent of their owning class, it makes no sense to delete them just from the diagram. If desired the whole attribute compartment can be hidden on the diagram using the <i>style</i> tab (see Section 16.6.2, “Attribute Property Toolbar#) or the button 2 pop up menu for the class on the diagram.</p>

## 16.6.3. Property Fields For Attribute

Name	<p>Text box. The name of the attribute. The name of a attribute has a leading lower case letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The ArgoUML critics will complain about attribute names that do not have an initial lower case letter.</p>
Multiplicity	<p>Drop down selector. The default (empty) value is that there is one instance of this attribute for each instance of the class, i.e. it is a scalar. The drop down provides a number of specifications for non-scalar attributes.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The selection 1..1 is equivalent to the default (exactly one scalar instance). The selection 0..1 indicates an optional scalar attribute.</p> <p> <b>Caution</b></p> <p>ArgoUML restricts you to a number of predefined ranges for multiplicity. There is no way to give a user defined range.</p>
Stereotype	<p>Drop down selector. There are no UML standard stereotypes for Attribute. ArgoUML provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization and person, and rather strangely realize (a stereotype of Abstraction).</p> <p> <b>Caution</b></p> <p>ArgoUML provides the stereotype realize for attributes. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the Abstraction metaclass.</p>
Navigate Stereotype	<p> icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#).</p>
Owner	<p>Text box. Records the class which contains this attribute.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the class. Button 2 click provides a pop up menu with a single entry, Open, which will also navigate to the class.</p>
Type	<p>Drop down selector. The type of this attribute. This can be any UML Classifier, although in practice only Class, DataType or Interface make any sense.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>A type must be declared (it can be void). By default ArgoUML supplies int as the type.</p>
Navigate Type	<p> icon. This will navigate to the property panel for the currently selected type. (see Section 16.5, “Class#, Section 16.3, “Datatype# and Section 16.14, “Interface#).</p>

**Initial Value** Text box with drop down. This allows you to set an initial value for the attribute if desired (this is optional). The drop down menu provides access to the common values 0, 1, 2 and null.



### Caution

Any constructor operation may ignore this initial value.

**Visibility** Radio box, with entries `public`, `protected` and `private`.

- `public`. The attribute is available to any artifact that can see the owning class.
- `protected`. The attribute is available only to the owning class, or artifacts that are subclasses of the owning class.
- `private`. The attribute is available only to the owning class (and any inner classes).

**Modifiers** Check box, with entries `static`, `final`, `transient` and `volatile`.

- `static`. There is only one instance of this attribute associated with the class (as opposed to one for each instance of the class). This is the `OwnerScope` attribute of a `Feature` metaclass within UML. Any attribute declared `static` is shown underlined on the class diagram.
- `final` The value of this attribute may not be changed after it has been instantiated.



### Caution

This corresponds to the `Changeability` attribute of the `Attribute` metaclass within the UML standard. ArgoUML has no mechanism for indicating the `addOnly` value of this attribute.

- `transient`. This corresponds to the `permanence` tagged value (see Section 16.6.1, “Attribute Details Tabs#”), and should not really be on the property sheet.



### Tip

UML Purists should not use this check box, but enter a `permanence` tagged value on the tagged value tab.

- `volatile`. This is an ArgoUML extension to the UML 1.3 standard to indicate that this attribute is realized in some volatile form (for example it will be a memory mapped control register).



### Tip

The proper place for this extension is as a tagged value (or stereotype). UML purists may choose to adopt either of these mechanisms.

## 16.7. Operation

Operation is a service that can be requested from an object to effect behavior. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of `BehavioralFeature` which is itself a sub-class of `Feature`.

An operation is represented on a single line within the operation compartment of the class. Its syntax is as follows:

*visibility* [*static*] [*final*] *operationName* ( [*argumentDeclaration* [, *argumentDeclaration*]\* ] : *returnType*

*visibility* is +, # or - corresponding to `public`, `protected` or `private` visibility respectively.

*static* and *final* optionally appear if the operation has those modifiers

In addition any operation declared `static` will have its whole entry underlined on the diagram.

*operationName* is the name of the operation actually being declared.

There may be zero or more *argumentDeclarations* separated by commas. An *argumentDeclaration* is a pair of the form:


*name* : *type*

*returnType* is the type (UML datatype, class or interface) of the result returned.

Finally the whole entry is shown in italics if the operation is declared abstract.

### 16.7.1. Operation Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for operations are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 16.7.2, “Operation Property Toolbar# and Section 16.7.3, “Property Fields For Operation# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab, but relating to the owning class, rather than the operation. The tick boxes, <code>Attributes</code> and <code>Operations</code> allow the attributes and operations compartments of the class to be shown (the default) or hidden. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
Source	Standard tab. This contains a declaration for the operation.
<div> <b>Warning</b></div> <div>The <code>final</code> modifier is ignored and will not appear in the source declaration.</div>	
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Operation</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Operation</code> has the following standard tagged

values defined.

- `semantics`. The value is a specification of the semantics of the operation.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the operation is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived operations still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.7.2. Operation Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.



New operation

This creates a new operation within the owning class of the current operation, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that operation.



### Tip

This is a very convenient way to add a number of operations, one after the other, to a class.



Add parameter

This creates a new parameter for the operation, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that parameter.



Delete






This deletes the operation from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. Since operations have no meaning independent of their owning class, it makes no sense to delete them just from the diagram. If desired the whole operation compartment can be hidden on the diagram using the *style* tab (see Section 16.7.2, “Operation Property Toolbar”) or the button 2 pop up menu for the class on the diagram.

## 16.7.3. Property Fields For Operation

Name	<p>Text box. The name of the operation. The name of an operation has a leading lower case letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The ArgoUML critics will complain about operation names that do not have an initial lower case letter.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>If you wish to follow the Java convention of constructors having the same name as the class, you will violate this rule. Remove the critic using the to-do tab (see Section 10.3, “To Do Item Tab#).</p>
Stereotype	<p>Drop down selector. There are two UML standard stereotypes for Operation (from the parent metaclass, BehavioralFeature), create and destroy. ArgoUML provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization and person, and rather strangely realize (a stereotype of Abstraction).</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>You should use create as the stereotype for constructors, and destroy for destructors (or finalize methods under Java).</p> <p> <b>Caution</b></p> <p>ArgoUML provides the stereotype realize for operations. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the Abstraction metaclass.</p>
Navigate Stereotype	<p> icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#).</p>
Owner	<p>Text box. Records the class which contains this operation.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the class. Button 2 click provides a pop up menu with a single entry, Open, which will also navigate to the class.</p>
Visibility	<p>Radio box, with entries public, protected and private.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• public. The operation is available to any artifact that can see the owning class.</li> <li>• protected. The operation is available only to the owning class, or artifacts that are subclasses of the owning class.</li> <li>• private. The operation is available only to the owning class (and any inner classes).</li> </ul>
Modifiers	<p>Check box, with entries abstract, final, root, query and static.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• abstract. This operation has no implementation with this class. The implementa-</li> </ul>

tion must be provided by a subclass.



### Important

Any class with an abstract operation must itself be declared abstract.

- `final`. The implementation of this operation must not be overridden by any subclass.
- `root`. The declaration of this operation must not override a declaration of the operation from a superclass.
- `query`. This indicates that the operation must have no side effects (i.e. it must not change the state of the system). It can only return a value.



### Caution

Operations for user defined datatypes must always check this modifier.

- `static`. There is only one instance of this operation associated with the class (as opposed to one for each instance of the class). This is the `OwnerScope` attribute of a `Feature` metaclass within UML. Any operation declared static is shown underlined on the class diagram.

## Concurrency

Radio box, with entries `sequential`, `synchronized` and `concurrent`.

- `sequential`. Only one call to an instance (of the class with the operation) may be outstanding at any one time. There is no protection, and no guarantee of behavior if the system violates this rule.
- `synchronized`. Multiple calls to one instance are allowed, but only one may execute at a time. The others are blocked. In the UML 1.3 standard this form of concurrency is known as `guarded`.



### Caution

It is up to the system designer to ensure deadlock cannot occur. It is the responsibility of the operation to implement the blocking behavior (as opposed to the system).

- `concurrent`. Multiple calls to one instance may execute at the same time. The operation is responsible for ensuring correct behavior. This must be managed even if there are other sequential or synchronized (guarded) operations executing at the time.

## Parameter

Text area, with entries for all the parameters of the operation (see Section 16.8, “Parameter#”). A new operation is always created with one new parameter, `return` to define the return type of the operation.

Button 1 click on any of the parameters navigates to that parameter. button 2 click

brings up a pop up menu with four entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected parameter.
- **Add.** Create a new parameter and navigate to it.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more parameters, and the parameter selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more parameters listed, and the parameter selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Raised Signals**

Text area, with entries for all the signals (see Section 16.9, “Signal#”) that can be raised by the operation.



### Caution

ArgoUML at present has limited support for signals. In particular they are not linked to signal events that could drive state machines.

Button 1 click on any of the parameters navigates to that parameter. button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with four entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected signal.
- **Add.** Create a new signal and navigate to it.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more signals, and the signal selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more signals listed, and the signal selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## 16.8. Parameter

A parameter is a variable that can be passed. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of `ModelElement`.

A parameter is represented within the operation declaration in the operation compartment of a class as follows.

*name* : *type*

*name* is the name of the parameter.

*type* is the type (UML datatype, class or interface) of the parameter.

The exception is any parameter representing a return value, whose type only is shown at the end of the operation declaration.

### 16.8.1. Parameter Details Tabs



The details tabs that are active for parameters are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 16.8.2, “Parameter Property Toolbar# and Section 16.8.3, “Property Fields For Parameter# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab, but relating to the owning class, rather than the parameter. The tick boxes, <code>Attributes</code> and <code>Operations</code> allow the attributes and operations compartments of the class to be shown (the default) or hidden. The <code>Bounds :</code> field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
Source	Standard tab. This contains a declaration for the parameter.
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Parameter</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Parameter</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the parameter is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Caution



A derived parameter is a meaningless concept.



### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.8.2. Parameter Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 Add parameter	This creates a new parameter for the for the same operation as the current parameter, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that parameter.



### Tip

This is a convenient way to add a series of parameters for the same operation.



Delete

This deletes the parameter from the model



## Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. Since parameters have no meaning independent of their owning operation, it makes no sense to delete them just from the diagram. If desired the whole operation compartment can be hidden on the diagram using the *style* tab (see Section 16.8.2, “Parameter Property Toolbar#) or the button 2 pop up menu for the class on the diagram.

## 16.8.3. Property Fields For Parameter

**Name** Text box. The name of the parameter. By convention, the name of a parameter has a leading lower case letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#.



## Note


The ArgoUML critics do not complain about parameter names that do not have an initial lower case letter.

**Stereotype** Drop down selector. There are no UML standard stereotypes for Parameter. ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person, and rather strangely realize (a stereotype of Abstraction).



## Caution

ArgoUML provides the stereotype *realize* for parameters. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

**Navigate Stereotype**  icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#).

**Owner** Text box. Records the operation which contains this parameter.


Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the operation. Button 2 click provides a pop up menu with a single entry, *Open*, which will also navigate to the operation.

**Type** Drop down selector. The type of this parameter. This can be any UML Classifier, although in practice only *Class*, *DataType* or *Interface* make any sense.



## Note

A type must be declared (it can be *void*, but this only makes sense for a return parameter). By default ArgoUML supplies *int* as the type the first time a parameter is created, and thereafter the type of the most recently created parameter.

**Navigate Type**  icon. This will navigate to the property panel for the currently selected type. (see Section 16.5, “Class#, Section 16.3, “Datatype# and Section 16.14, “Interface#).

Initial Value

Text box with drop down. This allows you to set an initial value for the parameter if desired (this is optional). The drop down menu provides access to the common values 0, 1, 2 and null.



### Caution

This only makes sense for out or return parameters.

Kind

Radio box, with entries in/out, in, out and return.

- in/out. The parameter is used both to pass values in and to pass results back out of the operation.



### Note

This is the default for any new parameter.

- in. The parameter is used only to pass values in to the operation.
- out. The parameter is used only to pass values back from the operation.
- return. The parameter is a return result from the call.



### Note

There is nothing to stop you declaring more than one return parameter (some programming languages support this concept), but all except the first appear in the list of parameters passed in on the diagram, which is confusing.



### Tip

The name of the return parameter does not appear on the diagram, but it is convenient to give it an appropriate name (such as the default *return* to identify it in the list of parameters on the operation property tab.

## 16.9. Signal

A signal is a specification of an asynchronous stimulus communicated between instances. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of *Classifier*.

Within ArgoUML signals are not fully handled. Their value is when they are received as *signal events* driving the asynchronous behavior of state machines and when associated with *send actions* in state machines and messages for collaboration diagrams.



### Tip

In general there is limited value at present in defining signals within ArgoUML. It may prove more useful to define signals as classes, with a (user defined) stereotype of «*signal*» as suggested in the

UML 1.3 standard. This allows any dependency relationships between signals to be shown.

## 16.9.1. Signal Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for signals are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 16.9.2, “Signal Property Toolbar# and Section 16.9.3, “Property Fields For Signal# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab, but relating to the owning class, rather than the signal. The tick boxes, <code>Attributes</code> and <code>Operations</code> allow the attributes and operations compartments of the class to be shown (the default) or hidden. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
Source	Standard tab. There is nothing generated for a signal.
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Signal</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Signal</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>persistence</code> (from the superclass, <code>Classifier</code>). Values <code>transitory</code>, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or <code>persistent</code>, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.</li><li>• <code>semantics</code> (from the superclass, <code>Classifier</code>). The value is a specification of the semantics of the signal.</li><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the signal is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul>



### Note

Derived signals still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.9.2. Signal Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.



Add operation

This creates a new operation (see Section 16.7, “Operation#) for the signal, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that operation.



### Caution

Although signals are very similar to classes, it makes little sense to define operations for them.



Add attribute

This creates a new attribute (see Section 16.6, “Attribute#) for the signal, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that attribute.



### Note

The attributes are effectively the parameters of the signal.



New signal

This creates a new signal, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that signal.



### Note

ArgoUML uses the icon for a class for this button, rather than the icon for a signal.



### Caution

The signal is not associated with the same operation as the original signal, so there appears no way to use it in the model.



Delete

This deletes the signal from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model. ArgoUML at present has no way of referencing signals independently of their owning operation, and so once deleted they can not be accessed.

## 16.9.3. Property Fields For Signal

Name

Text box. The name of the signal. From their similarity to classes, by convention, the name of a signal has a leading upper case letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#.



### Note

The ArgoUML critics do not complain about signal names that do not have an initial upper case letter.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Signal is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes

for its parent in the UML meta-model, Classifier (metaclass, powerType, process, thread and utility). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization and person, and rather strangely realize (a stereotype of Abstraction).



### Caution

ArgoUML provides the stereotype *realize* for parameters. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype



icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Extends

Text box. Lists any class that generalizes this class (see Section 16.13, “Generalization#”).



### Caution

ArgoUML is incorrect in using the designation “Extends# for this field. It should correctly be called “Generalizations#.

By default this field is shown with the entry *none*. Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization and navigate to that new generalization.



### Caution

ArgoUML creates the generalization with the signal as child, but no parent, and no menu for adding a parent. The name will always appear as *null*.

- Delete. Removes the link to the selected generalization.



### Note

This only removes the link to the generalization. To remove the generalization from the model you must navigate to it (or select it on the diagram or explorer) and then delete it.

- Move Up. Only available where there are two or more generalizations, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- Move Down. Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



### Caution

ArgoUML allows you to create generalizations, but not to specify parents, so they are of no use at all.



### Tip

To specify detailed properties of signals define them as classes with the stereotype «signal».

Implements

Text box. Lists any class or interface that is realized by this signal. (see Section 16.15, “Abstraction#”).



### Caution

ArgoUML is incorrect in using the designation “Extends# for this field. It should correctly be called “Realizes#.

By default this field is shown with the entry `none`. Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- `Open`. Navigate to the selected abstraction.
- `Add`. Add a new abstraction.



### Caution

ArgoUML creates the abstraction with the signal as client, but no supplier, and no menu for adding a supplier. The name will always appear as `[empty]`.

- `Delete`. Removes the link to the selected abstraction.



### Note





This only removes the link to the abstraction. To remove the abstraction from the model you must navigate to it (or select it on the diagram or explorer) and then delete it.

- `Move Up`. Only available where there are two or more abstractions, and the abstraction selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- `Move Down`. Only available where there are two or more abstractions listed, and the abstraction selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



### Caution

ArgoUML allows you to create abstractions, but not to specify suppliers, so they are of no use at all. Since signals should not have operations or attributes, abstraction seems a meaningless concept.

Modifiers	<p>Check box, with entries <code>public</code>, <code>abstract</code>, <code>final</code> and <code>root</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>public</code> has identical meaning to the <code>public</code> declaration in Java. It indicates whether this signal is restricted to use in its own package (the default) or can be used by anyone.</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>With the limited support for signals within ArgoUML, signals are effectively tied to their owning operation anyway.</p></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>abstract</code> is used to declare that this signal cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>ArgoUML provides no mechanism for defining specialization between signals.</p></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>final</code> indicates that this signal cannot be further specialized, while <code>root</code> indicates it can have no generalization.</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>ArgoUML provides no mechanism for defining specialization between signals, so all should be declared both <code>final</code> and <code>root</code>.</p></div>
Namespace	<p>Text box. Records the namespace for the class. This is the package hierarchy of the class which owns the operation which owns this signal.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).</p>
Derived	<p>Text area. Lists any derived signals, i.e those for which this signal is a generalization. There is a single entry shown by default, <code>none</code>.</p> <p>Button 1 click has no effect, button 2 gives a pop up menu with a single entry which is always grayed out.</p> <div><b>Note</b><p>This field has no use for a signal.</p></div>
Operations	<p>Text area. Lists all the operations (see Section 16.7, “Operation#”) defined on this signal. Button 1 click navigates to the selected operation, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>Open</code>. Navigate to the selected operation.</li><li><code>Add</code>. Add a new operation and navigate to it.</li></ul>



- **Delete.** Removes the selected operation from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more operations, and the operation selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more operations listed, and the operation selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



### Caution

Signals should not have any operations.

#### Attributes

Text area. Lists all the attributes (see Section 16.6, “Attribute#”) defined for this class. These are effectively the parameters to the signal. Button 1 click navigates to the selected attribute, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected attribute.
- **Add.** Add a new attribute and navigate to it.
- **Delete.** Removes the selected attribute from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more attributes, and the attribute selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more attributes listed, and the attribute selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

#### Associations

Text area. Lists all the associations (see Section 16.10, “Association#”) defined on this signal. Button 1 click navigates to the selected association, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected association.
- **Add.** Add a new association and navigate to it.
- **Delete.** Removes the selected association from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more associations, and the association selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more associations listed, and the association selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



### Caution

Signals should not have any associations—the concept is meaningless.

## 16.10. Association

An association on a class diagram represents a relationship between classes, or between a class and an interface.

Within the UML metamodel, `Association` is a sub-class of both `Relationship` and `GeneralizableElement`.

The association is represented as a line connecting actor and class or interface (see Figure 16.1). The name of the association appears above the line and any stereotype above that.



### Caution

ArgoUML is restricted to binary associations at present. See Section 16.10.1, “Three-way and Greater Associations# for more on this.

Associations are permitted between interfaces and classes, but UML 1.3 specifies they must only be navigable toward the interface—in other words the interface cannot see the class. ArgoUML will draw such associations with the appropriate navigation.

Associations are often not named, since their meaning is obvious from the context.



### Note

ArgoUML provides no specific way of showing the direction of the association as described in the UML 1.3 standard. The naming should attempt to make this clear.

The association contains two ends, which may be navigated to via the association property sheet. See Section 15.6, “Association End# for more information.

## 16.10.1. Three-way and Greater Associations

UML 1.3 provides for associations that are governed by a third *associative class*. ArgoUML provides no support for multi-way associations or associative classes at this stage.

## 16.10.2. Association Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for associations are as follows.



<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 16.10.3, “Association Property Toolbar# and Section 16.10.4, “Property Fields For Association# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab. Fill color is used for the use case oval.






### Note

The values for the bounds of the Association appear to have no meaning. Changing them has no effect on the diagram. This is sensible behavior, given the association is tied to a particular actor and use case.

<code>Source</code>	Standard tab. You would not expect to generate any code for an association, and any code entered here is ignored (it will have disappeared when you come back to the association.
---------------------	---

Constraints	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, Association has the following standard constraints defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>xor</code>. Applied to a set of associations, indicating that over that set, exactly one association is manifest for any particular association instance.</li></ul>
Tagged Values	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, Association has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>persistence</code>. Values <code>transitory</code>, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or <code>persistent</code>, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.</li><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the association is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul> <div><b>Note</b><p>Derived associations still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.</p></div> <div><b>Note</b><p>The UML <code>Element</code> metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the <i>documentation tab</i> under ArgoUML</p></div>

### 16.10.3. Association Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure of the model. For an association this will be the package containing the association.
 Delete	This deletes the selected association from the model.
 <b>Warning</b>	This is a deletion from the model <i>not</i> just the diagram. To delete an association from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu <code>Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete)</code> .

### 16.10.4. Property Fields For Association

Name	Text box. The name of the association. By convention association names start with a lower case letter, with “bumpy caps#” used to indicate words within the name, thus: <code>salesHandling</code> .
------	--



## Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for associations.



## Tip

Although the design critics will advise otherwise, it is perfectly normal not to name associations on a class diagram, since the relationship is often obvious from the classes (or class and interface) name.

### Stereotype

Drop down selector. Association is provided by default with the UML standard stereotype for Association ((implicit)) and the additional Association stereotypes for the Software Engineering Process and Business Modeling in the UML standard (communicate and subscribe). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization and person and four additional stereotypes suggested by some writers using patterns (offstage actor, primary actor, stakeholder and supporting actor).

Stereotyping can be useful when creating use cases in the problem domain (requirements capture) and solution domain (analysis), as well as for processes based on patterns.


The stereotype is shown between « and » above the name of the association on the diagram.



## Warning

The provision of offstage actor, primary actor, stakeholder and supporting actor by ArgoUML as stereotypes of Association appears to be erroneous. They should be stereotypes of Actor (or arguably Classifier).

### Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

### Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the association. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

### Modifiers

Check box, with entries Abstract, Final and Root. No known use—they are a consequence of associations being generalizable elements.



## Tip

While associations are generalizable elements, marking them with these modifiers is of limited value.

### Association Ends

Text area. Lists the ends of this association. An association can have any number of ends, but in ArgoUML two is the only useful number (associative classes can lead to a third end on class diagrams, but this is not supported by ArgoUML). For more on association ends see Section 16.11, “Association End#”.

The names are listed, unless the association end has no name (the case when it is first created), in which case the artifact at that end, and its multiplicity, is shown.



### Note

The only representation of association ends on a diagram is that their name appears at the relevant end of the corresponding association. There is no way to access them from the diagram.

Button 1 click on an association end will navigate to that end. Button 2 click gives a pop up menu with five options.

- **Open.** Where an association end exists, navigate to it.
- **Add.** Add a new association end and navigate to its property tab.



### Tip

While adding new ends is possible, the value of this is limited, since ArgoUML provides no support for more than two ends.

- **Delete.** Where an association end exists, this removes it completely from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more association ends, and the association end selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more association ends listed, and the association end selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## Generalizations

Text area. Lists any association that *generalizes* this association.



### Caution

It is possible to create generalizations using the pop-up menu from here, but there is no way within ArgoUML to give them a parent, so the entry has no use.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected generalization.
- **Add.** Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram and there is no way to add it to the diagram.



### Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the association (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.



### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## Specializations

Text box. Lists any specialized association (i.e. for which this association is a generalization).



### Caution

It is possible to create generalizations using the pop-up menu from here, but there is no way within ArgoUML to give them a parent, so the entry has no use.

button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected generalization.
- **Add.** Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram.



### Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the association (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.



### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and

the specialization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## 16.11. Association End

Two or more association ends are associated with each association (see Section 15.5, “Association#), although for ArgoUML, the number of ends can only usefully be two.

Within the UML metamodel, `AssociationEnd` is a sub-class of `ModelElement`.

The association end has no direct access on any diagram, although its stereotype, name and multiplicity is shown at the relevant end of the parent association (see Figure 15.1). Where shared or composite aggregation is selected for one association end, the opposite end is shown as a solid diamond (composite aggregation) or hollow diamond (shared aggregation).



### Tip

Although you can change attributes of association ends when creating a use case model, this is often not necessary. Many of the properties of an association end relate to its use in class diagrams, and are of limited relevance to use cases. The most useful attributes to consider altering are the name (used as the role name) and the multiplicity.



### Note

ArgoUML does not currently support qualifiers, as described in the UML 1.3 standard.

### 16.11.1. Association End Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for associations are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 16.11.2, “Association End Property Toolbar# and Section 16.11.3, “Property Fields For Association End# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab, but with no meaning, since the only representation is via the parent association.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab. You would not expect to generate any code for an association end, but this tab contains a declaration for the association end as an instance of the actor or use case artifact to which it is connected.



### Note

This is probably not the correct thing to do for good code generation, and will need to be changed in future versions of ArgoUML.

<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>AssociationEnd</code> within the UML metamodel.
--------------------------	---

Tagged Values      Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, `AssociationEnd` has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the association end is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Tip

Derived association ends still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation. However the tag only makes sense for an association end if it is also applied to the parent association.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.11.2. Association End Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up to the association to which this end belongs.

 Go to other end

This navigates to the other end of the association.

## 16.11.3. Property Fields For Association End

Name

Text box. The name of the association end, which provides a *role name* for this end of the association. This role name can be used for navigation, and in an implementation context, provides a name by which the source end of an association can reference the target end.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for association ends.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Association end is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for `AssociationEnd` (`association`, `global`, `local`, `parameter`, `self`). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, `machine`, `organization` and `person`.

Stereotyping association ends can be very useful in class diagrams. However it is of limited use in use case diagrams, although the default stereotype of `association` can be used to emphasize this.

Navigate Stereotype



icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property



panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#).

**Type**

Drop down selector providing access to all standard UML types provided by ArgoUML and all new classes created within the current model.

This is the type of the entity attached to this end of the association.

**Tip**

By default ArgoUML will select the class of the artifact to which the linkend is connected. There is little point in altering this when working with use case diagrams.

**Navigate Class**

icon. If a datatype, interface or class has been selected, this will navigate to its property sheet, (see Section 14.3, “Datatype#”, Section 16.14, “Interface#” and Section 16.5, “Class#”).

**Multiplicity**

Drop down menu. Records the multiplicity of this association end (with respect to the other end), i.e. how many instances of this end may be associated with an instance of the other end. The multiplicity is shown on the diagram at that end of the association.

**Association**

Text box. Records the parent association for this association end. Button 1 click on this entry will navigate to that association. Button 2 click will invoke a pop-up menu, with a single entry, `Open` that will also navigate to that association.

**Navigable**

Check box, with a single entry, `navigable`. Indicates that this end can be navigated to from the other end.

**Tip**

This means little to a use case diagram. It is useful for associations on class diagrams.

**Note**

The UML 1.3 standard provides a number of options for how navigation is displayed on an association end. ArgoUML uses option 3, which means that arrow heads are shown at the end of an association, when navigation is enabled at only one end, to indicate the direction in which navigation is possible. This means that the default, with both ends navigable has no arrows. This is an appropriate representation for use cases.

**Ordering**

Radio box, with three entries `unordered`, `ordered` and `sorted`. Where there are multiple instances indicates the nature of any ordering.

**Note**

`sorted` represents an extension to UML 1.3.

**Aggregation**

Radio box, with three entries `none`, `aggregation` and `composite`. Indicates whether the relationship with the far end represents some type of loose whole-part relationship (`aggregation`) or tight whole-part relationship (`composite`).

Shared aggregation is shown by a hollow diamond at the “whole# end of the association. Composite aggregation is shown by a solid diamond.



### Note

You may not have aggregation at both ends of an association. The “whole# end of a composite aggregation should have a multiplicity of one.

Classifier	Check box, with a single entry, <code>classifier</code> . Indicates that this end relates to a class rather than an instance of a class (the default).
Changeability	Radio box, with three entries <code>changeable</code> , <code>frozen</code> and <code>add only</code> . Indicates whether instances of this end of the attributed may be: i) created and deleted by the source after the target instance is created; ii) not created or deleted by the source after the target instance is created; or iii) created but not deleted after the target instance is created.
Visibility	Radio box, with three entries <code>public</code> , <code>protected</code> and <code>private</code> . Indicates whether navigation to this end may be by: i) any classifier; ii) only the source classifier and its children; or iii) only by the source classifier.

## 16.12. Dependency

Dependencies are described under use case diagrams (see Section 15.7, “Dependency#).

## 16.13. Generalization

Generalization is described under use case diagrams (see Section 15.8, “Generalization#).



### Note

Within the context of classes, generalization and specialization are the UML terms describing class inheritance.

## 16.14. Interface

An interface is a set of operations characterizing the behavior of an element. It can be usefully thought of as an abstract class with no attributes and no non-abstract operations. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of `Classifier` and through that `GeneralizableElement`.

A class is represented on a class diagram as a rectangle with two horizontal compartments. The top compartment displays the interface name (and above it «interface») and the second any operations. Unlike a class, the operations compartment may not be hidden.

### 16.14.1. Interface Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for interfaces are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
-----------------------	---------------

Properties	See Section 16.14.2, “Interface Property Toolbar# and Section 16.14.3, “Property Fields For Interface# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The <code>Bounds :</code> field defines the bounding box for the package on the diagram.
Source	Standard tab. This contains a template for the interface declaration (with JavaDoc header) and declarations of associated interfaces.
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Interface</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Interface</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.



### Warning

Since interfaces are by definition abstract, they can have no instance, and so this tagged value must refer to the properties of the realizing class.

- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of the semantics of the interface.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the interface is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived interfaces still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



### Note

The `UML Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.14.2. Interface Property Toolbar

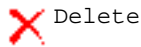
Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.



Add operation

This creates a new operation (see Section 16.7, “Operation#) within the interface, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that operation.



This deletes the interface from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an interface from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete).

## 16.14.3. Property Fields For Interface

Name

Text box. The name of the interface. The name of an interface has a leading capital letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#”.



### Note

Unlike classes, the ArgoUML critics will not complain about interface names that do not have an initial capital.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Interface is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for the parent meta-class, Classifier (metaclass, powerType, process, thread and utility). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization, person and singleton, and rather strangely realize (a stereotype of Abstraction).



### Caution

ArgoUML provides the stereotype realize for interfaces. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the Abstraction metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the interface. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

Generalizations

Text area. Lists any interface that *generalizes* this interface.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram. You will need to find it in the explorer and add it from there.

**Tip**

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the interface (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.

**Tip**

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Modifiers**

Check box, with entries `public`, `abstract`, `final` and `root`.

- `public` has identical meaning to the `public` declaration in Java. It indicated whether this interface is restricted to use in its own package (the default) or can be used by anyone.
- `abstract` is used to declare that this interface cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized. The name of an abstract interface is displayed in italics on the diagram.

**Caution**

This is meaningless, since by definition an interface is an abstract entity. The UML 1.3 standard offers no clarification.

- `final` indicates that this interface cannot be further specialized, while `root` indicates it can have no generalizations.

**Associations**

Text box. Lists any associations (see Section 16.10, “Association#”) connected to this interface.

**Note**

Associations between classes and interfaces *must* be navigable *only* from the class to the interface. ArgoUML will create associations between classes and interfaces with the correct navigability.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected association.
- **Add.** Add a new association.



### Tip

New associations can usually more easily be added from the interface diagram.

- **Delete.** Removes the link to the selected association.



### Note

This only removes the link to the association. To remove the association from the model you must navigate to it (or select it on the diagram or explorer) and then delete it.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more associations, and the association selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more associations listed, and the association selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

#### Implementations

Text box. Lists any classes or interfaces (see Section 16.10, “Association#”) which are an abstraction of this interface (i.e. which this interface realizes).



### Note

This field should probably be correctly labeled `Implements`



### Warning

Although the UML 1.3 standard does not appear to forbid this, ArgoUML does not support abstraction of interfaces.

This entry is always shown as `none`. Button 1 click has no effect, and button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries all grayed out.

#### Specializations

Text box. Lists any specialized interface (i.e. for which this interface is a generalization).

button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected generalization.
- **Add.** Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram.

**Tip**

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- **Delete.** The link from the generalization to the interface (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.

**Tip**

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Operations**

Text area. Lists all the operations (see Section 16.7, “Operation#”) defined on this interface. Button 1 click navigates to the selected operation, button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected operation.
- **Add.** Add a new operation and navigate to it.
- **Delete.** Removes the selected operation from the model.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more operations, and the operation selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more operations listed, and the operation selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Caution**

All operations on an interface *must* be public. The ArgoUML critics will complain if this is not the case.

## 16.15. Abstraction

An abstraction is a dependency relationship joining two artifacts within the model at different levels of abstraction. Within ArgoUML it is principally used through its specific stereotype *realize* to define realization dependencies, which link artifacts that *specify* behavior to the corresponding artifacts that *implement* the behavior.

In the UML metamodel *Abstraction* is a sub-class of *Dependency* and through that *Relationship*.

An abstraction with stereotype *realize* is represented on a class diagram as a dotted line with a solid white head at

the specifying end.



### Caution

All other stereotypes of abstraction should be represented using an open arrow head, but this is not supported by ArgoUML

## 16.15.1. Abstraction Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for abstractions are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 16.15.2, “Abstraction Property Toolbar# and Section 16.15.3, “Property Fields For Abstraction# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab.



### Note

The values for the bounds of the abstraction appear to have no meaning. Changing them has no effect on the diagram. This is sensible behavior, given the association is tied to particular artifacts.

Source	Standard tab. This contains the single word <code>realizes</code> .
--------	---



### Caution

An abstraction should not generate any code, so this entry is probably a mistake.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Abstraction</code> within the UML metamodel.
-------------	--

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Abstraction</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the abstraction is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived abstractions still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived



includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 16.15.2. Abstraction Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.



Delete

This deletes the abstraction from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an abstraction from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Delete)`.

## 16.15.3. Property Fields For Abstraction

Name

Text box. The name of the abstraction. There are no constraints on the name of an abstraction, which is not shown on any diagram.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Abstraction is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes `derive`, `realize`, `refine` and `trace`. ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, `machine`, `organization` and `person`.



### Caution

ArgoUML automatically selects the stereotype `realize` when an abstraction is created. The user is free to change the stereotype to use the abstraction to indicate for example a `trace` relationship. However ArgoUML will not alter the representation on the diagram accordingly.

Navigate Stereotype



icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the abstraction. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

Suppliers

Text area. Lists the artifact that is the supplier end of this abstraction (for a realization this is the end providing the implementation).



### Note

Although this is a text area there is no mechanism for adding more than one supplier.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three

entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected artifact.
- **Move Up.** Since there is only ever one supplier this is always grayed out.
- **Move Down.** Since there is only ever one supplier this is always grayed out.

Clients

Text area. Lists the artifact that is the client end of this abstraction (for a realization this is the end providing the specification).



### Note

Although this is a text area there is no mechanism for adding more than one client.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected artifact.
- **Move Up.** Since there is only ever one client this is always grayed out.
- **Move Down.** Since there is only ever one client this is always grayed out.

---

# Chapter 17. ArgoUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference



## Caution

In ArgoUML 0.14 the sequence diagrams are not available. They will be replaced by a new and improved version in the upcoming release. In the 0.12 release they were not working and in the 0.10 release that is described here they did not follow the UML specification correctly.

This chapter is left in the manual for those that might need it because they are still working with ArgoUML 0.10.1.

## 17.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within a sequence diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

There is a close relationship between this material and the `Properties` tab of the details pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#”). That section covers properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

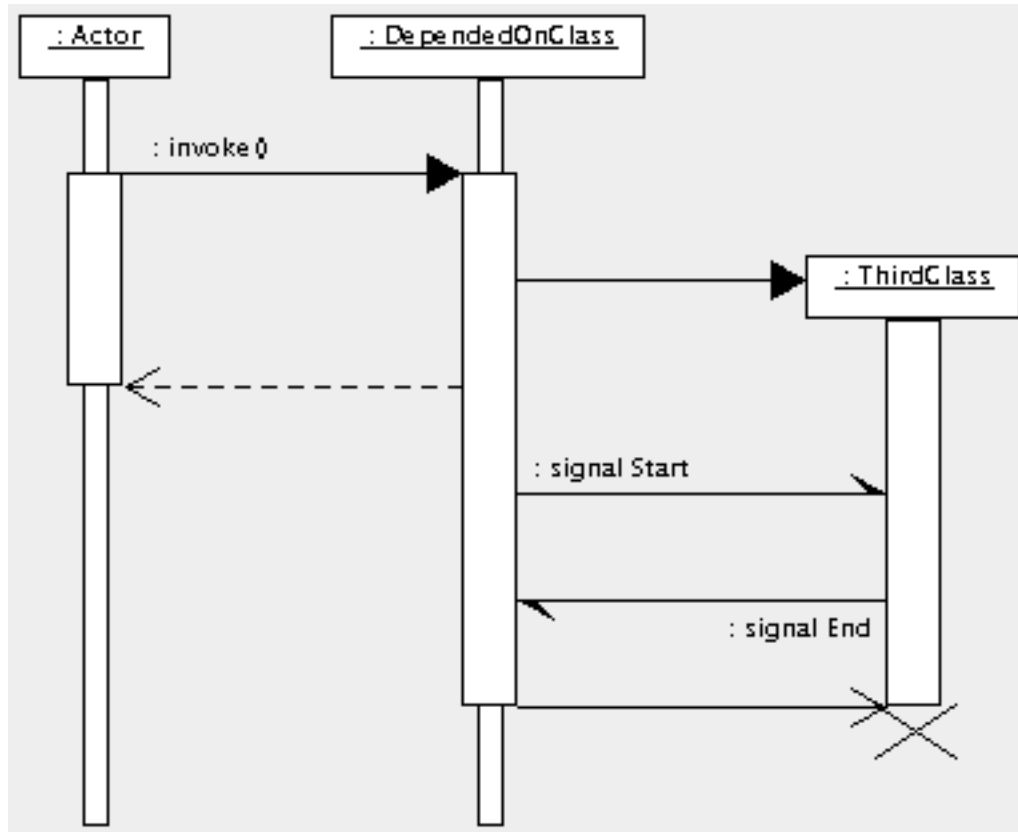


## Caution

Sequence diagrams are not fully developed yet in ArgoUML. Many aspects are not fully implemented, or may not behave as expected.

Figure 17.1 shows a sequence diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 17.1. Possible artifacts on a sequence diagram.**



### 17.1.1. Limitations Concerning Sequence Diagrams in ArgoUML

The sequence diagram is still rather under-developed in ArgoUML.

The biggest difficulties are with the actions behind the stimuli. These are purely textual in implementation, and there is no way to link them back to their associated operations or signals.

## 17.2. Object

An object is an instance of a class. In the UML metamodel `Object` is a sub-class of `Instance`. Within a sequence diagram objects may be used to represent a specific instance of a class. Unlike collaboration diagrams (see Chapter 19, *ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference*), sequence diagrams cannot show generic behavior between classifier roles.

An object is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as a plain box labeled with the object name (if any) and class name, separated by a colon (:). As links with stimuli to and from other objects are added, a time line grows down from the object. This is thin where the object does not have control and thick where it does.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML shows interactions between objects, although the UML standard for sequence diagrams is for interaction between instances of any classifier).

However the actual implementation in ArgoUML permits any classifier to be used with the object, and so the diagram can successfully represent instances of actors for example as well as classes.

## 17.2.1. Object Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for objects are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 17.2.2, “Object Property Toolbar# and Section 17.2.3, “Property Fields For Object# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the object notionally define the bounding box of the object and its time line. However if you change them it will have no effect, and the original values will be reset when you next revisit the tab.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML changing the values of this field is possible, but will make a (temporary) mess of the screen display. Selecting the object on the screen causes the original values to be restored and the screen refreshed.

Source	Standard tab, but with no contents.
--------	-------------------------------------



### Caution

An object should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

Constraints	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, Object has the following standard constraints defined (through its parent, Instance).
-------------	---

- `destroyed`. Applied to an object that is destroyed during the execution.
- `new`. Applied to an object that is created during the execution.
- `transient`. Applied to an object that is both created and destroyed during the execution.

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, Object has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `persistence` (from the superclass, Instance). Showing the permanence of the state information associated with the object. Values `transitory` (state is destroyed when the object is destroyed) and `persistent` (state is preserved when the object is destroyed).
- `derived` (from the superclass, ModelElement). Values `true`, meaning the object is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived objects still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 17.2.2. Object Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the object from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an object from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 17.2.3. Property Fields For Object

Name

Text box. The name of the object. By convention object names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

**Classifier**

Drop down selector. The name of the classifier of which this is an object.

**Caution**

In the current release of ArgoUML the drop down selector will include *all* classifiers (i.e. interfaces, actors, use cases and datatypes as well), which is what is wanted on the diagram, although it should properly be called an instance, rather than an object. In practice only instances of classes and actors make much sense.

**Note**

In the current release of ArgoUML the same graphical presentation is used, even if the object is actually representing an instance of an actor (when a stick-man would be more usual).


**Stereotype**

Drop down selector. Object has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.

**Caution**

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for objects. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

**Navigate Stereotype**

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

**Namespace**

Text box. Records the namespace for the object. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

**Stimuli Sent**

Text area. Lists the stimuli sent to this object.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected stimulus.
- Add. Add a new stimulus.

**Caution**

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can only be added from the diagram.

- Delete. Delete the selected stimulus.

**Caution**

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out.

Stimuli can only be deleted from the diagram.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more stimuli, and the stimulus selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can not be moved in the order. To change the order a stimulus must be deleted and then recreated on the diagram.

- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more stimuli listed, and the stimulus selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can not be moved in the order. To change the order a stimulus must be deleted and then recreated on the diagram.

Stimuli Received

Text area. Lists the stimuli received by this object.



### Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML this field is completely broken. No entries are every shown.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected stimulus.
- **Add.** Add a new stimulus.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can only be added from the diagram.

- **Delete.** Delete the selected stimulus.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can only be deleted from the diagram.

- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more stimuli, and the stimulus selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.





### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can not be moved in the order. To change the order a stimulus must be deleted and then recreated on the diagram.

- `Move Down`. Only available where there are two or more stimuli listed, and the stimulus selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Stimuli can not be moved in the order. To change the order a stimulus must be deleted and then recreated on the diagram.

## 17.3. Stimulus

A stimulus is a communication between two instances and is generated by an action. On a sequence diagram a stimulus is associated with a link—an instance of an association linking two object instances. In the UML metamodel `Stimulus` is a sub-class of `ModelElement`.

The link (see Section 17.9, “Link#”) associated with a stimulus is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as an arrow between the time lines of the object instances (or the object head in the case of stimulus create, described below) labeled with the name of the action (if any), and the action, separated by a colon (:). The type of line and arrowhead depends on the type of action that generated the stimulus:

- `Stimulus Call`. Generated by a call action, itself the result of an operation of a class. Shown as a solid line with a solid arrowhead to the time line of the object instance receiving the stimulus.
- `Stimulus Create`. Generated by a create action for the class for which an instance is to be created. Shown as a solid line with a solid arrowhead to the object head of the object instance being created.
- `Stimulus Destroy`. Generated by a destroy action of the originating object. Shown as a solid line with an open arrowhead terminating in a diagonal cross at the end of the time line of the receiving (destroyed) object instance.
- `Stimulus Send`. Generated by a send action, the result of a signal raised by an operation of the sending object instance and handled by the receiving object instance. Shown as a solid line with half an open arrowhead.
- `Stimulus Return`. Generated by an object instance that has received an earlier call stimulus and is returning a result to the calling object instance. Shown as a dotted line with an open arrowhead.



### Note

ArgoUML does not allow you to create stimuli directly, but instead provides tools to create stimuli of each of the five types above.



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML there is no way to show a terminate action where an object instance destroys itself. One way is to draw a destroy action that loops back to the object itself, give it an action with no name and use the style tab to set an invisible line, but this still leaves the arrow head showing, which is unsightly. It is also semantically incorrect anyway to use a destroy action to represent a terminate action.

## 17.3.1. Stimulus Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for stimuli are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 17.3.2, “Stimulus Property Toolbar# and Section 17.3.3, “Property Fields For Stimulus# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the stimulus notionally define the bounding box of the stimulus and its time line. However if you change them it will have no effect, and the original values will be reset when you next revisit the tab.



### Tip

To change the color of the line, you should select the associated link (click on it a little way from the stimulus) and use its style tab (see Section 17.9, “Link#).



### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML changing the values of the `Bounds` field is possible, but will make only a temporary change to the position of the stimulus. Selecting any artifact on the screen causes the stimulus to return to its original position and the original values to be restored.

Source	Standard tab, but with no contents.
--------	-------------------------------------



### Caution

A stimulus should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Stimulus</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Stimulus</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the stim-

ulus is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or *false* meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived stimuli still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 17.3.2. Stimulus Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the stimulus from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an stimulus from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 17.3.3. Property Fields For Stimulus

Name

Text box. There is no convention for naming stimuli, and it is quite normal to leave them unnamed. The action is sufficient identification.

**Tip**

It is sometimes useful to give simple names to stimuli, so they can be referred to in attached notes giving timing constraints.

Action

Text box. This is used to identify the action that generated the stimulus.

**Caution**

The current release of ArgoUML only implements actions as textual descriptions.

As a practical convention it is suggested that call actions are shown as the name of the operation generating the action with any arguments in parentheses and that send actions are shown as the name of the signal generating the action with any arguments in parentheses. Return actions should be shown as the expression for the value they return, or empty otherwise. Create and destroy actions should be left empty, since they are implied by their representation.


Stereotype

Drop down selector. Stimulus has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.

**Caution**

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype `realize` for stimuli. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the `Abstraction` metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Sender

Text box. Identifies the instance which sent this stimulus.

Button 1 click navigates to the sender instance, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected sender instance.

Receiver

Text box. Identifies the instance which receives this stimulus.

Button 1 click navigates to the receiver instance, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected receiver instance.

**Warning**

In the current release of ArgoUML this field is broken. It always shows the entry `none` and the pop-up menu is grayed out.

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the stimulus. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

## 17.4. Stimulus Call

This tool creates a stimulus associated with a call action on the diagram, creating at the same time the associated link between sender and receiving instances.

All details tabs and properties are identical to that of stimulus in general (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”). Its graphical representation on the diagram is that of a stimulus associated with a call action, i.e. a solid line with a solid arrow head.



### Note

Because the current release of ArgoUML does not fully implement actions, there is no enforcement of the relationship to a call action.

## 17.5. Stimulus Create

This tool creates a stimulus associated with a create action on the diagram, creating at the same time the associated link between sender and receiving instances.

All details tabs and properties are identical to that of stimulus in general (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”). Its graphical representation on the diagram is that of a stimulus associated with a create action, i.e. a solid line with a solid arrow head terminating at the head of the created instance.



### Note

Because the current release of ArgoUML does not fully implement actions, there is no enforcement of the relationship to a create action.

## 17.6. Stimulus Destroy

This tool creates a stimulus associated with a destroy action on the diagram, creating at the same time the associated link between sender and receiving instances.

All details tabs and properties are identical to that of stimulus in general (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”). Its graphical representation on the diagram is that of a stimulus associated with a destroy action, i.e. a solid line with an open arrow head terminating at a cross at the bottom of the destroyed instance's time line.



### Note

Because the current release of ArgoUML does not fully implement actions, there is no enforcement of the relationship to a destroy action.

## 17.7. Stimulus Send

This tool creates a stimulus associated with a send action on the diagram, creating at the same time the associated

link between sender and receiving instances.

All details tabs and properties are identical to that of stimulus in general (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”). Its graphical representation on the diagram is that of a stimulus associated with a send action, i.e. a solid line with half an open arrow head.



### Note

Because the current release of ArgoUML does not fully implement actions, there is no enforcement of the relationship to a send action.

## 17.8. Stimulus Return

This tool creates a stimulus associated with a return action on the diagram, creating at the same time the associated link between sender and receiving instances.

All details tabs and properties are identical to that of stimulus in general (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”). Its graphical representation on the diagram is that of a stimulus associated with a return action, i.e. a dotted line with an open arrow head.



### Note

Because the current release of ArgoUML does not fully implement actions, there is no enforcement of the relationship to a return action.

## 17.9. Link

A link is an instance of an association. In the UML metamodel `Link` is a sub-class of `Instance`. Within a sequence diagram links are created indirectly when an associated stimulus is created.

An link is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as a line connecting the instances concerned. However on a sequence diagram the representation is modified to reflect the type of action associated with the stimulus carried on the link (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”).

### 17.9.1. Link Details Tabs




The details tabs that are active for links are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 17.9.2, “Link Property Toolbar# and Section 17.9.3, “Property Fields For Link# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the link notionally define the bounding box of the link. However if you change them it will have no effect.





### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML changing the values of the line field will alter the color of the line, but *not* the arrow head.

Source	<p>Standard tab, but with no contents.</p> <div><b>Caution</b><p>A link should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.</p></div>
Constraints	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Link</code> has the following standard constraints defined (through its parent, <code>Instance</code>).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>destroyed</code>. Applied to a link that is destroyed during the execution.</li><li>• <code>new</code>. Applied to a link that is created during the execution.</li><li>• <code>transient</code>. Applied to a link that is both created and destroyed during the execution.</li></ul>
Tagged Values	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Link</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>persistence</code> (from the superclass, <code>Instance</code>). Showing the permanence of the state information associated with the link. Values <code>transitory</code> (state is destroyed when the link is destroyed) and <code>persistent</code> (state is preserved when the link is destroyed).</li><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the link is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul> <div><b>Note</b><p>Derived links still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.</p></div> <div><b>Note</b><p>The UML <code>Element</code> metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element <code>documentation</code> which is handled by the <i>documentation tab</i> under ArgoUML</p></div>


## 17.9.2. Link Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 Go back	Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the link from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an link from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 17.9.3. Property Fields For Link

Name

Text box. The name of the link. By convention link names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Link has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.



### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for links. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the link. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).



---

# Chapter 18. ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 18.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within a state diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

There is a close relationship between this material and the Properties Tab of the Details Pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers Properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

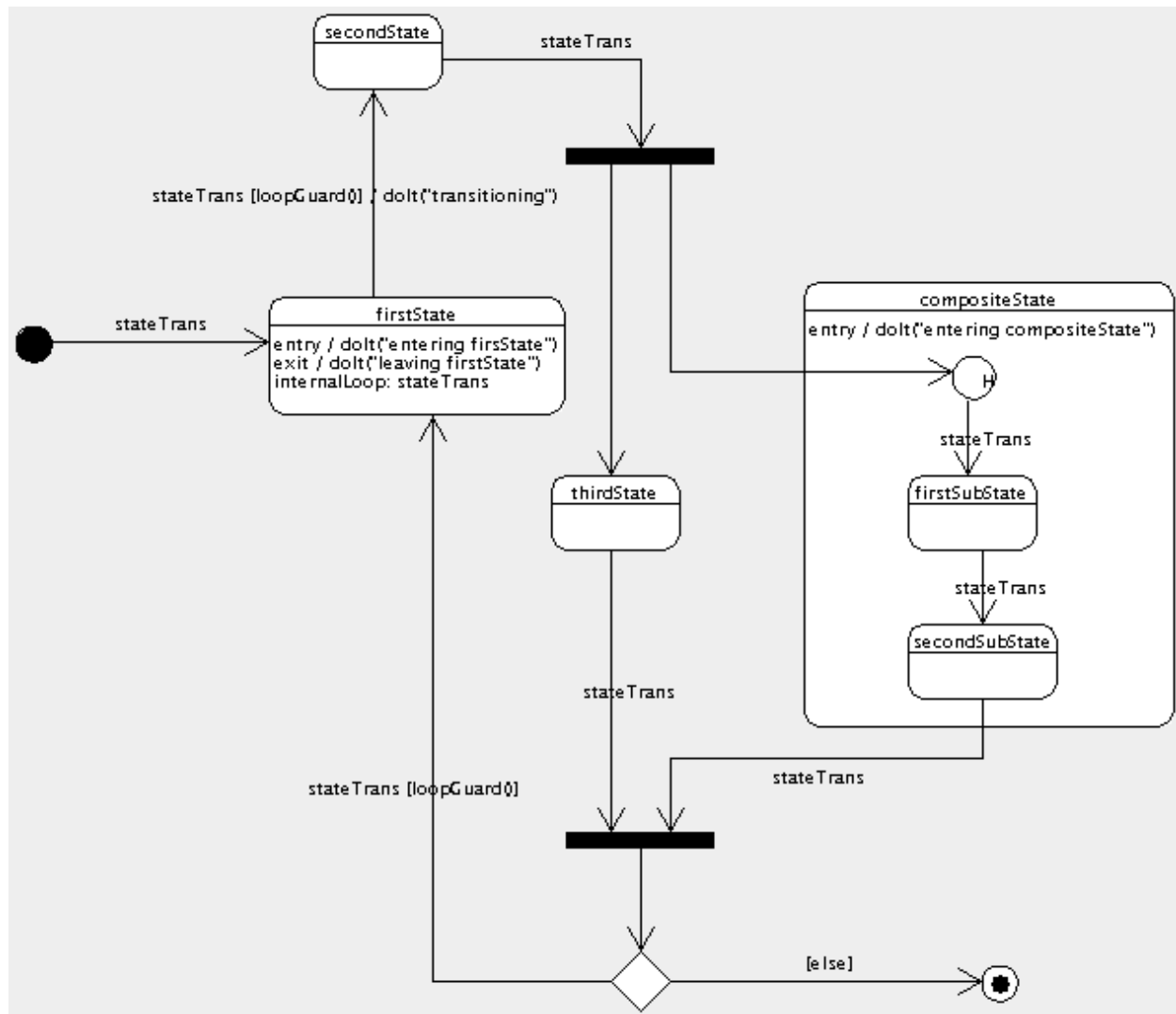


## Note

The whole area of behavioral modeling is still under development in ArgoUML. Many of the facilities described in the UML standard have yet to be implemented or are not fully implemented in the current release.

Figure 18.1 shows a state diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 18.1. Possible artifacts on a state diagram.**



### 18.1.1. Limitations Concerning State Diagrams in ArgoUML

The state diagrams is generally well drawn, but only call events are supported, and these are purely textual, with no way to link them back to their associated operations.

Code generation from state diagrams is not properly developed yet.

## 18.2. State

A state models a condition when some (usually implicit) invariant holds for the parent class. This may be a static situation, or some dynamic activity “in progress”. Within the UML metamodel, `State` is a sub-class of `StateVertex`.

A state is represented on a state diagram in ArgoUML as a rectangle with rounded corners, with a horizontal line separating the name at the top from the description of the behavior below. The description of the behavior includes the entry and exit actions and any internal transitions.



## Caution

The current release of ArgoUML does not record “Do activities# on the diagram.

## 18.2.1. State Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for states are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 18.2.2, “State Property Toolbar# and Section 18.2.3, “Property Fields For State# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the state define the bounding box of the state.



## Caution

The `Shadow` field has no effect— in the current release of ArgoUML. There are no shadow effects provided for states on the diagram.

Source	Standard tab, containing just the name of the state.
--------	--



## Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain code to implement the state (code for actions will be associated with the particular actions). This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>State</code> within the UML metamodel.
-------------	--

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>State</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the state is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



## Note

Derived states still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



## Note


The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the

*documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 18.2.2. State Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the state from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an state from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 18.2.3. Property Fields For State

Name

Text box. The name of the state. By convention state names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. State has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.



### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for states. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

	 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).
Namespace	<p>Text box. Records the namespace for the state. This is the package hierarchy.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).</p>
Incoming	<p>Text area. Lists the transitions that enter this state, including any internal transitions within the state (described below).</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open. Navigate to the selected transition.</li> </ul>
Outgoing	<p>Text area. Lists the transitions that leave this state, including any internal transitions within the state (described below).</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected action, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open. Navigate to the selected transition.</li> </ul>
Entry-Action	<p>Text box. Lists the action (if any) to be invoked on entry to this state.</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open. Navigate to the selected action.</li> <li>• Add. Add a new action.</li> <li>• Delete. Delete the selected action.</li> </ul>
Exit-Action	<p>Text box. Lists the action (if any) to be invoked on exit from this state.</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected action, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open. Navigate to the selected action.</li> <li>• Add. Add a new action.</li> <li>• Delete. Delete the selected action.</li> </ul>
Do-Activity	<p>Text box. Lists the action (if any) to be invoked while in this state.</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected action, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.</p>

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected action.
- **Add.** Add a new action.
- **Delete.** Delete the selected action.

**Internal Transitions** Text area. Lists the internal transitions of the state. Such transitions neither exit nor enter the state, so only the `Do-Activity` (see above) will be executed if such a transition is taken.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected transition, button 2 gives a pop up menu with two entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected transition.
- **Add.** Add a new internal transition.

## 18.3. Action

An action specifies an executable statement and is an abstraction of a computational procedure that can change the state of the model. In the UML metamodel it is a child of both `Model` and `ActionSequence`. Since in the metamodel an action sequence is itself an action that is an aggregation of other actions, an action sequence may be used anywhere an action may be.

There are a number of different types of action that are children of action within the UML metamodel.

- **CreateAction.** Associated with a classifier, this action creates an instance of that classifier.
- **CallAction.** Associated with an operation of a class, this action calls the given operation.
- **ReturnAction.** An action used to return a result to an earlier caller.
- **SendAction.** Associated with a signal, this action causes the signal to be raised.
- **TerminateAction.** Causes the invoking object to self-destruct.
- **DestroyAction.** Destroys the specified target object.

An action is represented by the text of its expression.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML does not show “Do activities# on states, or effects on transitions.

### 18.3.1. Action Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for actions are as follows.

`ToDoItem`

Standard tab.

Properties	See Section 18.3.2, “Action Property Toolbar# and Section 18.3.3, “Property Fields For Action# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The contents of this tab relate to the owning artifact (state or transition), not the action, and any changes affect that owning artifact.
Source	Standard tab, containing the expression for the action.

**Note**

In the fullness of time this tab will contain code to implement the action. This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Action</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Action</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the action is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.


**Note**

Derived actions still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.

**Note**

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML


## 18.3.2. Action Property Toolbar

 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



## Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

## 18.3.3. Property Fields For Action

**Name** Text box. The name of the action. By convention action names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



## Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

**Expression** Text box. The expression that defines the action.



## Caution

The current release of ArgoUML only partially implements actions. As a practical convention it is suggested that call actions are shown as the name of the operation generating the action with any arguments in parentheses and that send actions are shown as the name of the signal generating the action with any arguments in parentheses. Return actions should be shown as the expression for the value they return, or empty otherwise. Create and destroy actions should be shown as `create(<target>)` and `destroy(<target>)`. Terminate action should be shown as `terminate`.

**Language** Text box. This is not part of standard UML, but in the partial implementation of actions currently available in UML it may be useful to indicate that the expression is written in a particular programming language.

## 18.4. Composite State

A composite state is a state that contains other states (known as sub-states), allowing hierarchical state machines to be constructed.

A composite state is represented on a state diagram in ArgoUML as a large rectangle with rounded corners, with a horizontal line separating the name at the top from the description of the behavior and the model of the sub-state machine below. The description of the behavior includes the entry and exit actions and any internal transitions.

Sub-states are placed within a composite machine by placing them entirely within the composite state when creating them for the first time in the editing pane.

The description of a composite state is almost identical to that of a state (see Section 18.2, “State# and so is not duplicated here. The single difference is one additional field below the field for `Stereotype`, which is described as follows.

**Subvertices** Text area. Lists the sub-states contained within this composite state.



Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- open. Navigate to the selected sub-state.

## 18.5. Transition

A transition is a directed relation between a source state (or composite state) and destination state (or composite state). Within the UML metamodel, `Transition` is a sub-class of `ModelElement`.

A transition is represented on a state diagram in ArgoUML as an arrow connecting the source to the destination state. Alongside the state is the name of the transition (if any) separated by a colon (:) from the trigger action, any guard in square brackets ([]) separated by a slash (/) from any effect expression.

### 18.5.1. Transition Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for transitions are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 18.5.2, “Transition Property Toolbar#” and Section 18.5.3, “Property Fields For Transition#” below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the transition have no effect, since the position of the transition is defined by its end points.



#### Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML changing the color of the line does not change the color of the arrow head.

Source	Standard tab, containing just the name of the transition, any guard and any effect in the same format as the diagram.
--------	---



#### Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain any code to implement the transition (code for the effect and guard will be associated with their artifacts). This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Transition</code> within the UML metamodel.
-------------	---

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Transition</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	---

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the tran-

sition is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or *false* meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived transitions still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 18.5.2. Transition Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the transition from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a transition from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 18.5.3. Property Fields For Transition

Name

Text box. The name of the transition. By convention transition names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.


Stereotype

Drop down selector. Transition has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.

**Caution**

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for transitions. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Source

Text box. Lists the source state for the transition.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

Target

Text box. Lists the target state for the transition.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

Trigger

Text box. Lists the trigger event (if any) which invokes this transition.

**Note**

UML does not require there to be a trigger, if a guard is defined. The transition is taken immediately if the guard is true.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected event.
- Delete. Delete the selected event.
- Add. Add a new event. Grayed out if there is already an event defined.

Guard

Text box. Lists the guard expression (if any) which must be true before this transition can be taken.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected guard.
- Delete. Delete the selected guard.
- Add. Add a new guard. Grayed out if there is already a guard defined.

Effect

Text box. Lists the action (if any) to be invoked as this transition is taken.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected action, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected action.
- Delete. Delete the selected action.
- Add. Add a new action.

## 18.6. Call Event

An event is an observable occurrence. In the UML metamodel it is a child of `ModelElement`.

There are a number of different types of events that are children of event within the UML metamodel.

- `SignalEvent`. Associated with a signal, this event is caused by the signal being raised.
- `CallEvent`. Associated with an operation of a class, this event is caused by a call to the given operation. The expected effect is that the steps of the operation will be executed.
- `TimeEvent`. An event cause by expiration of a timing deadline.
- `ChangeEvent`. An event caused by a particular expression (of attributes and associations) becoming true.

An action is represented by its name.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML does not show the parameters of the event.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML has only partially implemented events, and currently indicates that they are always call events. In practice, since only the name and parameters can be specified, the call event tab can be used for any event. The name field should be used to indicate that it is a signal, timing or change event.

## 18.6.1. Call Event Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for call events are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 18.6.2, “Call Event Property Toolbar# and Section 18.6.3, “Property Fields For Call Event# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The contents of this tab relate to the owning artifact (transition), not the call event, and any changes affect that owning artifact.
Source	Standard tab, containing the name of the call event.



### Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain code to implement the call event. This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>CallEvent</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Call Event</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the call event is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note


Derived call events still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



### Note


The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 18.6.2. Call Event Property Toolbar

Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 Go back	Navigate back to the previous artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.



Add parameter

This creates a new parameter for the event operation as the current parameter, navigating immediately to the properties tab for that parameter (see Section 16.8, “Parameter#”).

## 18.6.3. Property Fields For Call Event

Name

Text box. The name of the call event. By convention call event names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name in the same way as operations.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

**Tip**

For call events it makes sense to use the name of the associated operation. For signal events it make sense to use the name of the signal, prefixed by [sig]. For time events use the time expression, prefixed by [time] and for change events the change expression, prefixed by [change].

Parameters

Text area, with entries for all the actual parameter values of the event (see Section 16.8, “Parameter#”).

Button 1 click on any of the parameters navigates to that parameter. button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with four entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected parameter.
- Add. Create a new parameter and navigate to it.
- Move Up. Only available where there are two or more parameters, and the parameter selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- Move Down. Only available where there are two or more parameters listed, and the parameter selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## 18.7. Guard

A guard is associated with a transition. At the time an event is dispatched, the guard is evaluated, and if false, its transition is disabled. In the UML metamodel, `Guard` is a child of `ModelElement`.

An guard is represented by the text of its expression in square brackets (`[ ]`).

### 18.7.1. Guard Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for guards are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 18.7.2, “Guard Property Toolbar# and Section 18.7.3, “Property Fields For Guard# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab. The contents of this tab relate to the owning artifact (transition), not the guard, and any changes affect that owning artifact.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab, containing the expression for the guard.



#### Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain code to implement the guard. This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Guard</code> within the UML metamodel.
<code>Tagged Values</code>	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Guard</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the guard is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



#### Note



Derived guards still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



#### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML


## 18.7.2. Guard Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 Go back	Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward	Navigate forward to the next artifact.
--	--



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

## 18.7.3. Property Fields For Guard

Name	Text box. The name of the guard. By convention guard names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.
------	---



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

Expression	Text box. The expression that defines the guard.
Language	Text box. This is not part of standard UML, but in the partial implementation of guards currently available in UML it may be useful to indicate that the expression is written in a particular programming language.
Transition	<p>Text box, listing the transition that owns this guard.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the transition navigates to that transition. button 2 click brings up a pop up menu with one entry.</p>

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

## 18.8. Pseudostate

A pseudostate encompasses a number of different transient vertices on a state machine diagram. They do not have the properties of a full state and serve only as a connection point for transactions (but with some semantic value). Within the UML metamodel, `Pseudostate` is a sub-class of `StateVertex`.

The representation of a pseudostate on a state diagram in ArgoUML depends on the particular type of pseudostate: initial, deepHistory, shallowHistory, join, fork, junction and choice. ArgoUML does not allow you to place a pseu-



dostate directly, but only through tools for the specific types of pseudostate. These are described in separate sections below (see Section 18.9, “Initial State#”, Section 18.11, “Branch#”, Section 18.12, “Fork#”, Section 18.13, “Join#”, Section 18.14, “Shallow History#” and Section 18.15, “Deep History (to be improved...)#”).



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML does not provide support for a junction pseudostate.

## 18.8.1. Pseudostate Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for pseudostates are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 18.8.2, “Pseudostate Property Toolbar#” and Section 18.8.3, “Property Fields For Pseudostate#” below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab.



### Caution

The `Shadow` field has no effect— in the current release of ArgoUML. There are no shadow effects provided for states on the diagram.

Source	Standard tab, containing just the name of the pseudostate.
--------	--



### Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain any code to implement the pseudostate. This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Pseudostate</code> within the UML metamodel.
-------------	--

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Pseudostate</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the pseudostate is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived pseudostates still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




## Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 18.8.2. Pseudostate Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



## Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



## Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the pseudostate from the model



## Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a pseudostate from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 18.8.3. Property Fields For Pseudostate

Name

Text box. The name of the pseudostate. By convention pseudostate names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



## Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.



## Tip

Pseudostate names are not shown on the diagram and it is not usually necessary to give them a name.

**Kind** Radio buttons. Radio button indicating the type of pseudostate: junction, branch, fork, join, deep history and shallow history.



### Note

In ArgoUML these buttons are defined by the type of pseudostate created and cannot be changed. As a consequence they are shown grayed out.

**Incoming** Text area. Lists any incoming transitions for the pseudostate.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected transition, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

**Outgoing** Text area. Lists any outgoing transitions for the pseudostate.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected transition, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

## 18.9. Initial State

The initial state is a pseudostate (see Section 18.8, “Pseudostate#”) representing the default state of a state machine (or composite state) when it is created. It is the state from which any initial transition is made.

As a consequence it is not permissible to have incoming transitions. ArgoUML will not let you create such transitions, and if you import a model that has such transitions, a critic will complain.

An initial state is represented on the diagram as a solid disc.

## 18.10. Final State

If a transition reaches a final state, it implies completion of the activity associated with that composite state, or at the top level, of the complete state machine. In the UML metamodel `FinalState` is a child of `State`.



### Note

A final state is a true state (with all its attributes), *not* a pseudostate.

Completion at the top level implies termination (i.e. destruction) of the owning object instance.

The representation of a final state on the diagram is a circle with a small disc at its center.

### 18.10.1. Final State Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for final states are as follows.

**ToDoItem** Standard tab.

Properties	See Section 18.10.2, “Final State Property Toolbar# and Section 18.10.3, “Property Fields For Final State# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab.



### Caution

The `Shadow` field has no effect— in the current release of ArgoUML. There are no shadow effects provided for states on the diagram.

Source	Standard tab, containing just the name of the final state, any guard and any effect in the same format as the diagram.
--------	--



### Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain any code to implement the final state. This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Final State</code> within the UML metamodel.
-------------	--

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Final State</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the final state is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note



Derived final states still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.



### Note


The `UML Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 18.10.2. Final State Property Toolbar

 Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
 Go back	Navigate back to the previous artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.



Delete

This deletes the final state from the model

**Warning**

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a final state from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 18.10.3. Property Fields For Final State

Name

Text box. The name of the final state. By convention final state names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

**Tip**

Final state names are not shown on the diagram and it is not usually necessary to give them a name.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Final State has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.

**Caution**

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype `realize` for final states. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the `Abstraction` metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype



icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Incoming

Text area. Lists any incoming transitions for the final state.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected transition, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

## 18.11. Branch

Branch is a pseudostate (see Section 18.8, “Pseudostate#”) which allows a dynamic choice of outgoing transitions. The chosen transition is that whose guard is true at the time of the transition (if more than one is true, one is selected at random).



### Note

UML calls this sort of branch a *choice*. UML also defines a static branch, *junction*, based on static conditional expressions, which is not supported in the current release of ArgoUML

A branch is represented on the diagram as a solid (white by default) diamond.

## 18.12. Fork

Fork is a pseudostate (see Section 18.8, “Pseudostate#”) which splits a transition in to two or more concurrent transitions.



### Caution

The outgoing transitions should not have guards. However the current release of ArgoUML will not enforce this.

A fork is represented on the diagram as a solid (black by default) horizontal bar.

## 18.13. Join

Fork is a pseudostate (see Section 18.8, “Pseudostate#”) which joins two or more concurrent transitions into a single transition.



### Caution

The incoming transitions should not have guards. However the current release of ArgoUML will not enforce this.

A join is represented on the diagram as a solid (black by default) horizontal bar.

## 18.14. Shallow History

Shallow History is a pseudostate (see Section 18.8, “Pseudostate#”) within a composite state, which causes control to be passed to the state that last had control within the composite state. A transition may show a default state to use if the composite state has never been entered before.

The shallow history ignores any composite states within this composite state, dealing only with direct sub-states.

A shallow history is represented on the diagram as a circle containing the letter H.

## 18.15. Deep History (to be improved...)

Shallow History is a pseudostate (see Section 18.8, “Pseudostate#”) within a composite state, which causes control to be passed to the state that last had control within the composite state. A transition may show a default state to use if the composite state has never been entered before.

The deep history will transfer to a state within any hierarchy of composite states within this composite state if that is necessary.

A deep history is represented on the diagram as a circle containing the symbols H\*.

---

# Chapter 19. ArgoUML Collaboration Diagram Artifact Reference



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 19.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within a collaboration diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

There is a close relationship between this material and the properties tab of the details pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers Properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.



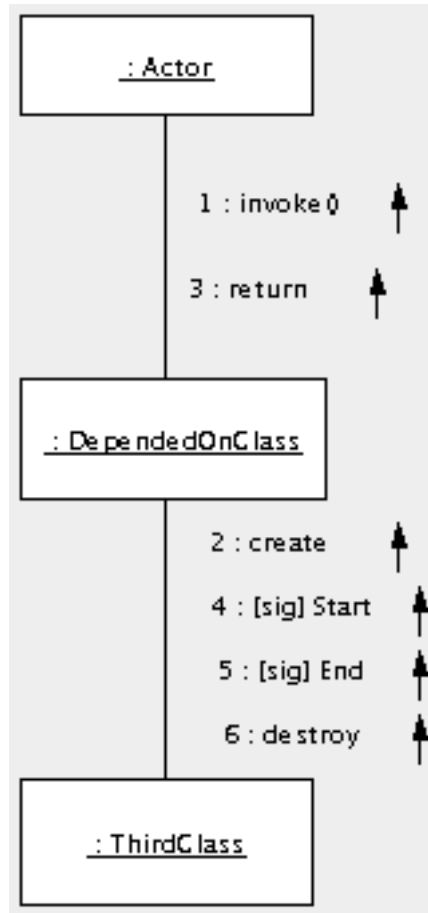
## Caution

Collaboration diagrams are not fully developed yet in ArgoUML. Many aspects are not fully implemented, or may not behave as expected. In particular there are some serious problems with layout of the collaboration roles and messages.

Figure 19.1 shows a collaboration diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 19.1. Possible artifacts on a collaboration diagram.**





### 19.1.1. Limitations Concerning Collaboration Diagrams in ArgoUML

The collaboration diagram is still rather under-developed in ArgoUML. In particular there is no way to show instance collaborations (based on objects and links) rather than specification collaborations.

The biggest difficulties are with the messages. There are problems with the sequencing of the messages and their display on the diagram. The actions behind them are purely textual in implementation and there is no way to link them back to their associated operations or signals.

## 19.2. Classifier Role

A classifier role is a specialization of a classifier, used to show its behavior in a particular context. In the UML metamodel `Classifier Role` is a sub-class of `Classifier`. Within a collaboration diagram classifier roles may be used in one of two ways:

- To represent the classifier in a particular behavioral context (the *specification level*); or
- to specify a particular instance of the classifier (the *instance level*).

In this latter form, classifier roles are identical to the instances used in sequence diagrams (see Chapter 17, Ar-

*goUML Sequence Diagram Artifact Reference*) and a collaboration diagram shows the same information as the sequence diagram, but in a different presentation.



### Caution

A collaboration diagram should not mix classifier roles used as the specifier level and the instance level.

A classifier role is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as a plain box labeled with the classifier role name (if any) and classifier, separated by a colon (:).



### Caution

A classifier role should properly also show object name (if any) preceding the classifier role name and separated from it by a slash (/). This allows classifier roles in a specification level diagram to be distinguished from instances in an instance level diagram.

This distinction is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

## 19.2.1. Classifier Role Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for classifier roles are as follows.

<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 19.2.2, “Classifier Role Property Toolbar# and Section 19.2.3, “Property Fields For Classifier Role# below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Source</code>	Standard tab, but with no contents.



### Caution

A classifier role should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

<code>Constraints</code>	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>ClassifierRole</code> within the UML metamodel.
--------------------------	---



### Note

This is an important distinction from `Instance` used in sequence diagrams, which is able to talk about creation and destruction. Where a collaboration is being used at instance level, it may be appropriate to create these constraints for use on collaboration diagrams.

<code>Tagged Values</code>	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Classifier Role</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
----------------------------	--

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Showing the permanence of the state information associated with the classifier role. Values `transitory` (state is destroyed when the classifier role is destroyed) and `persistent` (state is preserved when the classifier role is destroyed).
- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of the semantics of the classifier role.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the classifier role is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived classifier roles still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 19.2.2. Classifier Role Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the classifier role from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an classifier role from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 19.2.3. Property Fields For Classifier Role

**Name** Text box. The name of the classifier role. By convention classifier role names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

**Classifier** Drop down selector. The name of the classifier of which this is a classifier role.



### Note

In the current release of ArgoUML the same graphical presentation is used, even if the classifier role is actually representing an instance of an actor (when a stick-man would be more usual).

**Stereotype** Drop down selector. Classifier Role should be provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for Classifier (metaclass, powerType, process, thread and utility). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, machine, organization and person.




### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype `realize` for classifier roles. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the `Abstraction` metaclass.



### Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML the standard stereotypes for Classifier (metaclass, powerType, process, thread and utility) are not provided.

**Navigate Stereotype**  icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

**Namespace** Text box. Records the namespace for the classifier role. This is the package hierarchy.  
Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

**Association Roles** Text area. Lists the association roles that are linked to this classifier role.  
Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected association role.
- Add. Add a new association role.



## Warning

In the current release of ArgoUML this creates an association, not an association role. In any case there is no mechanism to add a newly created artifact to the diagram.

- **Delete.** Delete the selected association role.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more association roles, and the association role selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.



## Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Association roles can not be moved in the order. To change the order a association role must be deleted and then recreated on the diagram.

- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more association roles listed, and the association role selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.



## Caution

In the current release of ArgoUML this entry is always grayed out. Association roles can not be moved in the order. To change the order a collaboration role must be deleted and then recreated on the diagram.

## 19.3. Association Role

An association role is a specialization of an association, used to describe an associations behavior in a particular context. In the UML metamodel `Association Role` is a sub-class of `Association`.

An association role is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as a line connecting the instances concerned. However on a sequence diagram the representation is modified to reflect the type of action associated with the stimulus carried on the link (see Section 17.3, “Stimulus#”).

The association role is labeled with the association role name (if any).



## Caution

An association role should properly show link name (if any) preceding the association role name and separated from it by a slash (/) and be followed by the association name and separated from it by a colon (:) in the same manner as a classifier role. This allows association roles in a specification level diagram to be distinguished from links in an instance level diagram.

This distinction is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

### 19.3.1. Association Role Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for association roles are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 19.3.2, “Association Role Property Toolbar# and Section 19.3.3, “Property Fields For Association Role# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the association role notionally define the bounding box of the association role. However if you change them it will have no effect.
Source	Standard tab, but with no contents.



### Caution

An association role should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

Constraints	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>AssociationEnd</code> has the following standard constraints defined.
-------------	---

- `xor` (from the superclass `Association`). Applied to a set of association roles, indicating that over that set, exactly one association role is manifest for any particular association instance.

Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>AssociationRole</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.
---------------	--

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Association`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the association is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived association roles still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 19.3.2. Association Role Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.


 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the association role from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an association role from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 19.3.3. Property Fields For Association Role

Name

Text box. The name of the association role. By convention association role names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Association role should be provided by default with the UML standard stereotype from the superclass, `Association ((implicit))` and the additional Association stereotypes for the Software Engineering Process and Business Modeling in the UML standard (`communicate` and `subscribe`). ArgoUML also provides the stereotypes, `machine`, `organization` and `person`.



### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype `realize` for association roles. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the `Abstraction metaclass`.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace	<p>Text box. Records the namespace for the association role. This is the package hierarchy.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).</p>
Messages	<p>Text area. Lists the messages that are associated with this association role.</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>Open</code>. Navigate to the selected message.</li><li>• <code>Move Up</code>. Only available where there are two or more messages, and the message selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.</li><li>• <code>Move Down</code>. Only available where there are two or more messages listed, and the message selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.</li></ul>
Association End Roles	<p>Text area. Lists the ends of this association role. An association role can have any number of ends, but two is generally the only useful number (link objects can lead to a third end on instance level diagrams, but this is not supported by ArgoUML). For more on association end roles see Section 19.4, “Association End Role#.</p> <p>The names are listed, unless the association end role has no name, when it is shown as anon.</p> <p>Button 1 click on an association end role will navigate to that end. Button 2 click gives a pop up menu with three options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>Open</code>. Where an association end exists, navigate to it.</li><li>• <code>Move Up</code>. Only available where there are two or more association end roles, and the association end role selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.</li><li>• <code>Move Down</code>. Only available where there are two or more association end roles listed, and the association end role selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.</li></ul>

## 19.4. Association End Role

An association end role is a specialization of an association end, used to describe an association end's behavior in a particular context. In the UML metamodel `AssociationEndRole` is a sub-class of `AssociationEnd`.

Two or more association end roles are associated with each association role (see Section 19.3, “Association Role#), although for ArgoUML, the number of ends can only usefully be two.

The association end role has no direct access on any diagram, although its stereotype, name and multiplicity is shown at the relevant end of the parent association role (see Figure 19.1). Where shared or composite aggregation is selected for one association end role, the opposite end is shown as a solid diamond (composite aggregation) or hollow diamond (shared aggregation).





## Note

ArgoUML does not currently support qualifiers, as described in the UML 1.3 standard.



## Caution

An association end role should be have the same, or “stricter# attribute values than its base association end. In particular its navigability should be no more general. There is as yet no critic in ArgoUML to offer advice on this rule.

## 19.4.1. Association End Role Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for association end roles are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 19.4.2, “Association End Role Property Toolbar# and Section 19.4.3, “Property Fields For Association End Role# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab, but with no meaning, since the only representation is via the parent association role.
Source	Standard tab. You would not expect to generate any code for an association end role, but this tab contains a declaration for the association end role as an instance of the classifier artifact to which it is connected.



## Note

This is probably not the correct thing to do for good code generation, and will need to be changed in future versions of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>AssociationEndRole</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>AssociationEndRole</code> has the following standard tagged values defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the association end role is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul>



## Tip

Derived association end roles still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation. However the tag only makes sense for an association end role if it is also applied to the parent association role.




## Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 19.4.2. Association End Role Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up to the association role to which this end role belongs.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



## Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.


 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



## Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go to other end

This navigates to the other end of the association role.

## 19.4.3. Property Fields For Association End Role

Name

Text box. The name of the association end role, which provides a *role name* for this end of the association role. This role name can be used for navigation, and in an implementation context, provides a name by which the source end of an association role can reference the target end.




## Note

ArgoUML does not enforce any naming convention for association end roles.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Association end role is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for `AssociationEndRole` (`association`, `global`, `local`, `parameter`, `self`). ArgoUML also provides the additional stereotypes, `machine`, `organization` and `person`.

Navigate Stereotype


 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 14.4, “Stereotypes#”).

Type

Drop down selector providing access to all standard UML types provided by ArgoUML and all new classes created within the current model.

This is the type of the entity attached to this end of the association role.

Navigate Class

 icon. If a datatype, interface or class has been selected, this will navigate to its property sheet, (see Section 14.3, “Datatype#”, Section 16.14, “Interface#” and Section 16.5, “Class#”).

Multiplicity

Drop down menu. Records the multiplicity of this association end role (with respect to the other end), i.e. how many instances of this end may be associated with an instance of the other end. The multiplicity is shown on the diagram at that end of the association role.

Association Role

Text box. Records the parent association role for this association end role. Button 1 click on this entry will navigate to that association role. Button 2 click will invoke a pop-up menu, with a single entry, `Open` that will also navigate to that association role.

Navigable

Check box, with a single entry, `navigable`. Indicates that this end can be navigated to from the other end.



### Note

The UML 1.3 standard provides a number of options for how navigation is displayed on an association end role. ArgoUML uses option 3, which means that arrow heads are shown at the end of an association role, when navigation is enabled at only one end, to indicate the direction in which navigation is possible. This means that the default, with both ends navigable has no arrows. This is an appropriate representation for use cases.

Ordering

Radio box, with three entries `unordered`, `ordered` and `sorted`. Where there are multiple instances indicates the nature of any ordering.



### Note

`sorted` represents an extension to UML 1.3.

Aggregation

Radio box, with three entries `none`, `aggregation` and `composite`. Indicates whether the relationship with the far end represents some type of loose whole-part relationship (`aggregation`) or tight whole-part relationship (`composite`).

Shared aggregation is shown by a hollow diamond at the “whole#” end of the association role. Composite aggregation is shown by a solid diamond.



### Note

You may not have aggregation at both ends of an association role. The “whole#” end of a composite aggregation should have a multiplicity of one.

Scope

Check box, with a single entry, `classifier`. Indicates that this end relates to a class rather than an instance of a class (the default).

Changeability

Radio box, with three entries `changeable`, `frozen` and `add only`. Indicates whether instances of this end of the attributed may be: i) created and deleted by the source after the target instance is created; ii) not created or deleted by the source after

the target instance is created; or iii) created but not deleted after the target instance is created.

Visibility

Radio box, with three entries `public`, `protected` and `private`. Indicates whether navigation to this end may be by: i) any classifier; ii) only the source classifier and its children; or iii) only by the source classifier.

## 19.5. Message

A message is a communication between two instances of an association role on a specification level collaboration diagram. It describes an action which will generate the stimulus associated with the message. On a collaboration diagram a message is associated with an association role. In the UML metamodel `Message` is a sub-class of `ModelElement`.



### Note

On an instance level collaboration diagram, the stimuli between instances are shown on the links, rather than the messages that describe the communication channel.

The message is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML by its name separated by a colon from the expression defining the associated action, followed by an upward pointing arrow. By convention the name is the message sequence number, either as an integer or as a decimal number to show hierarchy.



### Note

ArgoUML will provide a sequence number as the default name for a newly created message.



### Caution

The arrow should show the direction of the communication, but in the current release of ArgoUML is always shown pointing upwards. It should also be stereotyped to indicate whether the associated action is call, synchronous send, asynchronous send or return (usually just implied). The association role may be constrained as `new`, `destroyed` or `transient` if it is created, destroyed or both respectively during the interaction. However these are not shown as messages, since they are actions (create, terminate, destroy) of the associated classifier roles, not communications.



### Warning

The current release of ArgoUML has problems with message positioning and will tend to place them on top of each other, refusing to accept moved positions as permanent.

### 19.5.1. Message Details Tabs





The details tabs that are active for messages are as follows.

ToDoItem

Standard tab.


Properties

See Section 19.5.2, “Message Property Toolbar#” and Section 19.5.3, “Property Fields For Message#” below.

Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	<p>Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the message define the bounding box of the message. The <code>Fill</code> field defines the fill color of the arrow head, and the <code>Line</code> field defines the arrow line. Altering the <code>Shadow</code> field has no effect.</p> <div><b>Caution</b><p>In the current release of ArgoUML changing the values of the <code>Bounds</code> field is possible, but will make only a temporary change to the position of the message. Selecting any artifact on the screen causes the message to return to its original position and the original values to be restored. This means messages end up on top of each other.</p></div>
Source	<p>Standard tab, showing the message name and action expression separated by a double colon (<code>::</code>).</p> <div><b>Caution</b><p>A message probably should not generated any code of itself. That should be left to the action and possibly stimulus associated with it. In any case changes to this tab are ignored.</p></div>
Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Message</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Message</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the message is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul> <div><b>Note</b><p>Derived messages still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.</p></div> <div><b>Note</b><p>The UML <code>Element</code> metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the <i>documentation tab</i> under ArgoUML</p></div>

## 19.5.2. Message Property Toolbar

Go up	Navigate up through the package structure.
-------	--


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.



Delete

This deletes the message from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a message from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 19.5.3. Property Fields For Message

Name

Text box. The name of a message is usually its sequence number, either an integer, or a decimal (allowing alternative message hierarchies to be clearly described). ArgoUML will supply an integer sequence number by default.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Message has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.



### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for messages. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the message. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

Sender

Text box. Identifies the classifier role which sent this message.

Button 1 click navigates to the sender classifier role, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected sender classifier role.

**Receiver**

Text box. Identifies the classifier role which receives this message.

Button 1 click navigates to the receiver classifier role, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected receiver classifier role.

**Predecessor**

Text area. Identifies the messages, the completion of whose execution enables this message.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected message, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected message.

**Warning**

This entry is always grayed out in the current release of ArgoUML

**Activator**

Text area. Identifies the message which invokes the behavior that causes the sending of this message.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected message, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected message.

**Warning**

This entry is always grayed out in the current release of ArgoUML

**Action**

Text box. Lists the action (see Section 18.3, “Action#”) this message invokes to raise a stimulus.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected action, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected action.
- Delete. Delete the selected action.
- Add. Add a new action.

**Warning**

The current release of ArgoUML seems to have some problems in

this area. Adding actions seems to replace any existing action, and also causes message graphics to become tangled together. Use with considerable care.



---

# Chapter 20. ArgoUML Activity Diagram Artifact Reference



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 20.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within an Activity diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

There is a close relationship between this material and the Properties Tab of the Details Pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers Properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

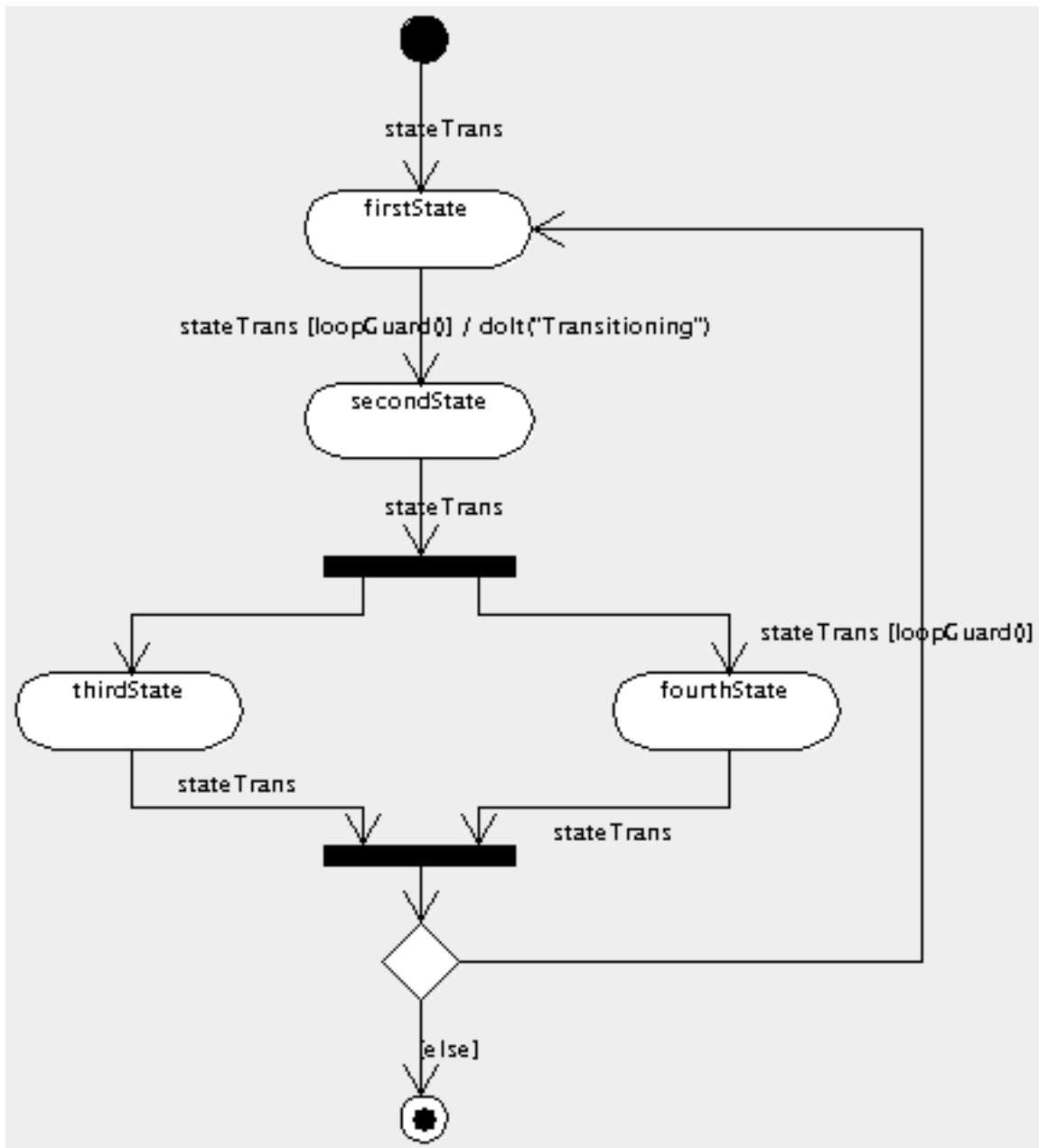


## Caution

Activity diagrams are not fully developed yet in ArgoUML. Many aspects are not fully implemented, or may not behave as expected. In particular swim lanes, action-object flows, control icons (signals), sub-activities and interactions with other classifiers are not provided. In practice there is little in the current implementation of the activity diagram to distinguish it from the state diagram (see Chapter 18, *ArgoUML State Diagram Artifact Reference*).

Figure 20.1 shows an Activity Diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 20.1. Possible artifacts on an activity diagram.**



### 20.1.1. Limitations Concerning Activity Diagrams in ArgoUML

The activity diagram is generally well drawn, but suffers from the same limitations as the state diagram (see Section 18.1.1, “Limitations Concerning State Diagrams in ArgoUML#”).

A particular limitation is the lack of any support for swimlanes.

## 20.2. Action State

An action state represents execution of an atomic action, usually the invocation of an action. Within the UML meta-model, `ActionState` is a sub-class of `SimpleState`. It is a specialized simple state that only has an entry action, and with an implicit trigger as soon as that action is completed.



## Caution

As a consequence any outgoing transitions from an action state should not have explicit triggers defined (ArgoUML will not currently check for this). They may have guards to provide a choice where there is more than one transition.

An action state is represented on an activity diagram in ArgoUML as a rectangle with rounded corners containing the name of the action state.



## Caution

The UML standard expects that the activity diagram should contain the expression associated with the entry action, rather than the action state name.

## 20.2.1. Action State Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for action states are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 20.2.2, “Action State Property ToolBar# and Section 20.2.3, “Property fields for action state# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The values for the bounds of the action state define the bounding box of the action state.



## Caution

The `Shadow` field has no effect— in the current release of ArgoUML. There are no shadow effects provided for action states on the diagram.

Source	Standard tab that is empty.
--------	-----------------------------



## Note

In the fullness of time this tab will contain code to implement the action state (code for actions will be associated with the particular actions). This is not implemented in the current release of ArgoUML.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>ActionState</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>ActionState</code> has the following standard tagged values defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the action state is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or <code>false</code> meaning it cannot.</li></ul>

**Note**

Derived action states still have their value in analysis and design to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.


**Note**

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 20.2.2. Action State Property ToolBar

Go up


Navigate up through the package structure.

 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the action state from the model

**Warning**

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete an action state from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R)`.

## 20.2.3. Property fields for action state

Name

Text box. The name of the action state. By convention action state names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Action state has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.



### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for action states. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Entry-Action

Text box. Lists the action (if any) to be invoked on entry to this action state.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected action.
- Delete. Delete the selected action.
- Add. Add a new action.

Modifiers

Check box. Indicates whether the action state's actions may be executed concurrently if there are parallel executions invoked.



### Caution

This field is of limited value in the current release of ArgoUML in the absence of fields specifying dynamic arguments and dynamic multiplicity.

Incoming

Text area. Lists the transitions that enter this action state.



### Note

Unlike an ordinary state, internal transitions are not permitted for action states.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

Outgoing

Text area. Lists the transitions that leave this action state.



## Note

Unlike an ordinary state, internal transitions are not permitted for action states.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected action, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected transition.

## 20.3. Action

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.3, “Action#”).

## 20.4. Transition

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.5, “Transition#”).



### Caution

Remember that action states do not have explicit triggers. The transition is implicitly triggered as soon as the entry event of the action state is complete. An explicit trigger should not therefore be set.

The current release of ArgoUML will not check that this constraint is met.

## 20.5. Call Event

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.6, “Call Event#”).



### Caution

The only place this is used is for the trigger of a transition. However remember that action states do not have explicit triggers. The transition is implicitly triggered as soon as the entry event of the action state is complete. An explicit trigger should not therefore be set.

The current release of ArgoUML will not check that this constraint is met.

## 20.6. Guard

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.7, “Guard#”).

## 20.7. Initial State

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.9, “Initial State#”).

## 20.8. Final State

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.10, “Final State#”).

## 20.9. Branch

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.11, “Branch#”).



### Caution

As a detailed technicality, a branch on an activity diagram should be static, i.e. implemented as a `junction` pseudostate, rather than a `choice` pseudostate. The current release of ArgoUML uses `choice` which is wrong.

## 20.10. Fork

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.12, “Fork#”).

## 20.11. Join

This artifact is described in the context of state diagrams (see Section 18.13, “Join#”).

---

# Chapter 21. ArgoUML Deployment Diagram Artifact Reference



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 21.1. Introduction

This chapter describes each artifact that can be created within a Deployment Diagram. Note that some sub-artifacts of artifacts on the diagram may not actually themselves appear on the diagram.

There is a close relationship between this material and the Properties Tab of the Details Pane (see Section 10.4, “Properties Tab#). That section covers Properties in general, in this chapter they are linked to specific artifacts.

Within ArgoUML, the deployment diagram is also used for both component diagrams (i.e. without instances, showing static dependencies of components) and deployment diagrams (showing how instances of components are handled by instances of nodes at run-time).



## Caution

Deployment diagrams are not fully developed yet in ArgoUML. Some aspects are not fully implemented or may not behave as expected. Notable omissions are a correct representation for interfaces and proper stereotyping of the various dependency relationships.

Figure 21.1 shows a component diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 21.1. Possible artifacts on a component diagram.**



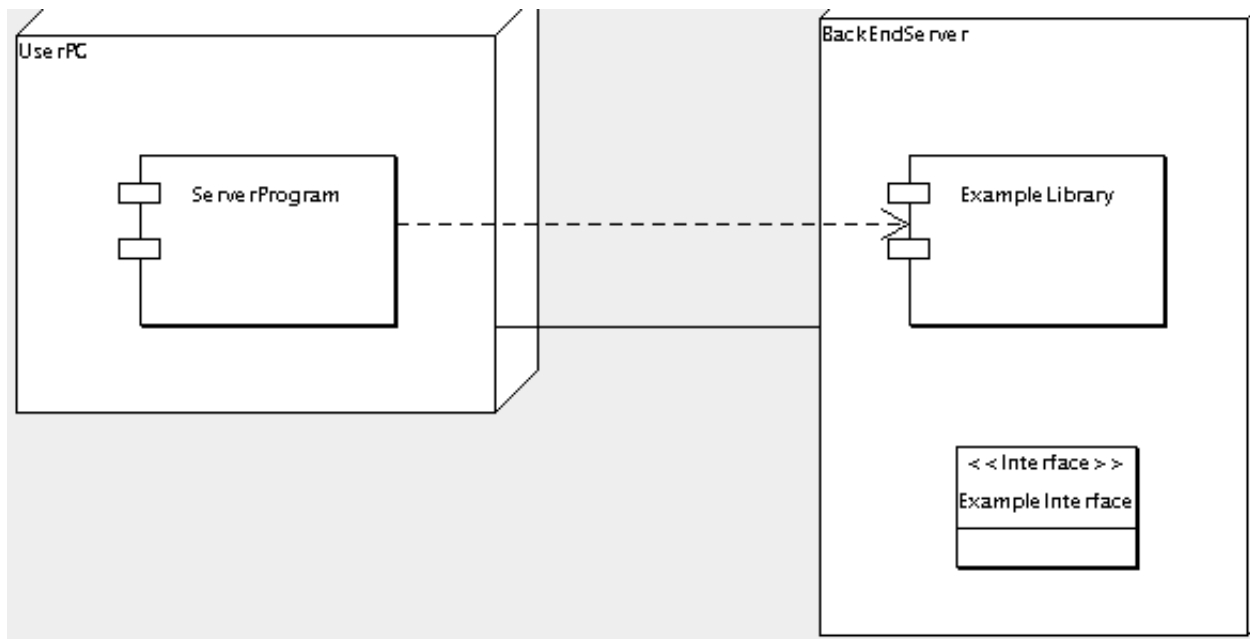
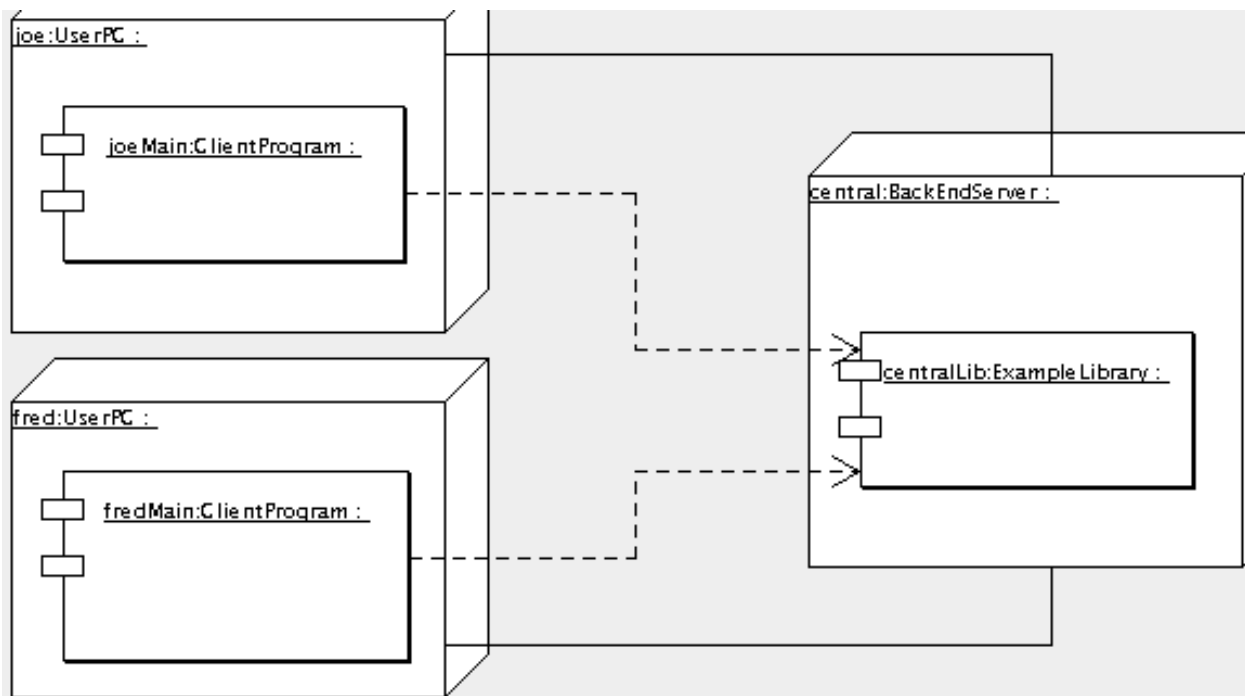


Figure 21.2 shows a deployment diagram with all possible artifacts displayed.

**Figure 21.2. Possible artifacts on a deployment diagram.**



### 21.1.1. Limitations Concerning Deployment Diagrams in ArgoUML

The deployment diagram is generally well drawn, but there are only a subset of the relationships that should be shown available, which restricts the ability to show dynamic behavior of deployed code.

It is an inconvenience that the alternative representation of an interface (as a small circle) is not supported.

## 21.2. Node

A node is a run-time physical object on which components may be deployed. In the UML metamodel it is a subclass of `Classifier`.

A node is represented on a class diagram as a three dimensional box, labeled with its name.

### 21.2.1. Node Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for nodes are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 21.2.2, “Node Property Toolbar# and Section 21.2.3, “Property Fields For Node# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the node on the diagram.



#### Warning

Beware that in the current release of ArgoUML, the bounding box just refers to the front face of the cube. This means that the three dimensional top and side may be ignored, for example when determining the limits of a diagram for saving graphics.

Altering the `Shadow` entry has no effect.

Source	Standard tab, but with no contents.
--------	-------------------------------------



#### Caution

A node should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

Constraints	Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for <code>Node</code> within the UML metamodel.
Tagged Values	Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>Node</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.
- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of

the semantics of the node.

- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the node is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived nodes still have their value in analysis to introduce useful names or concepts, and in design to avoid re-computation.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 21.2.2. Node Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.



Delete

This deletes the node from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a node from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 21.2.3. Property Fields For Node

Name

Text box. The name of the node. The name of a node has a leading capital letter, with

words separated by “bumpy caps#.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

#### Generalizations

Text area. Lists any node that *generalizes* this node.

Button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.

Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram. You will need to find it in the explorer and add it from there.



### Tip

It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.

- Delete. The link from the generalization to the node (*but not the generalization itself*) is removed.



### Tip

This *does not* remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.

- Move Up. Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- Move Down. Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

#### Stereotype

Drop down selector. ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.






### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for node instances. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.



### Warning

Node is a type of classifier, and so should have the stereotypes of a classifier by default in the UML standard. However these are missing in the current release of ArgoUML.

Navigate Stereotype	 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).
Modifiers	<p>Check box, with entries <code>abstract</code>, <code>final</code> and <code>root</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>abstract</code> is used to declare that this node cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized. The name of an abstract node is displayed in italics on the diagram.</li> <li><code>final</code> indicates that this node cannot be further specialized.</li> <li><code>root</code> indicates the node can have no generalization.</li> </ul>
Namespace	<p>Text box. Records the namespace for the node. This is the package hierarchy.</p> <p>Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).</p>
Specializations	<p>Text box. Lists any specialized node (i.e. for which this node is a generalization).</p> <p>button 1 click navigates to the generalization and opens its property tab.</p> <p>Button 2 click yields a drop down menu with five entries</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.</li> <li>Add. Add a new generalization. Note that the new generalization is added to the model, but not the diagram.</li> </ul> <div>  </div> <div> <p><b>Tip</b></p> </div> <div> <p>It is far easier to add generalizations by drawing them on the relevant diagram in the editing pane.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete. The link from the generalization to the node (<i>but not the generalization itself</i>) is removed.</li> </ul> <div>  </div> <div> <p><b>Tip</b></p> </div> <div> <p>This <i>does not</i> remove the generalization from the model or the diagram, leading to potentially very confusing diagrams. It is usually far easier to remove generalizations from the editing pane.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move Up. Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.</li> <li>Move Down. Only available where there are two or more specializations listed, and the specialization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.</li> </ul>
Components	<p>Text box. Lists any components (see Section 21.4, “Component#”) designed to be deployed on this type of node.</p> <p>Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with three</p>

entries.

- **Open.** Navigate to the selected component.
- **Move Up.** Only available where there are two or more components, and the component selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- **Move Down.** Only available where there are two or more components listed, and the component selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

## 21.3. Node Instance

A node instance is an instance of a node where component instances (see Section 21.5, “Component Instance#”) may reside. In the UML metamodel `NodeInstance` is a sub-class of `Instance` and is specifically an instance that is derived from a node.

A node instance is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as a three dimensional box labeled with the node instance name (if any) and node type, separated by a colon (:).



### Tip

It is the presence of the colon (:) that distinguishes a node instance from a node.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML there is no way of specifying the node type, so it must be done in the name. This leads to the representation having two colons, one at the very end.

### 21.3.1. Node Instance Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for node instances are as follows.






<code>ToDoItem</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Properties</code>	See Section 21.3.2, “Node Instance Property Toolbar#” and Section 21.3.3, “Property Fields For Node Instance#” below.
<code>Documentation</code>	Standard tab.
<code>Style</code>	Standard tab. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the node instance on the diagram.



### Warning

Beware that in the current release of ArgoUML, the bounding box just refers to the front face of the cube. This means that the three dimensional top and side may be ignored, for example when determining the limits of a diagram for saving graphics.

Altering the `Shadow` entry has no effect.

Source	<p>Standard tab, containing just the name of the node instance.</p> <div><b>Caution</b><p>A node instance should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.</p></div>
Constraints	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>NodeInstance</code> has the following standard constraints defined (through its parent, <code>Instance</code>).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>destroyed</code>. Applied to a node instance that is destroyed during the execution.</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>It is conceivable this could apply to some robotic systems, or where UML is being used to describe systems with human behavior. However it is unlikely to be of widespread use.</p></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>new</code>. Applied to a node instance that is created during the execution.</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>It is conceivable this could apply to some robotic systems, or where UML is being used to describe systems with human behavior. However it is unlikely to be of widespread use.</p></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>transient</code>. Applied to an node instance that is both created and destroyed during the execution.</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>It is conceivable this could apply to some robotic systems, or where UML is being used to describe systems with human behavior. However it is unlikely to be of widespread use.</p></div>
Tagged Values	<p>Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, <code>NodeInstance</code> has the following standard tagged values defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>persistence</code> (from the superclass, <code>Instance</code>. Showing the permanence of the state information associated with the node instance. Values <code>transitory</code> (state is destroyed when the node instance is destroyed) and <code>persistent</code> (state is preserved when the node instance is destroyed).</li></ul> <div><b>Caution</b><p>It is conceivable this could apply to some robotic systems, or where UML is being used to describe systems with human behavior. However it is unlikely to be of widespread use.</p></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>derived</code> (from the superclass, <code>ModelElement</code>). Values <code>true</code>, meaning the node</li></ul>

instance is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Caution

It is not clear that this tagged value has any great use when applied to a node instance.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 21.3.2. Node Instance Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the node instance from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a node instance from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu `Edit/Remove From Diagram` (Ctrl-R).

## 21.3.3. Property Fields For Node Instance

Name

Text box. The name of the node instance. By convention node instance names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

**Caution**

The current release of ArgoUML there is no way of specifying the node type, so it must be done in the name. This leads to the representation having two colons, one at the very end.


Stereotype

Drop down selector. Node instance has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.

**Caution**

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for node instances. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the Abstraction metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the node instance. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

## 21.4. Component

A component is a physical part of the system (source code, object code, database, library, documentation) that realizes a set of interfaces. In the UML metamodel it is a sub-class of `Classifier`.

A component is represented on a class diagram as a box with two small rectangles protruding from its left side, labeled with its name.

### 21.4.1. Component Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for components are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 21.4.2, “Component Property Toolbar#” and Section 21.4.3, “Property Fields For Component#” below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the component on the diagram.

**Warning**

When typing or making any other change to a component on the diagram, its left edge will jump to the left.

Source

Standard tab, but with no contents.



### Caution

A component should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

Constraints

Standard tab. There are no standard constraints defined for Component within the UML metamodel.

Tagged Values

Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, Component has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). Values `transitory`, indicating state is destroyed when an instance is destroyed or `persistent`, marking state is preserved when an instance is destroyed.
- `semantics` (from the superclass, `Classifier`). The value is a specification of the semantics of the component.
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the component is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



### Note

Derived components may have value to indicate that the component represents an optimization.




### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element documentation which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 21.4.2. Component Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


 Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.

**Warning**

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the component from the model

**Warning**

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a component from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 21.4.3. Property Fields For Component

Name

Text box. The name of the component. The name of a component has a leading capital letter, with words separated by “bumpy caps#”.

**Note**

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.

Stereotype

Drop down selector. Package is provided by default with the UML standard stereotypes for component (document, executable, file, library and table). ArgoUML also provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.


**Caution**

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for components. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the Abstraction metaclass.

**Warning**

Component is a type of classifier, and should be provided with the stereotypes for a classifier, however these are missing in the current release of ArgoUML.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the component. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

Extends

Text box. Lists any component that generalizes this component.

**Caution**

ArgoUML is incorrect in using the designation “Extends# for this field. It should correctly be called “Generalizations#.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with five entries.

- Open. Navigate to the selected generalization.
- Add. Add a new generalization.

**Caution**

In the current release of ArgoUML generalizations of components are not properly implemented. This button will add a generalization, named null with no parent, that can not be added to the diagram. Its value is somewhat limited!

- Delete. Removes the link to the selected generalization.
- Move Up. Only available where there are two or more generalizations, and the generalization selected is not at the top. It is moved up one.
- Move Down. Only available where there are two or more generalizations listed, and the generalization selected is not at the bottom. It is moved down one.

**Modifiers**

Check box, with entries `abstract`, `final` and `root`.

- `abstract` is used to declare that this component cannot be instantiated, but must always be specialized.
- `final` indicates that this component cannot be further specialized.
- `root` indicates the node can have no generalization.

**Derived**

Text area. Lists any derived components, i.e those for which this component is a generalization.

**Caution**

ArgoUML is incorrect in using the designation “Derived# for this field. It should correctly be called “Specializations#.

Button 1 click navigates to the selected entry, button 2 gives a pop up menu with one entry.

- Open. Navigate to the selected specialization.

**Caution**

In the current release of ArgoUML generalizations of components are not properly implemented, and this button is always grayed out.

## 21.5. Component Instance

A component instance is an instance of a component (see Section 21.4, “Component#”) which may reside on a node instance (see Section 21.3, “Node Instance#”). In the UML metamodel `ComponentInstance` is a sub-class of `Instance` and is specifically an instance that is derived from a component.

A component is represented on a class diagram as a box with two small rectangles protruding from its left side, labeled with its name.

A component instance is represented on a sequence diagram in ArgoUML as a box with two small rectangles protruding from its left side labeled with the component instance name (if any) and component type, separated by a colon (:).



### Tip

It is the presence of the colon ( : that distinguishes a component instance from a component.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML there is no way of specifying the component type, so it must be done in the name. This leads to the representation having two colons, one at the very end.

### 21.5.1. Component Instance Details Tabs

The details tabs that are active for component instances are as follows.

ToDoItem	Standard tab.
Properties	See Section 21.5.2, “Component Instance Property Toolbar# and Section 21.5.3, “Property Fields For Component Instance# below.
Documentation	Standard tab.
Style	Standard tab. The <code>Bounds:</code> field defines the bounding box for the component on the diagram.



### Warning

When typing or making any other change to a component on the diagram, its left edge will jump to the left.

Source	Standard tab, containing just the name of the component instance.
--------	---



### Caution

A component instance should not generate any code, so having this tab active is probably a mistake.

#### Constraints

Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, `ComponentInstance` has the following standard constraints defined (through its parent, `Instance`).

- `destroyed`. Applied to a component instance that is destroyed during the execution.
- `new`. Applied to a component instance that is created during the execution.
- `transient`. Applied to an component instance that is both created and destroyed during the execution.

#### Tagged Values

Standard tab. In the UML metamodel, `ComponentInstance` has the following standard tagged values defined.

- `persistence` (from the superclass, `Instance`). Showing the permanence of the state information associated with the component instance. Values `transitory` (state is destroyed when the component instance is destroyed) and `persistent` (state is preserved when the component instance is destroyed).
- `derived` (from the superclass, `ModelElement`). Values `true`, meaning the component instance is redundant—it can be formally derived from other elements, or `false` meaning it cannot.



#### Caution

It is not clear that this tagged value has any great use when applied to a component instance.



#### Note

The UML `Element` metaclass from which all other artifacts are derived includes the tagged element `documentation` which is handled by the *documentation tab* under ArgoUML

## 21.5.2. Component Instance Property Toolbar

Go up

Navigate up through the package structure.


↩ Go back

Navigate back to the previous artifact.



#### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Go forward

Navigate forward to the next artifact.



### Warning

This feature is currently broken within ArgoUML and there is no guarantee where (if anywhere) this button will take you.

 Delete

This deletes the component instance from the model



### Warning

This is a deletion from the model *not* just the diagram. To delete a component instance from the diagram, but keep it within the model, use the main menu Edit/Remove From Diagram (Ctrl-R).

## 21.5.3. Property Fields For Component Instance

Name

Text box. The name of the component instance. By convention component instance names start with a lower case letter and use bumpy caps to divide words within the name.



### Note

ArgoUML does not enforce this naming convention.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML there is no way of specifying the component type, so it must be done in the name. This leads to the representation having two colons, one at the very end.

Stereotype


Drop down selector. Component instance has no stereotypes by default in the UML standard, but ArgoUML provides the stereotypes, machine, organization and person.



### Caution

ArgoUML also provides the stereotype *realize* for component instances. This appears to be an error, since this stereotype properly belongs to the *Abstraction* metaclass.

Navigate Stereotype

 icon. If a stereotype has been selected, this will navigate to the stereotype property panel (see Section 16.4, “Stereotype#”).

Namespace

Text box. Records the namespace for the component instance. This is the package hierarchy.

Button 1 click on the entry will navigate to the package defining this namespace (or the model for the top level namespace).

## 21.6. Dependency

A key part of any component or deployment diagram is to show dependencies. For details see Section 15.7, “Dependency#.



### Caution

UML relies on stereotyping of dependencies on component and deployment diagrams to characterize the types of relationship. In the current release of ArgoUML there are limitations in the implementation of dependencies which limit this functionality.

## 21.7. Class

A component diagram may show the key internal structure of components, including classes within the component. For details see Section 16.5, “Class#.

## 21.8. Interface

A component or deployment diagram may show components or component instances which implement interfaces. For details see Section 16.14, “Interface#.



### Caution

The current release of ArgoUML uses the same representation of an interface as a class diagram. The UML standard suggests that an interface on a component or deployment diagram should just be shown as a small open circle, connected to the component which realizes that interface.



### Warning

There is no way to show the linking of an interface to a component or component instance in the current release of ArgoUML.

## 21.9. Association

Where classes or interfaces are shown within components on component diagrams, they may be shown linked by associations. For details see Section 15.5, “Association#.

## 21.10. Object

Just as components may show the classifiers that make up their internal structure, component instances on deployment diagrams may show the classifier instances that make up their internal structure. In practice the only instance that is of use is an object (an instance of a class). For details see Section 17.2, “Object#.

## 21.11. Link

Where objects are shown within component instances on deployment diagrams, their inter-relationships may be shown as links (an instance of an association). See Section 17.9, “Link# for details.



---

# Chapter 22. ArgoUML Built In DataTypes, Classes, Interfaces and Stereotypes



## Caution

This chapter is not fully gone through and updated to fit the 0.14 release of ArgoUML but describes the version 0.10 instead. This means that some of the functions might not work exactly as described and icons and screenshots does not look exactly like in the 0.14 version.

## 22.1. Introduction

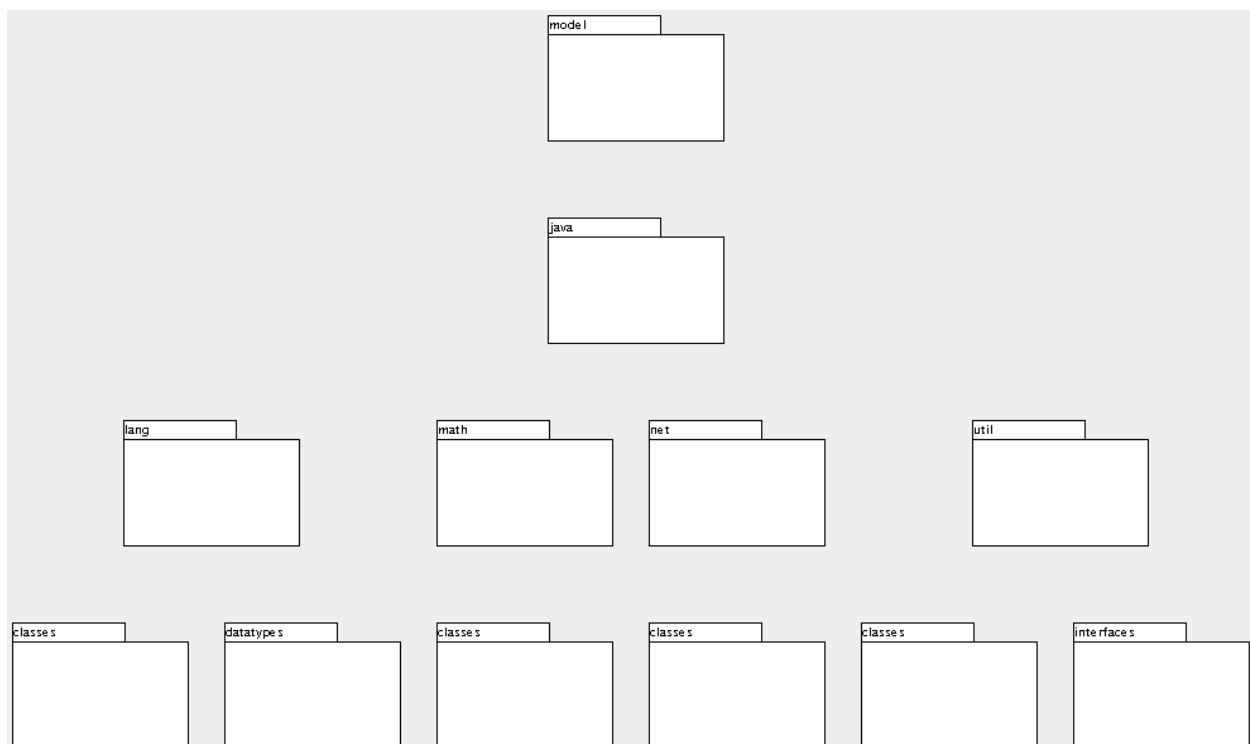
This chapter describes the datatypes, classes, interfaces and stereotypes, which by default, are built in to ArgoUML.

Datatypes, classes and interfaces are generally available for use anywhere a class may be selected in the properties tab. The most common use is for return type and parameter types in method signatures.

### 22.1.1. Package Structure

ArgoUML datatypes, classes and interfaces are effectively organized as a hierarchy beneath the overall model itself. They are in four packages, `lang`, `math`, `net` and `util`, themselves subpackages of `java`, which is a subpackage of the model itself. Figure 22.1 shows this as a UML package diagram.

**Figure 22.1. Hierarchy of datatypes, classes and interfaces within ArgoUML**



## 22.2. Built In Datatypes

These are the built in atomic types. You can change them if you wish. However this is not good practice

All these can be found in the `java.lang` subpackage of the main model.



### Note

You will not find these exposed within the top level package by default. However if you select a datatype (say from within a class parameter property sheet), and navigate up, you can navigate up to the top package. Thereafter you will find that the package has appeared as a subpackage of the model, and you can navigate back down (but only to the type you came up from).



### Caution

You should be aware that these are Java datatypes. They are not mandated by the UML standard.

These are the standard datatypes. For their definition refer to the Java standard.

- `boolean`
- `byte`
- `char`
- `double`
- `float`
- `int`
- `long`
- `short`
- `void`



### Note

`void` is not strictly speaking a type, but the absence of type. ArgoUML knows about void and allows it as an option where a datatype may be selected.

## 22.3. Built In Classes

These are the common classes, corresponding to classes defined within the standard Java environment. It is up to you if you wish to change them.

These are found in all four subpackages of the `java` subpackage.



### Note

As with datatypes, you will not find these exposed within the top level package by default. However if

you select a datatype (say from within a class parameter property sheet), and navigate up, you can navigate up to the top package. Thereafter you will find that the package has appeared as a subpackage of the model, and you can navigate back down (but only to the type you came up from).

For a definition of these classes see the Java language and library definitions.

### 22.3.1. Built In Classes From `java.lang`

These are the classes within the `java.lang` package.

- `Boolean`
- `Byte`
- `Char`
- `Double`
- `Float`
- `Integer`
- `Long`
- `Object`
- `Short`
- `String`

### 22.3.2. Built In Classes From `java.math`

These are the classes within the `java.math` package.

- `Big Decimal`
- `Big Integer`

### 22.3.3. Built In Classes From `java.net`

These are the classes within the `java.net` package.

- `URL`

### 22.3.4. Built In Classes From `java.util`

These are the classes within the `java.util` package.

- `Vector`

- Date
- Time

## 22.4. Built In Interfaces

These are some useful interfaces, corresponding to classes defined within the standard Java environment. Interfaces have many of the properties of classes (like all types) and you can change them if you wish.

All these can be found in the `java.util` subpackage of the main model.



### Note

You will not find these exposed within the top level package by default. However if you select a datatype (say from within a class parameter property sheet), and navigate up, you can navigate up to the top package. Thereafter you will find that the package has appeared as a subpackage of the model, and you can navigate back down (but only to the type you came up from).

These are the interfaces defined within the `java.util` package. For their definition consult the Java language and library references.

- Collection
- Iterator
- List
- Set
- Sorted Set

## 22.5. Built In Stereotypes

UML 1.3 defines a large number of stereotypes which are (mostly) supported by ArgoUML. In addition ArgoUML defines three additional stereotypes that may be of use.

- `machine`. Available to artifacts derived from the top level UML metaclass, `Element`.
- `person`. Available to artifacts derived from the top level UML metaclass, `Element`.
- `organization`. Available to artifacts derived from the UML metaclass `ModelElement`.



### Caution

Not all stereotypes defined by UML 1.3 appear in ArgoUML, due to limitations in the current implementation of some artifacts.

---

# Glossary

## A

### Activity Diagram

A UML diagram capturing the dynamic behavior of a system or sub-system. See Section 5.11, “Activity Diagrams (To be written)# for more information.

### Action

Behavior associated with *States* or *Transitions* in *State Diagram*. These actions are invocations of *Methods* and appear on *Sequence* and *Collaboration Diagrams*.

See Also Collaboration Diagram Collaboration Diagram Diagram Collaboration A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Sequence Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information., Sequence Diagram Sequence Diagram Diagram Sequence A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Collaboration Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information., State State Within a State Diagram a one of the possible configurations of the machine., State Diagram State Diagram Diagram State A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information., Transition Transition The change between States in a State Diagram...

### Actor

A representation of an agent (animate or inanimate) on a *Use Case Diagram* external to the system being designed.

See Also Use Case Use Case A UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information., Use Case Diagram Use Case Diagram Diagram Use Case A UML diagram showing the relationships between Actors and Use Cases. See for more information..

### Analysis

Analysis is the process of taking the “customer# requirements and re-casting them in the language of, and from the perspective of, a putative solution.

### Association Class

A class that characterises the association between two other clases.

See Also Class Class The encapsulation of the data associated with an artifact (its attributes) and the actions associated with the artifact (its methods). A class specifies the characteristics of an artifact. An object represents an instance of the artifact. Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams..

### Association

A relationship between two classes in a Class Diagram or between Use Cases or Use Cases and Actors in a Use Case Diagram.

See Also Actor Actor A representation of an agent (animate or inanimate) on a Use Case Diagram external to the system being designed., Class Diagram Class Diagram Diagram Class A UML Diagram showing the structural relationship between classes. See for more information., Use Case Use Case A UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information., Use Case Diagram Use Case Diagram Diagram Use Case A UML diagram showing the relationships between Actors and Use Cases. See for more informa-

tion..

#### Attribute (of a Class or Object)

An attribute of a class or object is a specification of a data element encapsulated by that object.

See Also ClassClassThe encapsulation of the data associated with an artifact (its attributes) and the actions associated with the artifact (its methods).A class specifies the characteristics of an artifact. An object represents an instance of the artifact.Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams., Method (of a Class or Object)Methodof a ClassMethodof an ObjectClass MethodObject MethodA method of a class or object is a specification of behavior encapsulated by that object., ObjectObjectAn instance of a Class.Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams..

## C

#### CASE

Computer Aided Software Engineering.

#### Class

The encapsulation of the data associated with an artifact (its *attributes*) and the actions associated with the artifact (its *methods*).

A class specifies the characteristics of an artifact. An *object* represents an instance of the artifact.

Classes and objects in UML are represented on *Activity Diagrams*, *Class Diagrams*, *Collaboration Diagrams* and *Sequence Diagrams*.

See Also Activity DiagramActivity DiagramDiagramActivityA UML diagram capturing the dynamic behavior of a system or sub-system. See for more information. , Attribute (of a Class or Object)Attributeof a ClassAttributeof an ObjectAn attribute of a class or object is a specification of a data element encapsulated by that object., Class DiagramClass DiagramDiagramClassA UML Diagram showing the structural relationship between classes. See for more information., Collaboration DiagramCollaboration DiagramDiagramCollaborationA UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Sequence Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information., Method (of a Class or Object)Methodof a ClassMethodof an ObjectClass MethodObject MethodA method of a class or object is a specification of behavior encapsulated by that object., ObjectObjectAn instance of a Class.Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams., Sequence DiagramSequence DiagramDiagramSequenceA UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Collaboration Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information..

#### Class Diagram

A UML Diagram showing the structural relationship between classes. See Section 4.3, “Class Diagrams (To be written)# for more information.

See Also ClassClassThe encapsulation of the data associated with an artifact (its attributes) and the actions associated with the artifact (its methods).A class specifies the characteristics of an artifact. An object represents an instance of the ar-

tifact. Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams..

#### Collaboration Diagram

A UML Diagram showing the dynamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a *Sequence Diagram*. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information.

See Also *Sequence Diagram* *Sequence Diagram* *Diagram* *Sequence* A UML Diagram showing the dynamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Collaboration Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information..

#### Comprehension and Problem Solving

A design visualization theory within cognitive psychology. The theory notes that designers must bridge a gap between their mental model of the problem or situation and the formal model of a solution or system.

This theory suggests that programmers will benefit from:

1. Multiple representations such as program syntactic decomposition, state transitions, control flow, and data flow. These allow the programmer to better identify elements and relationships in the problem and solution and thus more readily create a mapping between their situation models and working system models.
2. Familiar aspects of a situation model, which improve designers' abilities to formulate solutions.

See Also *Critic* *Critic* A process within ArgoUML that provides suggestions as to how the design might be improved. Suggestions are based on principles within three theories of cognitive psychology, *reflection-in action*, *opportunistic design* and *comprehension and problem solving*..

#### Concept Class Diagram

A Class Diagram constructed during the Analysis Phase to show the main structural components of the problem identified in the Requirements Phase. See Chapter 4, *Analysis* for more information.

See Also *Class Diagram* *Class Diagram* *Diagram* *Class* A UML Diagram showing the structural relationship between classes. See for more information..

#### Critic

A process within ArgoUML that provides suggestions as to how the design might be improved. Suggestions are based on principles within three theories of cognitive psychology, *reflection-in action*, *opportunistic design* and *comprehension and problem solving*.

See Also *Reflection-in-Action* *Reflection-in-Action* A theory within cognitive psychology which observes that designers of complex systems do not conceive a design fully-formed. Instead, they must construct a partial design, evaluate, reflect on, and revise it, until they are ready to extend it further. As developers work hands-on with the design, their mental model of the problem situation improves, hence improving their design., *Opportunistic Design* *Opportunistic Design* *Design* *Opportunistic* A theory within cognitive psychology suggesting that although designers plan and describe their work in an ordered, hierarchical fashion, in actuality, they choose successive tasks based on the criteria of cognitive cost. Simply stated, designers do not follow even their own plans in order, but choose steps that are mentally least expensive among alternatives., *Comprehension and Problem Solving* *Comprehension* *Problem Solving* A design visualization

theory within cognitive psychology. The theory notes that designers must bridge a gap between their mental model of the problem or situation and the formal model of a solution or system. This theory suggests that programmers will benefit from: Multiple representations such as program syntactic decomposition, state transitions, control flow, and data flow. These allow the programmer to better identify elements and relationships in the problem and solution and thus more readily create a mapping between their situation models and working system models. Familiar aspects of a situation model, which improve designers' abilities to formulate solutions..

## E

### Extend Relationship

A relationship between two Use Cases, where the *extended* Use Case describes a special variant of the *extending* Use Case.

See Also Generalization Relationship  
Generalization Relationship  
A relationship between one generalising Use Cases and one or more generalised Use Cases, where the generalised Use Cases are particular examples of the generalising Use Case., Include Relationship  
Include Relationship  
A relationship between two Use Cases, where the included Use Case describes part of the functionality of the including Use Case., Use Case  
Use Case  
A UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

## G

### Generalization Relationship

A relationship between one *generalising* Use Cases and one or more *generalised* Use Cases, where the *generalised* Use Cases are particular examples of the *generalising* Use Case.

See Also Extend Relationship  
Extend Relationship  
A relationship between two Use Cases, where the extended Use Case describes a special variant of the extending Use Case., Include Relationship  
Include Relationship  
A relationship between two Use Cases, where the included Use Case describes part of the functionality of the including Use Case., Use Case  
Use Case  
A UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

### GNU

"GNU's Not Unix". One of the first open/free source projects. Originally best known for its GNU version of the Emacs editor, it now has many other projects, usually closely allied to Linux.

See Also Linux  
Linux  
An open source version of the Unix operating system..

### GUI

Graphical User Interface.

## H

### Hierarchical State Diagram

A *State Diagram* that contains subsidiary state diagrams within individual *States*.

See Also State  
State  
Within a State Diagram a one of the possible configurations



of the machine., State DiagramStateDiagramDiagramStateA UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information..

## I

### Include Relationship

A relationship between two Use Cases, where the *included* Use Case describes part of the functionality of the *including* Use Case.

See Also Extend RelationshipExtend RelationshipRelationshipExtendA relationship between two Use Cases, where the extended Use Case describes a special variant of the extending Use Case., Generalization RelationshipGeneralization RelationshipRelationshipGeneralizationA relationship between one generalising Use Cases and one or more generalised Use Cases, where the generalised Use Cases are particular examples of the generalising Use Case., Use CaseUse CaseA UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

### Iterative Design Process

A design process where each all phases (requirements, analysis, design, build, test) are tackled partially in a series of iterations. See Section 2.3.1, “Types of Process# for more information.

See Also Waterfall Design ProcessWaterfall Design ProcessDesign ProcessWaterfallA design process where each phase (requirements, analysis, design, build, test) is completed before the next starts. See for more information..

## J

### Java

A fully object oriented programming language introduced by Sun Microsystems. More strongly typed than C++, it compiles to an interpreted code, the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). The JVM means that Java code should run on any machine that has implemented the JVM.

The most significant component of Java was integration of the JVM into web browsers, allowing code (Applets) to be download and run over the web.

ArgoUML is written in Java.

## L

### Linux

An open source version of the Unix operating system.

See Also GNUGNU"GNU's Not Unix". One of the first open/free source projects. Originally best known for its GNU version of the Emacs editor, it now has many other projects, usually closely allied to Linux..

## M

### Mealy Machine

A *State Diagram* where actions are associated with *States*.

See Also ActionActionBehavior associated with States or Transitions in State

Diagram. These actions are invocations of Methods and appear on Sequence and Collaboration Diagrams., Moore Machine Moore Machine A State Diagram where actions are associated with Transitions., State State Within a State Diagram a one of the possible configurations of the machine., State Diagram State Diagram A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information., Transition Transition The change between States in a State Diagram...

#### Method (of a Class or Object)

A method of a class or object is a specification of behavior encapsulated by that object.

See Also Attribute (of a Class or Object) Attribute of a Class Attribute of an Object An attribute of a class or object is a specification of a data element encapsulated by that object., Class Class The encapsulation of the data associated with an artifact (its attributes) and the actions associated with the artifact (its methods). A class specifies the characteristics of an artifact. An object represents an instance of the artifact. Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams., Object Object An instance of a Class. Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams..

#### Moore Machine

A *State Diagram* where actions are associated with *Transitions*.

See Also Action Action Behavior associated with States or Transitions in State Diagram. These actions are invocations of Methods and appear on Sequence and Collaboration Diagrams., Mealy Machine Mealy Machine A State Diagram where actions are associated with States., State State Within a State Diagram a one of the possible configurations of the machine., State Diagram State Diagram A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information., Transition Transition The change between States in a State Diagram...

## O

#### Object

An instance of a *Class*.

Classes and objects in UML are represented on *Activity Diagrams*, *Class Diagrams*, *Collaboration Diagrams* and *Sequence Diagrams*.

See Also Activity Diagram Activity Diagram A UML diagram capturing the dynamic behavior of a system or sub-system. See for more information. , Attribute (of a Class or Object) Attribute of a Class Attribute of an Object An attribute of a class or object is a specification of a data element encapsulated by that object., Class Diagram Class Diagram A UML Diagram showing the structural relationship between classes. See for more information., Collaboration Diagram Collaboration Diagram A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Sequence Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information., Method (of a Class or Object) Method of a Class Method of an Object Class Method Object Method A method of a class or object is a specification of behavior encapsulated by that object., Sequence Diagram Sequence Diagram A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Collaboration Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information..

## OCL

Object Constraint Language. A language for describing constraints within UML. See Also UMLUMLUniversal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002..

## OMG

The Object Management Group. An international industry standardisation body. Best known for CORBA and UML. See Also UMLUMLUniversal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002..

## OOA&D

Object Oriented Analysis and Design. An approach to software problem analysis and design based on objects, which encapsulate both data and code. See See Section 1.1.1, “Object Oriented Analysis and Design# or any standard textbook on Software Engineering.

UML is a notation to support OOA&D.

See Also UMLUMLUniversal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002..

## Opportunistic Design

A theory within cognitive psychology suggesting that although designers plan and describe their work in an ordered, hierarchical fashion, in actuality, they choose successive tasks based on the criteria of cognitive cost. Simply stated, designers do not follow even their own plans in order, but choose steps that are mentally least expensive among alternatives.

See Also CriticCriticA process within ArgoUML that provides suggestions as to how the design might be improved. Suggestions are based on principles within three theories of cognitive psychology, reflection-in action, opportunistic design and comprehension and problem solving..

# P

## Pane

A subwindow within the main window of the ArgoUML user interface.

# R

## Realisation Use Case

A *Use Case* where the *Use Case Diagram* and *Use Case Specification* are in the language of the solution domain, rather than the problem domain.

See Also Use CaseUse CaseA UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

## Reflection-in-Action

A theory within cognitive psychology which observes that designers of complex systems do not conceive a design fully-formed. Instead, they must construct a partial design, evaluate, reflect on, and revise it, until they are ready to extend it further. As developers work hands-on with the design, their mental model of the problem situation improves, hence improving their design.

See Also CriticCriticA process within ArgoUML that provides suggestions as to

how the design might be improved. Suggestions are based on principles within three theories of cognitive psychology, reflection-in action, opportunistic design and comprehension and problem solving..

## Requirements Capture

Requirements capture is the process of identifying what the “customer# wants from the proposed system. See Chapter 3, *Requirements Capture* for a fuller description.

See Also Use CaseUse CaseA UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

# S

## Sequence Diagram

A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a *Collaboration Diagram*. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See Section 4.5, “Sequence Diagrams (To be written)# for more information.

See Also Collaboration DiagramCollaboration DiagramDiagramCollaborationA UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Sequence Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information..

## SGML

Standard Graphical Markup Language. Defined by ISO 8879:1986.

See Also XMLXMLeXtensible Markup Language. A simplified derivative of SGML defined by W3C.

## Simula 67

A procedural programming language intended for simulation. Noted for its introduction of *objects* and *coroutines*.

## State

Within a *State Diagram* a one of the possible configurations of the machine.

See Also State DiagramStateDiagramDiagramStateA UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information..

## State Diagram

A UML Diagram showing the dyanamic behavior of an active *Object*. See Section 4.7, “State Diagrams (To be written)# for more information.

See Also ObjectObjectAn instance of a Class.Classes and objects in UML are represented on Activity Diagrams, Class Diagrams, Collaboration Diagrams and Sequence Diagrams..

## Stereotypes and Stereotyping

Any artifact within UML can be given a *stereotype* to indicate its association with a particular role in the design. A stereotype *spqr* is generally indicated with the notation <<spqr>>.

A stereotype defines a namespace within the design. Examples of stereotypes are <<business>> and <<realisation>> for Use Cases, used to distinguish between Use Cases at the requirements phase defined in terms of the problem domain, and Use Cases at the analysis phase defined in terms of the solution domain.

See Also UMLUMLUniversal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002..

## Supplementary Specification

The document capturing non-functional requirements that cannot be associated with Use Cases.

See Also Use Case Use Case A UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

## SVG

Scalable Vector Graphics format. A standard representation of graphics diagrams that use vectors. ArgoUML can export diagrams in SVG.

## System Sequence Diagram

A *Sequence Diagram* used in the *Analysis* Phase showing the dynamic behavior of the overall system. See Chapter 4, *Analysis* for more information.

See Also Sequence Diagram Sequence Diagram Sequence A UML Diagram showing the dynamic behavior as messages are passed between objects. Equivalent to a Collaboration Diagram. Which representation is appropriate depends on the problem under consideration. See for more information..

## System State Diagram

A *State Diagram* used in the *Analysis* Phase showing the dynamic behavior of an active top level system objects. See Chapter 4, *Analysis* for more information.

See Also State Diagram State Diagram State A UML Diagram showing the dynamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information..

## T

## To-Do List

A feature of ArgoUML allowing the user to record activities that are yet to be completed.

## Transition

The change between *States* in a *State Diagram*..

See Also State State Within a State Diagram a one of the possible configurations of the machine., State Diagram State Diagram State A UML Diagram showing the dynamic behavior of an active Object. See for more information..

## U

## UML

Universal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002.

See Also OMG OMG Object Management Group The Object Management Group. An international industry standardisation body. Best known for CORBA and UML..

## Use Case

A UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See Section 3.3, “Output of the Requirements Capture Process” for more information.

See Also UML UML Universal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002., Use Case Specification Use Case Specification The document capturing the detailed requirements behind a Use Case..

**Use Case Diagram**

A UML diagram showing the relationships between Actors and Use Cases. See Section 3.3, “Output of the Requirements Capture Process# for more information.

See Also ActorActorA representation of an agent (animate or inanimate) on a Use Case Diagram external to the system being designed., Use CaseUse CaseA UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

**Use Case Specification**

The document capturing the detailed requirements behind a Use Case.

See Also Use CaseUse CaseA UML notation for capturing requirements of a system or sub-system. See for more information..

**V****Vision Document**

The top level document describing what the system being developed is to achieve.

**W****W3C**

The World Wide Web Consortium, [www.w3c.org](http://www.w3c.org) [<http://www.w3c.org>]. An international standardisation body for all things to do with the World Wide Web.

**Waterfall Design Process**

A design process where each phase (requirements, analysis, design, build, test) is completed before the next starts. See Section 2.3.1, “Types of Process# for more information.

See Also Iterative Design ProcessIterative Design ProcessDesign ProcessIterativeA design process where each all phases (requirements, analysis, design, build, test) are tackled partially in a series of iterations. See for more information..

**X****XMI**

XML Model Interchange format. A format for file storage of UML models. Currently incomplete, since it does not carry all graphical layout information, so must be supplemented by files carrying that information.

See Also UMLUMLUniversal Modelling Language. A graphical notation for OOA&D processes, standardised by the OMG. ArgoUML follows UML v1.3. Version 1.4 was released during 2001, with v2.0 planned for 2002., XMLXMLXMLExtensible Markup Language. A simplified derivative of SGML defined by W3C.

**XML**

eXtensible Markup Language. A simplified derivative of SGML defined by W3C

See Also SGMLSGMLStandard Graphical Markup LanguageStandard Graphical Markup Language. Defined by ISO 8879:1986., W3CW3CThe World Wide Web Consortium, [www.w3c.org](http://www.w3c.org). An international standardisation body for all

things to do with the World Wide Web..

---

# Appendix A. Supplementary Material for the Case Study

## A.1. Introduction

The case study requires various material (mostly documents) that live alongside the design diagram

## A.2. Requirements Documents (To be written)

*To be written...*

### A.2.1. Vision Document (To be written)

*To be written...*

### A.2.2. Use Case Specifications (To be written)

*To be written...*

#### A.2.2.1. UC Specification 1 (To be written)

*To be written...*

### A.2.3. Supplementary Requirements Specification (To be written)

*To be written...*



---

## **Appendix B. UML resources**

### **B.1. The UML specs (To be written)**

To be written...

### **B.2. UML related papers (To be written)**

To be written...

#### **B.2.1. UML action specifications (To be written)**

To be written...

### **B.3. UML related websites (To be written)**

To be written...

---

# **Appendix C. UML Conforming CASE Tools**

## **C.1. Other Open Source Projects (To be written)**

To be written...

## **C.2. Commercial Tools (To be written)**

To be written...

---

# Appendix D. Limits and Shortcomings

As all products, ArgoUML has some limits. Those important to the user are listed in this section.

## D.1. Diagram Canvas Size

Due to the underlying diagram editing software, the canvas size for diagrams is limited to 6000 units in height and width.

## D.2. Missing functions

For the 0.14 release the sequence diagrams are disabled. It will be replaced by a new and improved version in the upcoming release. In the 0.12 release they were not working and in the 0.10 release they did not follow the UML specification correctly.

---

# Appendix E. User Manual Plan

TODO: Remove this from the user manual.

## E.1. Target Audiences

Target audiences are the following.

- Experienced users of UML in OOA&D (perhaps with other tools) who wish to transfer to ArgoUML.
- Designers who know OOA&D, and wish to adopt a UML based process.

In the longer term it would be desirable to also target the following.

- Those who are learning design and wish to start with a UML based OOA&D process.
- People interested in modularised code design with a GUI.

## E.2. Goals

We want to keep the boundaries clearly defined, to avoid confusing duplication with the CookBook, FAQ, Quick Guide, online help etc. There are two goals (in priority order).

1. A comprehensive tutorial style explanation of ArgoUML in the context of an OOA&D process.
2. *Descriptive* reference material on all components of ArgoUML

I think the existing User Manual is a good start particularly towards the second of these goals.

### E.2.1. Non-Goals

To keep the effort feasible the user manual should avoid the following (at least initially).

- Providing a quick overview—the Quick Guide already does this.
- Listing all the errors and what they mean. The help system does this—one day the manual will link to that.
- Explaining the internal workings of ArgoUML. The cookbook, combined with Jason Robbins dissertation is already a good start for this.

## E.3. Suggested Manual Structure

Here are my thoughts. I think the user manual is really a set of two books, the tutorial manual (corresponding to Chapters 1–3 of the current manual), and the reference manual (Chapter 4 of the current manual)

I suggest that the tutorial book be based around an OOA&D process (any preferences), and that each UML concept

is introduced with each step of the process, followed by an explanation of how to do it under ArgoUML. A *simplecase* study will be needed throughout. A lot of this material can come from existing Chapters 1–3, with some additional material from chapter 4 of the Cookbook, answers in the FAQ and Jason Robbins dissertation.

## E.3.1. Tutorial Manual Structure

1. Introduction
  - a. Origins and overview of ArgoUML
  - b. Scope of the User Manual. Include cross-reference to other documentation (Cookbook, FAQ, Quick Guide, online help, ArgoUML website etc).
  - c. Overview of the User Manual. Explains that ArgoUML will be explained in the context of an OOA&D process, and with an example running through.
  - d. Assumptions. At this stage assume the user knows OOA&D, but not UML.
2. UML Based OOA&D
  - a. Background to UML—what it is, history etc.
  - b. UML based processes for OOA&D
  - c. ArgoUML Basics—projects, drawing, exploring, details
  - d. What ArgoUML has that other tools are missing (critics, to-do list, based in cognitive psychology theory).
  - e. The Case Study
3. Requirements Capture
  - a. Use Case Diagrams (this section will be relatively large, because its the first time we use ArgoUML to create something).
4. Analysis
  - a. Concept Class Diagrams
  - b. System Sequence Charts and Collaboration Diagrams
  - c. System State Diagrams
5. Design
  - a. Class Diagrams for Realisation
  - b. Sequence Charts and Collaboration Diagrams for Realisation
  - c. State Diagrams for realisation

- d. Package Diagrams
- 6. Build
  - a. Deployment Diagrams
  - b. Code Generation in ArgoUML

## E.3.2. Reference Manual Structure

This section largely follows Chapter 4 of the existing User Manual, including the Glossary. However it needs a few extra things.

1. material on each of the diagram types, each of the artifacts that can appear on the diagrams and details of the features of each artifact type.
2. An Index

## E.4. Actions, Priorities and Questions

### E.4.1. Actions and priorities

Here's my first call for what needs to be done in priority order. From the comments made over the last few days I think the first 5 items won't take very long, meaning effort can concentrate on the main stuff.

1. Get buy-in for the approach
2. Agree document structure (broadly)
3. Choose a suitable example to run throughout.
4. Break into several files (XML entities) to make the manual more manageable.
5. Identify all existing sources of material to be reused
6. Get writing! I suggest the priorities here are:
  - a. User Manual sections relating to ArgoUML diagrams and artifacts (assume the reader knows UML already, and allows a quick advance by pulling together a lot of existing material).
  - b. User Manual examples
  - c. User Manual sections relating to additional ArgoUML cognitive design features.
  - d. User Manual sections relating to UML (for readers who don't know UML).
  - e. Completion of Reference Manual material.

7. Create an index.

## **E.4.2. Remaining Questions**

1. The current manual shows copyright held by Phillipe, and no legal notice. What is the position of this material?

---

# Appendix F. Documentation Standards for the User Manual

## F.1. Introduction

The entire manual is written using DocBook XML V4.1.2 [<http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook>]. This section covers some conventions for use of DocBook and for the documentation in general. It also includes some information for Emacs users and the psgml package.

## F.2. Style

- "We" in the document means the persons reading the document and using ArgoUML
- "I" in the document refers to the author and is only used to denote the authors personal opinion. Avoid using it!

## F.3. Document Conventions

- All titles of chapters, sections etc are capitalized throughout.
- All titles of figures, tables etc have the first word only capitalized.
- Spelling is US English. (Webster ?)
- Use full URLs throughout this manual! We allow for the manual being other than as html on the ArgoUML web site.
- Don't include lists of what changes that has been done. This information is kept by cvs, the version control tool. This is changed since Jeremy Bennet made the work for 0.9/0.10 so there are still such lists. Remove them while changing the files!
- If a problem in the current implementation of ArgoUML is mentioned or perhaps even emphasized using `warning` include the issue number in a sgml-comment in the source so that it is easy to know if this problem has been fixed.

## F.4. DocBook Conventions

- The top level document is `argouml.xml` (actually in `argouml.in` and copied to `argouml.xml` by the build script). Each chapter (or preface, glossary, appendix etc) is a separate file, defined as a system entity and included from this top level file.
- There are some useful entities defined for common terms at the top of `argouml.xml`. Of these, use of `argouml` will ensure consistent naming of the product (ArgoUML) and allow us to change it later (to Argo/UML, Argouml or whatever).
- XML comments are used throughout to explain what various sections are trying to achieve.
- Cross-referencing requires use of `id.` attributes. To avoid confusion, use a prefix of `ch.` for chapter, `app.` for



appendix, s1. through s5. for sect1 through sect5, fig. for figure, tab. for table and gl for glossentry.

A second prefix of `tut.` or `ref.` is used to distinguish tutorial and reference material. The remainder of the tag should be descriptive, but concise with words separate by underscore. Where a graphic is involved this remainder should correspond to the file name. For example `fig.ref.navigation_pane` for a figure showing the explorer, with the diagram in `navigation_pane.gif`

There is one exception to this and that is the critics. Each paragraph about a critic is instead marked with `critics.` followed by the classname implementing that critic. The reason for this is that the intention is to have the manual accessible when pressing the Help button on that critic. Generating a link to the correct place in the manual is easier if the classname need not undergo some kind of textual transformation and the implementation doesn't care if a specific critic is described in a `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, or `sect4`. Reorganizing the manual would otherwise affect also the java code. The conversion to the correct tagname or really the correct URL is currently implemented in the `defaultMoreInfoURL()` method in the `org.argouml.cognitive.critics.Critic` class.

- Only use `glossterm` (for the term *or* its abbreviation/acronym), `glossdef` and `glossseealso` within `glossentry`. Other entries are not implemented in the style sheets and so do not appear in the glossary!
- Use spaces rather than tabs. Tabs are generally set so large the text moves over to the right of the page, and are not set the same everywhere (emacs uses 8 spaces, some MS editors use 6 spaces), making documents unreadable between users.
- Indent only the tags, not the text. The Docbook source is kept in cvs that is a line-oriented tool. This means that reindentation will be a major thing in cvs making it hard to see if there were other things done to the code. Especially if reindentation caused the paragraphs to be broken in a different way. Not indenting the text means that the text will be unchanged even if the heading level was changed. The contributions that Jeremy Bennet did for 0.10 are not indented like this. Change it while changing the paragraphs.
- Make a new line after each sentence or before expressions. The Docbook source is source that is handled by cvs. When structuring the text the parts are paragraphs, sentences and words. By having each sentence on a line of its own it is easier to see what sentences has been changed and what has not in the diff reports from cvs. The contributions that Jeremy Bennet did are not written like this. Change it while changing the paragraphs.
- All block graphics should be encapsulated within `figure`, allowing reference from around the text. Set attribute `float` to 1 to allow the figure to float (makes life easier for printed version).
- All block graphics should be provided through `mediaobject` and provided with both an `imageobject` and comprehensive description in a `textobject`. This gives the potential of meaningful content where a diagram cannot be displayed for any reason. Where appropriate the `mediaobject` should be wrapped by `screenshot`.
- Inline graphics can be done through `inlinegraphic`, rather `inlinemediaobject`. A textual alternative is of little value in these circumstances. Where appropriate the `mediaobject` should be wrapped by `guiicon`
- In general use `literal` for computer related text (input and output). There are a huge number of possible specialist tags, but I suggest restriction to the following list: `filename` and `application`.

## F.5. For Emacs Users

If you use the `psgml` library within emacs, then editing and verifying XML gets easier. Information on using this facility is included with `psgml`.

- Emacs' local variables appear in a few lines of comment at the bottom of each XML file. Please don't delete these!

- Adding `(setq sgml-set-face t)` to your `.emacs` file will cause all tags and entities to appear in boldface.
- Adding `(setq sgml-auto-activate-dtd t)` to your `.emacs` file will ensure the DocBook DTD is parsed as soon as the file is loaded.

---

# Appendix G. Open Publication Licence

## G.I. REQUIREMENTS ON BOTH UNMODIFIED AND MODIFIED VERSIONS

The Open Publication works may be reproduced and distributed in whole or in part, in any medium physical or electronic, provided that the terms of this license are adhered to, and that this license or an incorporation of it by reference (with any options elected by the author(s) and/or publisher) is displayed in the reproduction.

Proper form for an incorporation by reference is as follows:

Copyright (c) <year> by <author's name or designee>. This material may be distributed only subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Open Publication License, vX.Y or later (the latest version is presently available at <http://www.opencontent.org/openpub/>).

The reference must be immediately followed with any options elected by the author(s) and/or publisher of the document (see section VI).

Commercial redistribution of Open Publication-licensed material is permitted.

Any publication in standard (paper) book form shall require the citation of the original publisher and author. The publisher and author's names shall appear on all outer surfaces of the book. On all outer surfaces of the book the original publisher's name shall be as large as the title of the work and cited as possessive with respect to the title.

## G.II. COPYRIGHT

The copyright to each Open Publication is owned by its author(s) or designee.

## G.III. SCOPE OF LICENSE

The following license terms apply to all Open Publication works, unless otherwise explicitly stated in the document.

Mere aggregation of Open Publication works or a portion of an Open Publication work with other works or programs on the same media shall not cause this license to apply to those other works. The aggregate work shall contain a notice specifying the inclusion of the Open Publication material and appropriate copyright notice.

**SEVERABILITY.** If any part of this license is found to be unenforceable in any jurisdiction, the remaining portions of the license remain in force.

**NO WARRANTY.** Open Publication works are licensed and provided “as is# without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose or a warranty of non-infringement.

## G.IV. REQUIREMENTS ON MODIFIED WORKS

All modified versions of documents covered by this license, including translations, anthologies, compilations and partial documents, must meet the following requirements:

1. The modified version must be labeled as such.

2. The person making the modifications must be identified and the modifications dated.
3. Acknowledgement of the original author and publisher if applicable must be retained according to normal academic citation practices.
4. The location of the original unmodified document must be identified.
5. The original author's (or authors') name(s) may not be used to assert or imply endorsement of the resulting document without the original author's (or authors') permission.

## G.V. GOOD-PRACTICE RECOMMENDATIONS

In addition to the requirements of this license, it is requested from and strongly recommended of redistributors that:

1. If you are distributing Open Publication works on hardcopy or CD-ROM, you provide email notification to the authors of your intent to redistribute at least thirty days before your manuscript or media freeze, to give the authors time to provide updated documents. This notification should describe modifications, if any, made to the document.
2. All substantive modifications (including deletions) be either clearly marked up in the document or else described in an attachment to the document.
3. Finally, while it is not mandatory under this license, it is considered good form to offer a free copy of any hardcopy and CD-ROM expression of an Open Publication-licensed work to its author(s).

## G.VI. LICENSE OPTIONS

The author(s) and/or publisher of an Open Publication-licensed document may elect certain options by appending language to the reference to or copy of the license. These options are considered part of the license instance and must be included with the license (or its incorporation by reference) in derived works.

A. To prohibit distribution of substantively modified versions without the explicit permission of the author(s). “Substantive modification# is defined as a change to the semantic content of the document, and excludes mere changes in format or typographical corrections.

To accomplish this, add the phrase “Distribution of substantively modified versions of this document is prohibited without the explicit permission of the copyright holder.# to the license reference or copy.

B. To prohibit any publication of this work or derivative works in whole or in part in standard (paper) book form for commercial purposes is prohibited unless prior permission is obtained from the copyright holder.

To accomplish this, add the phrase “Distribution of the work or derivative of the work in any standard (paper) book form is prohibited unless prior permission is obtained from the copyright holder.# to the license reference or copy.

## G.. OPEN PUBLICATION POLICY APPENDIX:

(This is not considered part of the license.)

Open Publication works are available in source format via the Open Publication home page at <http://works.opencontent.org/> [<http://works.opencontent.org/>].

Open Publication authors who want to include their own license on Open Publication works may do so, as long as their terms are not more restrictive than the Open Publication license.

If you have questions about the Open Publication License, please contact David Wiley [mailto:dw2@opencontent.org], and/or the Open Publication Authors' List at opal@opencontent.org [mailto:opal@opencontent.org], via email.

To *subscribe* to the Open Publication Authors' List: Send E-mail to opal-request@opencontent.org with the word “subscribe# in the body.

To *post* to the Open Publication Authors' List: Send E-mail to opal@opencontent.org or simply reply to a previous post.

To *unsubscribe* from the Open Publication Authors' List: Send E-mail to opal-request@opencontent.org with the word “unsubscribe# in the body.

---

# Index

The use of the index in the document is done a little at random and cannot be trusted. Please help in suggesting new index entries!

## A

- Action, 345
- Active Actor, 38
- Activity Diagram, 345
- Actor, 35, 46, 192, 193, 345
  - Details Tabs, 193
- Actor Associations, 195
- Actor Generalizations, 195
- Actor Modifiers, 194
- Actor Name, 194
- Actor Namespace, 194
- Actor Specializations, 195
- Actor Stereotype, 194
- Add Actor, 194
- Add Extend Relationship, 208
- Add Extension Point, 197
- Add Package, 181
- Add Use Case, 197
- Alternate Flows, 43, 44
  - of a Use Case, 43, 44
- Alternative scenarios, 44
- Analysis, 345, 351
  - Object Oriented, 351
- Arrange menu, 22
- As Diagram, 143
- As Metrics, 144
- As Table, 143
- Association, 345
- Association Class, 345
- Association in a Use Case Diagram, 47
- Associations, 195
  - of Actor, 195
- Attribute, 346, 346
  - of a Class, 346
  - of an Object, 346

## B

- Base, 212
  - of Include Relationship, 212
- Base Class, 188
  - for Stereotype, 188
- Base Use Case, 200
  - of Extension Point, 200
- Base Usecase, 209
  - of Extend Relationship, 209
- Basic Flow, 43, 43
  - of a Use Case, 43, 43

## C

- CASE, 346
- Checklist, 145
- Child, 206
  - of Generalization, 206
- Class, 346
- Class Diagram, 346, 347
  - Concept, 347
- Class Diagram Reference, 214
- Class Method, 350
- Clients, 203
  - of Dependency, 203
- Collaboration Diagram, 347
- Comprehension, 347
- Concept Class Diagram, 347
- Constraints, 37, 144
  - in the Vision document, 37
- Contributing, 2, 4
  - to ArgoUML, 2
  - to the User Manual, 4
- Cookbook, 2
- Copy, 135
- Create a new Actor, 194
- Create a new Extend Relationship, 208
- Create a new Extension Point, 197
- Create a new Package, 181
- Create a new Use Case, 197
- Create Diagram menu, 22
- Create Diagram Toolbar, 23
- Create New, 46, 46, 46, 47, 49, 49, 49
  - Actor, 46
  - Association in a Use Case Diagram, 47
  - Extend Relationship in a Use Case Diagram, 49
  - Extension Point, 46
  - Generalization relationship in a Use Case Diagram , 49
  - Include Relationship in a Use Case Diagram, 49
  - Use Case, 46
- Critic, 347
- Critique menu, 22
- Cut, 135

## D

- Datatype Details Tabs, 183
- Datatype Literals, 186
- Datatype Modifiers, 185
- Datatype Name, 184
- Datatype Properties,
  - Datatype Property Fields, 184
  - Datatype Property Toolbar, 184
- Datatype Stereotype, 184
- Datatype Tagged Values, 183
- Datatypes, 182
- Delete From Model, 136
- Dependency, 201, 201
  - Details Tabs, 201
- Dependency Clients, 203
- Dependency Name, 202
- Dependency Namespace, 203

Dependency Stereotype, 202  
 Dependency Suppliers, 203  
 Design, 351, 351  
   Object Oriented, 351  
   Opportunistic, 351  
 Design Process, 349, 354  
   Iterative, 349  
   Waterfall, 354  
 Details Tab, 199  
   for Extension Point, 199  
 Details Tabs, 180, 183, 186, 190, 193, 195, 201, 203, 207, 210, 216  
   for Actor, 193  
   for Datatype, 183  
   for Dependency, 201  
   for Diagrams, 190  
   for Extend Relationship, 207  
   for Generalization, 203  
   for Include Relationship, 210  
   for Model, 180  
   for Package, 216  
   for Stereotype, 186  
   for Use Case, 195  
 Developer Zone, 2  
 Developers' Cookbook, The, 2  
 Diagram, 37, 345, 346, 347, 347, 348, 352, 352, 353, 353, 354  
   Activity, 345  
   Class, 346  
   Collaboration, 347  
   Concept Class, 347  
   Hierarchical State, 348  
   Sequence, 352  
   State, 352  
   System Sequence, 353  
   System State, 353  
   Use Case, 37, 354  
 Diagram Details Tabs, 190  
 Diagram Name, 191  
 Diagram Property Fields, 190  
 Diagrams, 190  
 Discriminator, 206  
   of Generalization, 206  
 Documentation in Use Case Diagrams, 50

## E

Edit menu, 22  
 Edit Toolbar, 23  
 Exit, 134  
 Explorer, 86, 87  
   Mouse Behavior, 87  
 Extend Relationship, 41, 49, 198, 207, 207, 348  
   Details Tabs, 207  
   in a Use Case Diagram, 49  
   of Use Case, 198  
 Extend Relationship Base Usecase, 209  
 Extend Relationship Extension, 210  
 Extend Relationship Extension Points, 210

## F

Extend Relationship Name, 209  
 Extend Relationship Namespace, 209  
 Extend Relationship Stereotype, 209  
 Extending Use Cases, 200  
   of Extension Point, 200  
 Extension, 210  
   of Extend Relationship, 210  
 Extension Point, 46, 198  
 Extension Point Base Use Case, 200  
 Extension Point Details Tabs, 199  
 Extension Point Extending Use Cases, 200  
 Extension Point Location, 200  
 Extension Point Name, 200  
 Extension Point Stereotype, 200  
 Extension Points, 198, 210  
   of Extend Relationship, 210  
   of Use Case, 198  
 External entity, 192

## G

FAQ, 2  
 Feedback, 4  
 File menu, 22  
 File Toolbar, 23  
  
 Generalization, 203, 203  
   Details Tabs, 203  
 Generalization Child, 206  
 Generalization Discriminator, 206  
 Generalization Name, 205  
 Generalization Namespace, 206  
 Generalization Parent, 206  
 Generalization Powertype, 206  
 Generalization Relationship, 49, 348  
   in a Use Case Diagram, 49  
 Generalization Stereotype, 205  
 Generalizations, 195, 198, 219  
   of Actor, 195  
   of Package, 219  
   of Use Case, 198  
 Generalize a Use Case, 42  
 Generate All Classes, 152  
 Generation menu, 22  
 GNU, 348  
 Goal, 42  
   of a Use Case, 42  
 Goals, 36  
   in the Vision document, 36  
 GUI, 348

## H

Help menu, 23  
 Hierarchical State Diagram, 348  
 Hierarchical Use Cases, 49  
 Hierarchy of Use Cases, 40  
 History, 145

**I**

- Include Relationship, 40, 49, 198, 210, 210, 349
  - Details Tabs, 210
  - in a Use Case Diagram, 49
  - of Use Case, 198
- Include Relationship Base, 212
- Include Relationship Included Usecase, 212
- Include Relationship Name, 211
- Include Relationship Namespace, 212
- Include Relationship Stereotype, 212
- Included Usecase, 212
  - of Include Relationship, 212
- Iterative Design Process, 349

**J**

- Jason Robbins, 2
- Java, 349
- Javadocs, 144

**K**

- Key features, 37
  - in the Vision document, 37

**L**

- Linux, 349
- Literals, 186
  - for Datatype, 186
- Location, 200
  - of Extension Point, 200

**M**

- Mailing lists, 2, 2
- Market Context, 37
  - in the Vision document, 37
- Mealy Machine, 349
- Menu Bar, 22
- Method, 350, 350
  - of a Class, 350
  - of an Object, 350
- Model, 180
  - Details Tabs, 180
- Model Modifiers, 182
- Model Name, 181
- Model Namespace, 181
- Model Owned Elements, 182
- Model Stereotype, 181
- Model Visibility, 182
- Model, The, 180
- Modifiers, 182, 185, 188, 194, 197, 218
  - for Datatype, 185
  - for Stereotype, 188
  - of Actor, 194
  - of Model, 182
  - of Package, 218
  - of Use Case, 197

**N**

- Moore Machine, 350
- Mouse Behavior, 87
  - in the Explorer, 87
- Multiplicity, 39, 48
  - in a Use Case Diagram, 39
  - Setting, 48
- Name, 42, 181, 184, 188, 191, 194, 197, 200, 202, 205, 209, 211, 217
  - for Datatype, 184
  - for Diagrams, 191
  - for Stereotype, 188
  - of a Use Case, 42
  - of Actor, 194
  - of Dependency, 202
  - of Extend Relationship, 209
  - of Extension Point, 200
  - of Generalization, 205
  - of Include Relationship, 211
  - of Model, 181
  - of Package, 217
  - of Use Case, 197
- Namespace, 181, 188, 194, 197, 203, 206, 209, 212, 218
  - for Stereotype, 188
  - of Actor, 194
  - of Dependency, 203
  - of Extend Relationship, 209
  - of Generalization, 206
  - of Include Relationship, 212
  - of Model, 181
  - of Package, 218
  - of Use Case, 197
- Navigation, 48, 86, 86
  - Pane, 86
  - Setting, 48
  - Tree, 86
- Navigator, 86, 86
  - Pane, 86
  - Tree, 86
- New Actor, 194
- New Extend Relationship, 208
- New Extension Point, 197
- New Package, 181
- New Use Case, 197
- New..., 129
- Next Details Tab, 144
- Next Editing Tab, 143
- Non-functional constraints, 45
- Non-functional parameters, 37
  - in the Vision document, 37
- Non-functional requirements, 36, 45
- Object, 350
- Object Constraint Language, 351
- Object Diagrams, 214

**O**



Object Management Group, 351  
Object Method, 350  
OCL, 351  
OMG, 351  
OOA&D, 351  
Open Project..., 129  
Opportunistic Design, 351  
Owned Elements, 182, 220  
    of Model, 182  
    of Package, 220

## P

Package, 216, 216  
    Details Tabs, 216  
Package Generalizations, 219  
Package Modifiers, 218  
Package Name, 217  
Package Namespace, 218  
Package Owned Elements, 220  
Package Specializations, 218  
Package Stereotype, 218  
Pane, 351  
Parent, 206  
    of Generalization, 206  
Passive Actor, 38  
Paste, 135  
Post-assumptions, 43  
    of a Use Case, 43  
Post-conditions, 43  
    of a Use Case, 43  
Powertype, 206  
    of Generalization, 206  
Pre-assumptions, 43  
    of a Use Case, 43  
Pre-condition, 43  
    of a Use Case, 43  
Print ..., 133  
Problem Solving, 347  
Properties, 144,  
    for Datatype,  
Property Fields, 184, 188, 190  
    for Datatype, 184  
    for Diagrams, 190  
    for Stereotype, 188  
Property Toolbar, 184, 187  
    for Datatype, 184  
    for Stereotype, 187

## R

Realisation Use Case, 351  
Reflection-in-Action, 351  
Relationship, 40, 41, 49, 49, 49, 348, 348, 349  
    Extend, 41, 49, 348  
    Generalization, 49, 348  
    Include, 40, 49, 349  
Remove From Diagram, 136  
Requirement, 35  
    Capturing, 35

## S

Requirements Capture, 352  
Robbins, Jason, 2  
  
Save Project, 131  
Scenario, 43  
Select All, 134  
Sequence Diagram, 352  
Setting Multiplicity, 48  
    to an association in a Use Case Diagram, 48  
Setting Navigation, 48  
    to an association in a Use Case Diagram, 48  
SGML, 352  
Shortcut key, 129, 129, 131, 133, 134, 134, 135, 135,  
135, 136, 136, 143, 143, 143, 144, 144, 144, 144,  
144, 144, 145, 145, 145, 152  
    Alt+Shift-1, 143  
    Alt+Shift-2, 143  
    Alt+Shift-3, 144  
    Alt-1, 144  
    Alt-2, 144  
    Alt-3, 144  
    Alt-4, 144  
    Alt-5, 144  
    Alt-6, 145  
    Alt-7, 145  
    Alt-8, 145  
    Alt-F4., 134  
    Ctrl-A, 134  
    Ctrl-C, 135  
    Ctrl-Delete, 136  
    Ctrl-N, 129  
    Ctrl-O, 129  
    Ctrl-P, 133  
    Ctrl-S, 131  
    Ctrl-V, 135  
    Ctrl-X, 135  
    Delete, 136  
    F5, 144  
    F6, 143  
    F7, 152  
Simula 67, 352  
Source, 144  
Specializations, 195, 198, 218  
    of Actor, 195  
    of Package, 218  
    of Use Case, 198  
Specialize a Use Case, 42  
Specification, 36, 42  
    of a Use Case, 36, 42  
Stakeholders, 37  
    in the Vision document, 37  
Standard Graphical Markup Language, 352  
State, 352, 352  
    Diagram, 352  
State Diagram, 348  
    Hierarchical, 348  
Stereotype, 181, 184, 194, 197, 200, 202, 205, 209,

, 218  
 for Datatype, 184  
 of Actor, 194  
 of Dependency, 202  
 of Extend Relationship, 209  
 of Extension Point, 200  
 of Generalization, 205  
 of Include Relationship, 212  
 of Model, 181  
 of Package, 218  
 of Use Case, 197  
 Stereotype Base Class, 188  
 Stereotype Details Tabs, 186  
 Stereotype Modifiers, 188  
 Stereotype Name, 188  
 Stereotype Namespace, 188  
 Stereotype Property Fields, 188  
 Stereotype Property Toolbar, 187  
 Stereotypes, 50, 186, 352  
   in Use Case Diagrams, 50  
 Stereotyping, 352  
 Supplementary requirement specification, 36, 36  
 Supplementary Requirement Specification, 45  
 Supplementary Specification, 353  
 Suppliers, 203  
   of Dependency, 203  
 SVG, 353  
 System Boundary Box in Use Case Diagram, 50  
 System Sequence Diagram, 353  
 System State Diagram, 353

## T

Tagged Values, 145, 183  
   for Datatype, 183  
 To-Do List, 353  
 ToDoItem, 144  
 Toolbars, 22  
 Tools menu, 22  
 Transition, 353

## U

UML, 353  
 Use Case, 35, 36, 36, 37, 40, 42, 42, 42, 42, 42, 42, 43,  
 43, 43, 43, 43, 44, 46, 49, 195, 195, 351, 353, 354, 354  
   Alternate Flows, 43, 44  
   Basic Flow, 43, 43  
   Details Tabs, 195  
   Diagram, 37, 354  
   Generalization, 42  
   Goal, 42  
   Hierarchical, 49  
   Hierarchy, 40  
   Name, 42  
   Post-conditions, 43  
   Pre-condition, 43  
   Realisation, 351  
   Scenario, 42  
   Specialization, 42

## V

Specification, 36, 42, 354  
 Use Case Diagram, 192  
 Use Case Diagram Limitations, 192  
 Use Case Extend Relationships, 198  
 Use Case Extension Points, 198  
 Use Case Generalizations, 198  
 Use Case Include Relationships, 198  
 Use Case Modifiers, 197  
 Use Case Name, 197  
 Use Case Namespace, 197  
 Use Case Specializations, 198  
 Use Case Stereotype, 197  
 User Feedback, 4

## W

View menu, 22  
 View Toolbar, 23  
 Visibility, 182  
   of Model, 182  
 Vision Document, 35, 36, 36, 51, 354  
   Case Study, 51  
 W3C, 354  
 Waterfall Design Process, 354

XMI, 354  
 XML, 354